REE Il-out grammar Oerence packet

Essential Grammar in Use

CAMBRIDGE

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

with answers

SECOND EDITION

Raymond Murphy

Contents

To the student To the teacher Thanks

Unit

- 1 am/is/are
- 2 am/is/are (questions)
- 3 I am doing (present continuous)
- 4 are you doing? (present continuous questions)
- 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)
 6 I don't ... (present simple negative) 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)
- 7 **Do you ...?** (present simple questions)
- 7 Do you ...? (present simple questions)
 8 I am doing and I do (present continuous and present simple)
- 9 I have ... / I've got ...
- 10 was/were
- 11 worked/got/went etc. (past simple)
- 12 I didn't ... Did you ...? (past simple negative and questions)
- 13 I was doing (past continuous)
- 14 I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)
- 15 I have done (present perfect 1)
- I haven't ... yet (present perfect 2) 16 I've just ... I've already ...
- 17 Have you ever ...? (present perfect 3)
- 18 How long have you ...? (present perfect 4)
- since ago 19 for
- 20 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)
- 21 is done was done (passive 1)
- has been done (passive 2) 22 is being done
- 23 be/have/do in present and past tenses
- 24 Regular and irregular verbs
- 25 I used to ...
- 26 What are you doing tomorrow?
- 27 I'm going to ...
- 28 will/shall (1)
- 29 will/shall (2)
- 30 might
- 31 can and could
- mustn't needn't 32 must
- 33 should
- 34 I have to ...
- I'd like ... 35 Would you like ... ?
- 36 there is there are
- 37 there was/were there has/have been there will be
- 38 It ...

- 39 I am I don't etc.
- 40 Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.
- 41 too/either so am I / neither do I etc.
- 42 isn't haven't don't etc. (negatives)
- 43 is it ...? have you ...? do they ...? etc. (questions 1)
- 44 Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)
- 45 Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)
- 46 What ...? Which ...? How ...?
- 47 How long does it take ...?
- 48 Do you know where ...? I don't know what ... etc.
- 49 She said that ... He told me that ...
- 50 work/working go/going do/doing
- 51 to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)
- 52 I want you to ... I told you to ...
- 53 I went to the shop to ...
- 54 go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing
- 55 get
- 56 do and make
- 57 have
- 58 I/me he/him they/them etc.
- 59 my/his/their etc.
- 60 Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.
- 61 I/me/my/mine
- 62 myself/yourself/themselves etc.
- 63 -'s (Ann's camera / my brother's car) etc.
- 64 a/an ...
- 65 flower(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)
- 66 a car / some money (countable/uncountable 1)
- 67 a car / some money (countable/uncountable 2)
- 68 a/an and the
- 69 the ...
- 70 go to work / go home / go to the cinema
- 71 I like music I hate exams
- 72 **the** ... (names of places)
- 73 this/that/these/those
- 74 one/ones
- 75 some and any
- 76 not + any no none
- 77 not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing
- 78 somebody/anything/nowhere etc.
- 79 every and all
- 80 all most some any no/none
- 81 both either neither
- 82 a lot much many
- 83 (a) little (a) few

```
84 old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)
 85 quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)
 86 old/older
                expensive / more expensive
                     more expensive than ...
 87
     older than ...
 88 not as ... as
 89
     the oldest
                  the most expensive
 90 enough
 91
     too
 92 He speaks English very well. (word order 1)
 93 always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)
            vet
                  already
 95 Give me that book!
                             Give it to me!
 96 at 8 o'clock
                     on Monday
                                    in April
 97 from ... to until
                           since
                                   for
                                  while
 98
     before
               after
                       during
 99
     in
          at
                on (places 1)
100 in
          at
                on (places 2)
          in
                at (places 3)
101 to
102 under
              behind
                         opposite etc. (prepositions)
                   through etc. (prepositions)
103 up
           over
                by
                      with
                              about (prepositions)
104 on
           at
                    good at ... etc. preposition + -ing (good at -ing etc.)
105 afraid of ...
                   look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)
106 listen to ...
              fall off
                        run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
108 put on your shoes
                          put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)
109 and
            but
                               because
                   or
                         SO
110 When ...
111 If we go ...
                   If you see ... etc.
112 If I had ...
                   If we went ... etc.
                        a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)
113 a person who ...
114 the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)
Appendices
Appendix 1 Active and passive
                                  239
                                     240
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups
                                        241
                                                  242
Appendix 4 Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)
Appendix 5 Spelling
                        244
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (look out / take off etc.)
                                                     246
           Phrasal verbs + object (fill in a form / put out a fire etc.)
                                                                      247
Appendix 7
Additional exercises
                        248
Key to Exercises
                   265
                             293
Key to Additional exercises
```

Index

296

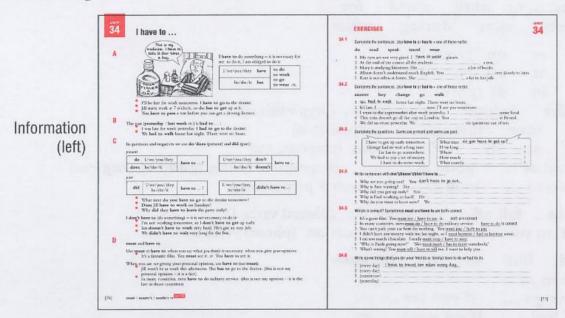
[5

To the student (working without a teacher)

This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 114 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (Contents).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you *need* to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (*I have been, he has done* etc.), use the *Index* (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) you need to study (Units 15–20 for the present perfect).

Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:



Exercises (right)

You can use the book in this way:

- 1 Look in the Contents and/or Index to find the unit that you need.
- 2 Study the left-hand page (information).
- 3 Do the exercises on the right-hand page.
- 4 Use the Key to check your answers.
- 5 Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

Don't forget the seven *Appendices* at the back of the book (pages 239-247). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.

There are also Additional exercises at the back of the book (pages 248-264). There is a list of these exercises on page 248.

To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It deals only with grammar and is not a general course book.
- It is a book for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- It combines reference and exercises in one volume.
- It can be used for self-study or as supplementary course material.

Organisation of the book

There are 114 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are *not* ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should *not* be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the *Contents* and there is a comprehensive *Index* at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven *Appendices* (pages 239-247) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

This new edition of Essential Grammar in Use also contains a set of Additional exercises (pages 248-264). These exercises provide 'mixed' practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (mainly those concerning verb forms). There are 33 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 248.

Finally, there is a *Key* at the back of the book (pages 265–295) for students to check their answers. An edition without the Key is also available for teachers who would prefer their students to use this.

Level

The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but I would not expect it to be used from the first day of a course for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the very earliest stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by lower intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of 'elementary' grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see *To the student*) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for the teacher to present the grammar point in his/her preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

Changes from the first edition

The main changes from the first edition are:

There are six new units:

Unit 16 present perfect + just/already/yet

Unit 22 passive (is being done / has been done)

Unit 25 I used to ...

Unit 56 do and make

Unit 57 have

Unit 112 if I had ... / if we went... etc.

There is also a new appendix on active and passive forms (Appendix 1).

- Some of the material has been revised and reorganised. For example, the content of Units 99–100 (in/at/on) in the new edition corresponds to Unit 94 and part of Unit 96 in the old edition.
- Some units have been redesigned, for example Unit 41 (originally 39) and Unit 54 (originally 52).
- Some of the units have been reordered and (after Unit 8) nearly all units have a different number from the original edition. A few units have been moved to different parts of the book. For example, Unit 50 (work/working etc.) was originally Unit 34.
- Many of the left-hand pages have been rewritten and many of the examples changed. In a few cases there are significant changes to the content, for example Unit 51 (originally 47), Unit 73 (originally 68) and Unit 82 (originally 77).
- Many of the original exercises have been modified or completely replaced with new exercises (for example, Units 4 and 5).
- There is a new section of Additional exercises at the back of the book (see Organisation of the book above).

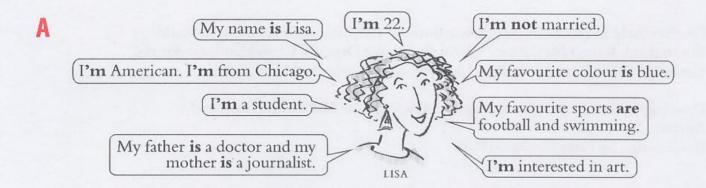
Thanks

For their help in producing this new edition of *Essential Grammar in Use*, I would like to thank Jeanne McCarten, Nóirín Burke, Liz Driscoll, Chris Hamilton-Emery, Geraldine Mark, Jane Walsh, Pam Murphy, Ruth Carim and Lelio Pallini.

Drawings by Richard Deverell, Richard Eckford, Sue Hillwood-Harris and Amanda MacPhail.

Book design by Peter Ducker MSTD.

am/is/are



positive

The second of the second		
I	am	(I 'm)
he she it	is	(he's) (she's) (it's)
we you they	are	(we're) (you're) (they're)

negative

I am n	ot	(I'm not)		
he she it is n	ot	(he's not (she's not (it's not	or	he isn't) she isn't) it isn't)
we you they are n	ot	(we're not (you're not (they're not		we aren't) you aren't) they aren't)

- I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- My brother is very tall. He's a policeman.
- John is afraid of dogs.
- It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
- Ann and I are good friends.
- Your keys are on the table.
- I'm tired but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics. He's interested in music.
- Jane **isn't** at home at the moment. She's at work.
- Those people aren't English. They're Australian.
- It's sunny today but it isn't warm.
- that's = that is there's = there is here's = here is
 - Thank you. That's very kind of you.
 - Look! There's Chris.
 - 'Here's your key.' 'Thank you.'



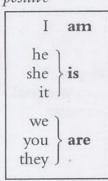
I'm afraid

of dogs.

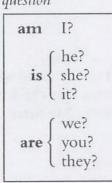
.1	Write the short form (she's / we aren't etc.).
	1 she isshe's 3 it is not 5 I am not 2 they are 4 that is 6 you are not
.2	Put in am, is or are.
	1 The weather is nice today. 2 I
.3	Write full sentences. Use is/isn't/are/aren't.
	1 (your shoes very dirty) Your shoes are very dirty. Det dean 2 (my brother a teacher) My 3 (this house not very big) 4 (the shops not open today) 5 (my keys in my bag) 6 (Jenny 18 years old) 7 (you not very tall)
4	Look at Lisa's sentences (Unit 1A). Now write sentences about yourself.
	1 (name?) My 6 (favourite colour or colours?) 2 (from?) I My 3 (age?) I 7 (interested in?) 4 (job?) I I 5 (married?) I I Ike more than others of the same wind.
5	Write sentences for the pictures. Use: afraid angry cold hot hungry thirsty needing or wenting to
	1 She's thirsty. 3 He 5
	2 They 6
6	Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
	1 (I / interested in politics) I'm interested (OR I'm not interested) in politics. 2 (I / hungry) I
	8 (I / interested in football) 9 (Rome / in Spain)
	/ II Oldill / III Obdill /

am/is/are (questions)

positive



question



What's your name?) David. Are you married? No, I'm single. How old are you? 25. Are you a student? Yes, I am.

- 'Am I late?' 'No, you're on time.'
- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, she's out.'
- . 'Are your parents at home?' 'No, they're out.' a Reton's fother or mother
- 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- Your shoes are nice. Are they new?

We say:

- Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? (not 'Is at home your mother?')
- Are they new? / Are your shoes new? (not 'Are new your shoes?')

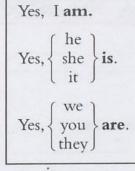
Where ... ? / What ... ? / Who ... ? / How ... ? / Why ... ? B

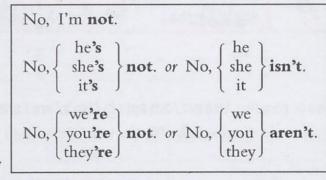
- Where is your mother? Is she at home?
- 'What colour is your car?' 'It's red.'
- How are your parents? Are they well?
- 'How much are these postcards?' 'Fifty pence.'
- 'Where are you from?' 'Canada.'
- 'How old is Joe?' 'He's 24.'
- Why are you angry?

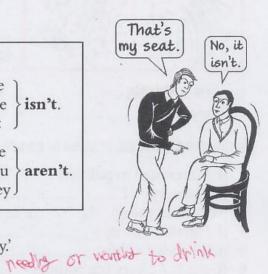
who's = who is what's = what is how's = how is where's = where is

- What's the time?
- Who's that man?
- Where's Jill?
- How's your father?

short answers







- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not but I'm thirsty.'
- 'Is your friend English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Are these your keys?' 'Yes, they are.'
- 'That's my seat. 'No, it isn't.'

2.1	Find the right answers for the questions
-----	--

2 Are you thirsty?

3 Is it cold today?

	ions.	
 1 Where's the camera? 2 Is your car blue? 3 Is Linda from London? 4 Am I late? 5 Where's Ann from? 6 What colour is your bag? 7 Are you hungry? 8 How is George? 9 Who's that woman? 	A London. B No, I'm not. C Yes, you are. D My sister. E Black. F No, it's black. G In your bag. H No, she's American. I Very well.	1
Make questions with these words.	Jse is or are .	
1 (at home / your mother?) 2 (your parents / well?) 3 (interesting / your job?) 4 (the shops / open today?) 5 (interested in sport / you?) 6 (near here / the post office?) 7 (at school / your children?) 8 (why / you / late?)	Is your mother at home Are your parents well?	
Complete the questions. Use What.	/ Who / Where / How	
3 4 5 6 th	How are your parents? the bus stop? your children? these oranges? your favourite sport? e man in this photograph? your new shoes?	They're very well. At the end of the street. Five, six and ten. £1.20 a kilo. Skiing. That's my father. Black.
Write the questions. (Read the answ	vers first.)	
1 (name?) What's your nam 2 (married or single?) 3 (American?) 4 (how old?) 5 (a teacher?)		Paul. I'm married. No, I'm Australian. I'm 30. No, I'm a lawyer. No, she's a designer.

5 Is it dark now?

6 Are you a teacher?

I am doing (present continuous)

A



She's eating.
She isn't reading.



It's raining.
The sun isn't shining.



They're running.
They aren't walking.

The present continuous is: am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing etc.

I	am	(not)	-ing	I'm working.
he she it	is	(not)	-ing	Chris is writing a letter. She isn't eating. (or She's not eating.) The phone is ringing.
we you they	are	(not)	-ing	We're having dinner. You're not listening to me. (or You aren't) The children are doing their homework.

B am/is/are + -ing = something is happening now:

I'm working she's wearing a hat they're playing football I'm not watching television

past — _____ future

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)
- Look at Sue! She's wearing her new hat. (= she is wearing it now)
- The weather is nice at the moment. It's not raining.
- 'Where are the children?' 'They're playing in the park.'
- (on the phone) We're having dinner now. Can you phone again later?
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.

Spelling (\Rightarrow Appendix 5): $come \rightarrow coming$ write \rightarrow writing dance \rightarrow dancing $run \rightarrow running$ sit \rightarrow sitting swim \rightarrow swimming $lie \rightarrow lying$

am/is/are \Rightarrow UNIT 1 are you doing? (questions) \Rightarrow UNIT 4 I am doing and I do \Rightarrow UNIT 8 What are you doing tomorrow? \Rightarrow UNIT 26

00000000000000000

3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:



1	She's eating an apple.	4	on the floor.
2	He for a bus.	5	breakfast.
3	They football.	6	on the table.

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs:

bu	ild	cook	go	have	stand	stay	swim	work	
1	Please	be quiet.	I'm wor	king.					
2	'Whe	re's John?'	'He's	in the kitc	hen. He	******************		,	
					n my foot.'				
					j				
							at the Cen	tral Hotel.	
6	'Whe	re's Ann?'	'She			a sho	wer.'		
7	They			a	new theatr	e in the ci	ty centre at	the moment	

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use She's -ing or She isn't -ing.



- 3.4 What's happening at the moment? Write true sentences.

1	(I / wash / my hair) I'm not washing my hair.
2	(it / snow) It's snowing. OR It isn't snowing.
3	(I / sit / on a chair)
4	(I / eat)
5	(it / rain)
6	(I / learn / English)
7	(I / listen / to music)
8	(the sun / shine)
9	(I / wear / shoes)
10	(I / read / a newspaper)

are you doing? (present continuous questions)

positive

I am	
he she it	doing working going staying
we you are	etc.
they	

question

am	I	
is «	he she it	doing? working? going? staying?
are .	we you they	etc.



- 'Are you feeling OK?' 'Yes, I'm fine, thank you.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold.
- 'What's Paul doing?' 'He's reading the newspaper.'
- What are the children doing?' 'They're watching television.'
- Look, there's Sally! Where's she going?
- Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

Study the word order:

short answers

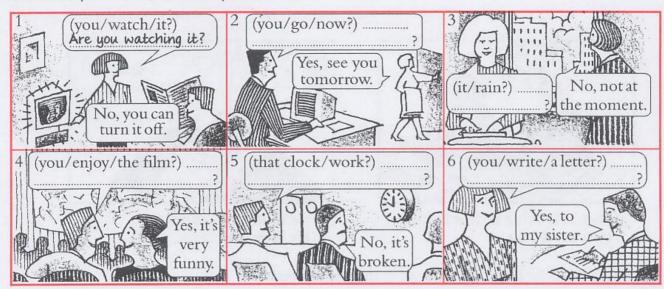
Yes, I am.

Yes,
$$\left\{\begin{array}{c} he \\ she \\ it \end{array}\right\}$$
 is.

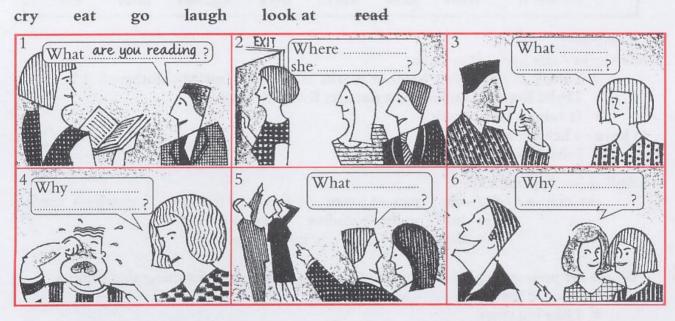
Yes, $\left\{\begin{array}{c} we \\ you \\ they \end{array}\right\}$ are.

- 'Are you going now?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Is Paul working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
- 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they aren't. They're staying with me.'

4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.



4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use one of these:



- **4.3** Write questions from these words. Use **is** or **are** and put the words in order.
 - 1 (working / Paul / today?) Is Paul working today?
 - 2 (what / doing / the children?) What are the children doing?
 - 3 (you / listening / to me?)
 - 4 (where / going / your friends?)
 - 5 (your parents / television / watching?)
 - 6 (what / cooking / Ann?)
 - 7 (why / you / looking / at me?)
 - 8 (coming / the bus?)
- 4.4 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't. etc.)
 - 1 Are you watching TV? No, I'm not.
 - 2 Are you wearing a watch?
 - 3 Are you eating something?
- 4 Is it raining?
- 5 Are you sitting on the floor?
- 6 Are you feeling well?

I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

A



They're looking at their books. They **read** a lot.



He's eating an ice-cream. He **likes** ice-cream.

They **read** / he **likes** / I **work** etc. = the present simple:

I/we/you/they	read	like	work	live	watch	do	have
he/she/it	reads	likes	works	lives	watch es	does	has

Remember:

he works / she lives / it rains etc.

- I work in a shop. My brother works in a bank. (not 'My brother work')
- Linda lives in London. Her parents live in Scotland.
- It rains a lot in winter.

I have → he/she/it has:

John has a shower every day.

Spelling (\Rightarrow Appendix 5):

-es after -s / -sh / -ch: pass
$$\rightarrow$$
 passes finish \rightarrow finishes watch \rightarrow watches -y \rightarrow -ies: study \rightarrow studies try \rightarrow tries also: do \rightarrow does go \rightarrow goes

- We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:
 - I like big cities.
 - The shops **open** at 9 o'clock and **close** at 5.30.
 - Tim works very hard. He starts at 7.30 and finishes at 8 o'clock in the evening.
 - The Earth goes round the Sun.
 - We do a lot of different things in our free time.
 - It costs a lot of money to stay at luxury hotels.
- always/never/often/sometimes/usually + present simple
 - Sue always arrives at work early. (not 'Sue arrives always')
 I usually go to work by car but sometimes I walk. (not 'I go usually')
 - Julia never eats breakfast.
 - Tom lives near us. We often see him.

	Write these yerbs and an ex-
5.1	Write these verbs + -s or -es.
	1 (read) she reads 3 (fly) it
5.2	Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs:
	eat go live play play sleep
	My piano. Our house.
	1 He plays the piano. 4 tennis.
	2 They in a very big house. 5 to the cinema a lot. 3 a lot of fruit. 6 eight hours a night.
5.3	Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:
	boil close cost cost like like meet open speak teach wash
	1 Margaret Speaks four languages. 2 In Britain the banks usually at 9.30 in the morning. 3 The City Museum at 5 o'clock in the evening. 4 Tina is a teacher. She mathematics to young children. 5 My job is very interesting. I a lot of people. 6 Peter his hair twice a week. 7 Food is expensive. It a lot of money. 8 Shoes are expensive. They a lot of money. 9 Water at 100 degrees Celsius. 10 Julia and I are good friends. I her and she me.
5.4	Write sentences from these words. Put the verb in the right form (arrive or arrives etc.).
	1 (always / early / Sue / arrive) Sue always arrives early. 2 (basketball / I / play / often) I
5.5	Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/sometimes/usually.
	1 (watch television) I never watch television. / I usually watch television in the evening. (etc.) 2 (read in bed) I 3 (get up before 7 o'clock) 4 (go to work/school by bus) 5 (drink coffee)

I don't ... (present simple negative)

The present simple negative is don't/doesn't + verb:



She doesn't drink coffee.



He doesn't like his job.

positive

I	work
we	like
you	do
they	have
he she it	works likes does has

negative

I we you they	do not (don't)	work like
he she it	does not (doesn't)	do have

- I drink coffee but I don't drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea but she doesn't drink coffee.
- You don't work very hard.
- We don't watch television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It doesn't rain very often.
- Gerry and Linda don't know many people.

B Remember:

I/we/you/they don't ... he/she/it doesn't ...

- I don't like football.
- He doesn't like football.
- I don't like Fred and Fred doesn't like me. (not 'Fred don't like')
- My car doesn't use much petrol. (not 'My car don't use')
- Sometimes he is late but it doesn't happen very often.
- We use **don't/doesn't** + *infinitive* (don't **like** / doesn't **speak** / doesn't **do** *etc.*):
 - I **don't like** washing the car. I **don't do** it very often.
 - Sandra speaks Spanish but she doesn't speak Italian. (not 'doesn't speaks')
 - Bill doesn't do his job very well. (not 'Bill doesn't his job')
 - Paula doesn't usually have breakfast. (not 'doesn't ... has')

0		
0		
0		EXERCISES
0	6.1	Write the negative.
0		1 I play the piano very well. 2 Jane plays the piano very well. Jane
		3 They know my phone number.
9		4 We work very hard. 5 He has a bath every day.
0		6 You do the same thing every day.
0	6.2	Study the information and write sentences with like.
0		1 Bill and Rose like classical music. Carol
0		I
_		2 Bill and Rose Carol
		Do you Bill and / L/YOU\ I
0		Rose Carol You 3
0		1 classical music? yes no ? 2 boxing? no yes ?
0		3 horror films? yes no ?
0	6.2	Write about yourself. Use: I never or I often or I don't very often.
0	0.0	1 (watch TV) I don't watch TV very often. (OR I never OR I often)
		2 (go to the theatre)
		3 (ride a bicycle) 4 (eat in restaurants)
0		5 (travel by train)
0	6.4	Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don't/doesn't + one of these verbs:
0		cost go know read see use wear
0		1 I buy a newspaper every day but sometimes I .don't read it. 2 Paul has a car but he it very often.
0		3 They like films but they to the cinema very often. 4 Amanda is married but she a ring.
0		5 I much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
		6 It's not an expensive hotel. It
	6.5	Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.
0		1 Margaret speaks four languages – English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
0		2 I don't like my job. It's very boring. (like) 3 'Where's Martin?' 'I'm sorry. I
0		4 Sue is a very quiet person. She very much. (talk)
0		5 Jim a lot of tea. It's his favourite drink. (drink) 6 It's not true! I it! (believe)
0		7 That's a very beautiful picture. I it very much. (like)
0		8 Mark is a vegetarian. He meat. (eat)
0		

Do you ... ? (present simple questions)

We use **do/does** in present simple questions:

I	work
we	like
you	do
they	have
he she it	works likes does has

auestion

	I we	
do	you they	work?
does	he she it	do? have?



B Study the word order:

do/does + subject + infinitive

777	Do	you	work	in the evening?
	Do	your friends	live	near here?
	Does	Chris	play	tennis?
Where	do	your parents	live?	your hair?
How often	do	you	wash	
What	does	this word	mean?	
How much	does	it	cost	to fly to Rome?

Questions with always/usually/often:

What	Do	you	always	have	breakfast?
	Does	Chris	often	play	tennis?
	do	you	usually	do	at weekends?

What do you do? = What's your job?:

- 'What do you do?' 'I work in a bank.'
- C Remember:

do I/we/you/they ... does he/she/it ...

- Do they like music?
- Does he like music?

D short answers

37	I/we/you/they	do.
Yes,	he/she/it	does.

NIo	I/we/you/they	don't.
No,	he/she/it	doesn't.

- 'Do you play tennis?' 'No, I don't.'
- 'Do your parents speak English?' 'Yes, they do.'
- 'Does George work hard?' 'Yes, he does.'
- 'Does your sister live in London.' 'No, she doesn't.'

0			
0			
0	EXERCISES		
7.1	Write questions with Do? and Does?		
	1 I like chocolate. And you?	Do you like chocola	te?
0	2 I play tennis. And you?3 Tom plays tennis. And Ann?		
0	4 You live near here. And your friends?	Ann	
	5 You speak English. And your brother?		
	6 I do exercises every morning. And you?7 Sue often goes away. And Paul?		
0	8 I want to be famous. And you?		
0	9 You work hard. And <u>Linda</u> ?		
7.2	Write questions. Use the words in brackets ()		
	1 (where / live / your parents?) 2 (you / early / always / get up?)	Where do your pa Do you always ge	
0	3 (how often / TV / you / watch?)		
0	4 (you / want / what / for dinner?) 5 (like / you / football?)		
0	6 (your brother / like / football?)		
0	7 (what / you / do / in the evenings?) 8 (your sister / work / where?)		
<u></u>	9 (to the cinema / often / you / go?)		
0	10 (what / mean / this word?) 11 (often / snow / it / here?)		
0	12 (go / usually / to bed / what time / you		
0	13 (how much / to phone New York / it /		
	14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / wh		
~ 72	Camplete the avestions. He there were		-C/00m
7.3	Complete the questions. Use these verbs:	19	
0	do do enjoy go	like start te	ach work
0	TAN	What do you do ?	
		w nat jok acc ?	I work in a bookshop. It's OK.
			At 9 o'clock.
0	5 How		Sometimes. Usually by bus.
0	6 And your husband. What		He's a teacher.
0		? his job?	Science. Yes, he loves it.
~ 74			
7.4	Write short answers (Yes, he does. / No, I don't.		
0	1 Do you watch TV a lot? No, I don't. O 2 Do you live in a big city?		
0	3 Do you often ride a bicycle?		
0	4 Does it rain a lot where you live?		

I am doing and I do (present continuous and present simple)

A

Jim is watching television. He is *not* playing the guitar.

But Jim has a guitar. He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jim plays the guitar but he is not playing the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar? Does he play the guitar?

No, he isn't. Yes, he does. (present continuous) (present simple)

Present continuous (**I am doing**) – now, at the time of speaking:

I'm doing

future past NOW

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (not 'I work')
- Tom **is** hav**ing** a shower at the moment. (*not* 'Tom has')
- Take an umbrella with you. It's raining.
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.
- Why are you under the table? What are you doing?
- Present simple (**I** do) in general, all the time or sometimes:

future

- I work every day from 9 o'clock to 5.30.
- Tom has a shower every morning.
- It rains a lot in winter.
- I don't watch television very often.
- What do you usually do at the weekend?
- We do *not* use these verbs in the present continuous (**I am -ing**):

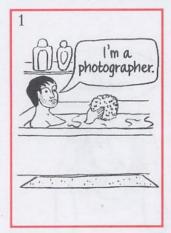
like	love	want	know	understand	remember	depend
prefer	hate	need	mean	believe	forget	en bods enem

Use the present simple only with these verbs (I want / do you like? etc.):

- I'm tired. I want to go home. (not 'I'm wanting')
- 'Do you know that girl?' 'Yes, but I don't remember her name.'
- I don't understand. What do you mean?

past

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.









- 1 Does he take photographs? Yes, he does.
 What is he doing? He's having a bath.

 2 Is she driving a bus?
 What is she doing?

 3 Does he clean windows?
 What is he doing?

 4 Are they teaching?
 What do they do?

 Is he taking a photograph? No, he isn't.

 Does she drive a bus?

 Does she drive a bus?

 Does she cleaning a window?

 Do they teach?
- 8.2 Put in am/is/are or do/don't/does/doesn't.
 - 1 Excuse me, do you speak English?
 - 2 'Where's Ann?' 'Iknow.'
 - 3 What's funny? Why you laughing?
 - 4 'What your sister do?' 'She's a dentist.'
 - 5 It want to go out in the rain.
 - 6 'Where you come from?' 'Canada.'
 - 7 How much it cost to phone Canada?
 - 8 George is a good tennis player but he play very often.
- 8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or the present simple (I do).
 - 1 Excuse me. Do you speak (you/speak) English?
 - 2 'Where's Tom?' 'He's having (he/have) a shower.'
 - 3 I don't watch (I/not/watch) television very often.
 - 4 Listen! Somebody (sing).
 - 5 Sandra is tired. (she/want) to go home now.
 - 6 How often (you/read) a newspaper?

 - 8 I'm sorry, (I/not/understand). Can you speak more slowly?
 - 9 It's late. (I/go) home now.
 - (you/come) with me?

 - 11 You can turn off the radio.(I/not/listen) to it.
 - 12 'Where's Paul?' 'In the kitchen. (he/cook) something.'

 - 14 Sue _____ (not/like) coffee. ____ (she/prefer) tea.

I have ... / I've got ...

A You can say I have or I've got, he has or he's got:

I we you they	have	OR	I we you they	have got	(I've got) (we've got) (you've got) (they've got)
he she it	has	OR	he she it	has got	(he's got) (she's got) (it's got)



- I've got blue eyes. (or I have blue eyes.)
- Tim has got two sisters. (or Tim has two sisters.)
- Our car has got four doors.
- Diane isn't feeling well. She's got a headache. (she's got = she has got)
- They like animals. They've got a horse, three dogs and six cats.

B I haven't got / have you got? etc.

negative

I we you they	have not (haven't)	got
he she it	has not (hasn't)	nati e

question

have	I we you they	got?
has	he she it	

short answers

Yes, No,	I we you they	have. haven't.
Yes, No,	he she it	has. hasn't.

- I've got a motor-bike but I haven't got a car.
- Mr and Mrs Harris haven't got any children.
- It's a nice house but it hasn't got a garden.
- 'Have you got a camera?' 'No, I haven't.'
- 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- 'Has Ann got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'
- What kind of car has she got?
- I don't have / do you have? etc.

In negatives and questions you can also use do/does ...:

- They don't have any children. (= They haven't got any children.)
- It's a nice house but it doesn't have a garden. (= it hasn't got a garden)
- Does Ann have a car? (= Has Ann got a car?)
- How much money do you have? (= How much money have you got?)

9.1	Write the short form (we've got / he hasn't got etc.).
	1 we have got we've got 3 they have got 5 it has got 6 I have not got 6 I have not got
9.2	Write questions.
	1 (you / an umbrella?) 2 (you / a passport?) 3 (your father / a car?) 4 (Carol / many friends?) 5 (you / any brothers or sisters?) 6 (how much money / we?) 7 (what / kind of car / Julia?)
9.3	What has Tina got? What have you got? Look at the information and write sentences about Tina and yourself. TINA my brothers and sisters YOU? YOU?
	1 (a camera) Tina has got a camera. I've got (OR I haven't got) a camera. 2 (a bicycle) Tina 3 (long hair) 4 (brothers/sisters)
9.4	Put in have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got or hasn't got. Sarah hasn't got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle. They like animals. They ve got three dogs and two cats. Charles isn't happy. He alot of problems. They don't read much. They many books. What's wrong? 'I something in my eye.' Where's my pen?' 'I don't know. I it.' Julia wants to go to the concert but she a ticket.
9.5	Complete the sentences. Use have/has got or haven't/hasn't got + one of these:
a lot	of friends four wheels six legs a headache a toothache a key much time a garden
	1 I'm not feeling very well. I 've got a headache. 2 It's a nice house but it hasn't got a garden. 3 Most cars

was/were

A



Now Robert is at work.

At midnight last night he wasn't at work.

He was in bed. He was asleep.

am/is (present) → was (past):

- I am tired. (now)
- Where is Ann? (now)
- The weather is good today.

are (present) \rightarrow were (past):

- You are late. (now)
- They aren't here. (now)

I was tired last night.

Where was Ann yesterday?

The weather was good last week.

You were late yesterday.

They weren't here last Sunday.

B

positive

I he she it	was
we you they	were

negative

I he she it	was not (wasn't)
we you they	were not (weren't)

question

was	I? he? she? it?
were	we? you? they?

- Last year Rachel was 22, so she is 23 now.
- When I was a child, I was afraid of dogs.
- We were hungry after the journey but we weren't tired.
- The hotel was comfortable but it wasn't expensive.
- Was the weather good when you were on holiday?
- Those shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
- Why were you late this morning?
- C

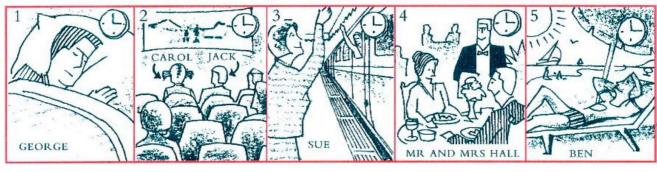
short answers

Yes,	I/he/she/it	was.
ies,	we/you/they	were.

No,	I/he/she/it	wasn't.
140,	we/you/they	weren't.

- 'Were you late?' 'No, I wasn't.'
- 'Was Ted at work yesterday?' 'Yes, he was.'
- 'Were Sue and Steve at the party?' 'No, they weren't.'

___10.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?



1	George was in bed.	4		
2	Carol and Jack	5	·····	
3	Sue	6	And you?	Ι

10.2 Put in am/is/are (present) or was/were (past).

- 1 Last year she was 22, so she 23 now.
 2 Today the weather nice, but yesterday it very cold.
 3 I hungry. Can I have something to eat?
 4 I feel fine this morning but I very tired last night.
 5 Where you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
 6 Don't buy those shoes. They very expensive.
- 7 I like your new jacket. it expensive?
- 8 This time last year I in Paris.
- 9 'Where the children?' 'I don't know. They in the garden ten minutes ago.'

10.3 Put in was/were or wasn't/weren't.

- We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room was very small and it wasn't very clean.

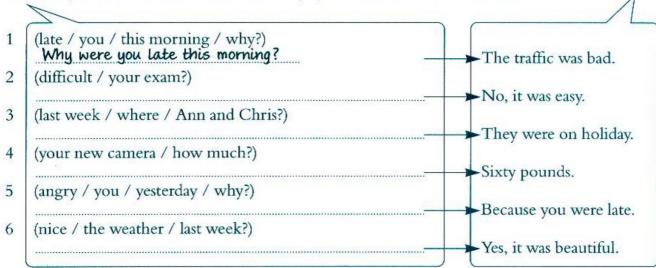
 George at work last week because he ill. He's better now.

 Yesterday public holiday so the shops closed. They're open today.

 Sue and Bill at the party?' 'Sue there but Bill.'

 'Where are my keys?' 'I don't know. They on the table but they're not there now.'

 You at home last night. Where you?
- 10.4 Write the questions. Use the words in brackets (...) in the correct order + was/were.



worked/got/went etc. (past simple)

They watch

television every evening.

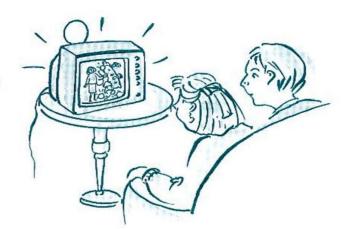
(present simple)

They watched television yesterday evening. (past simple)

watched is the past simple:

I/we/you/they
he/she/it

watched



B The past simple is often **-ed** (regular verbs). For example:

$$work \rightarrow worked$$

$$stay \rightarrow stayed$$

- I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I cleaned my teeth.
- Terry worked in a bank from 1986 to 1993.
- Yesterday it rained all morning. It stopped at lunchtime.
- We enjoyed the party last night. We danced a lot and talked to a lot of people. The party finished at midnight.

Spelling (\Rightarrow Appendix 5):

$$try \rightarrow tried$$
 $study \rightarrow studied$ $copy \rightarrow copied$ $stop \rightarrow stopped$ $plan \rightarrow planned$

C Some verbs are irregular (= not regular). The past simple is not -ed. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2–3):

begin -	→ began	$fall \rightarrow$	fell	leave →	left	sell \rightarrow	sold
break	broke	find	found	lose	lost	sit	sat
bring	brought	fly	flew	make	made	sleep	slept
build	built	forget	forgot	meet	met	speak	spoke
buy	bought	get	got	pay	paid	stand	stood
catch	caught	give	gave	put	put	take	took
come	came	go	went	read	read /red/*	tell	told
do	did	have	had	ring	rang	think	thought
drink	drank	hear	heard	say	said	win	won
eat	ate	know	knew	see	saw	write	wrote

* pronunciation

- I usually get up early but this morning I got up at 9.30.
- We did a lot of work yesterday.
- Caroline went to the cinema three times last week.
- Jim came into the room, took off his coat and sat down.

59.				se verbs in the	8				
clean		enjoy		happen	open	rain	start	stay	want
				s yesterday.	F1 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10				
				t					
				.30 and		at 10	o'clock.		
				to be a : Sunday afte					
				it		dav.			
				ast year. We			it a very n	ice plac	e.
				when he v					
Mrita tha	pact cim	nla of those	vorbe						
		ple of these							
1 get	got	4	pay		7 go		10		
2 see		5	visit		8 think		11		***************************************
3 play			buy		9 сору	***************************************	12	speak	
Read abo	ut Lisa's	journey to I	Vladrid. Pu	t the verbs in	the correct	form.			
y (22)									,
- ST 2	海流	AIRPOR	Tags - Si	De Standa	(1)2	一個多	一門	CE IN	ADRID ST
1823			A	THE STATE OF		FT 125	DE 1	外人類	ATAXI
1=15	不完		1	DE COLET	1500	114 3	A) (A)	深、祭	
The same of the sa	泛流	No.		TIME	PASSPORTS	THE S	00 9	1	300
774	- EC		all s			丁世		"	
~ 2	,				-2 *****	3 0 \	Caro		
Last Tue	sdav Lisa	(1) flew	from Lo	ndon to Mad	drid. She	(2)	up	fly	, get
									ive
she (4)		home an	ıd (5)	to th	e airport.	When s	he		ave, drive
				e car and the			-	774	rive, park, ş
				ast. Then she					ve, go
				for her fligh					ait, depart
				rid two hour rt to her hot				tal	rive
(14)	d	taxi iidiii	the an po	it to her hot	er in the t	entre or	iviadi id.	i ta	XC .
Write sen	tences al	oout the pas	st (yesterd	ay / last weel	etc.).				
1 Iim al	wavs go	es to work	by car. Y	esterday he	e went to	work bu	car.		
2 Rach	el often	loses her k	eys. She						last week
				ing. She					
4 I usua	lly buy t	wo newsp	apers ever	ry day. Yeste	erday I				
				undays. Las					
				ay I					
				orning. Th					
8 Our f	riends co	ome to see	us every	Friday. The	у	••••••••••		••••••	last Frida
Write sen	tences at	out what ye	ou did yest	erday.					
		leyball ye:		Harry Services	4				
ıE.T.	J			A STARLEY			•••••		

3

6

I didn't ... Did you ...? (past simple negative and questions)

We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

infiniting

negat
 _

- 1	ue	100	40	
"	ME	11	10	r

play	7
start	t
wat	ch
have	e
see	
do	
go	

I	played
we	started
you	watched
they	had
he	saw
she	did
it	went

We you they he she	did not (didn't)	play start watch have see do
it		go

	I	play?
	we	start?
	you	watch?
did	they	have?
	he	see?
	she	do?
	it	go?

- B do/does (present) $\rightarrow did$ (past):
 - I don't watch television very often.
 - I didn't watch television yesterday.
 - Does she often go away?
 - Did she go away last week?
- We use did/didn't + infinitive (watch/play/go etc.):

I watched I didn't watch (not 'I didn't watched') they went did they go? (not 'did they went?')

he had he didn't have did you do? you did

- I played tennis yesterday but I didn't win.
- 'Did you do the shopping?' 'No, I didn't have time.'
- We went to the cinema but we didn't enjoy the film.
- D Study the word order in questions:

did + subject + infinitive

Start.		1	1	1	
	3.871	Did	your sister	phone	you?
	What How	did did	you the accident	do happen?	yesterday evening?
-	Where	did	your parents	go	for their holiday?

E short answers

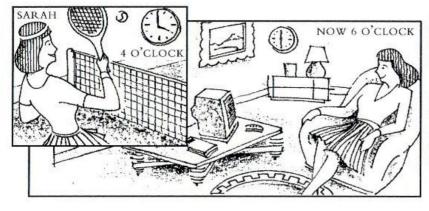
Yes,	I/we/you/they	did.
ies,	he/she/it	aia.

No,	I/we/you/they	didn't.	
	he/she/it		

- 'Did you see Joe yesterday?'
 'No, I didn't.'
- 'Did it rain on Sunday?' 'Yes, it did.'
- 'Did Helen come to the party?' 'No, she didn't.'
- 'Did your parents have a good holiday?' 'Yes, they did.'

A: With some friends. 2 A: I was late this morning. B: What time ? A: Ten pounds. 6 A: I'm tired this morning. B: B:	They worked on Monday but they We went to the post office but we She had a pen but she Jack did French at school but he	any paper.
1 (watch TV) 2 (get up before 7 o'clock) 3 (have a shower) 4 (buy a magazine) 5 (eat meat) 6 (go to bed before 10.30) Write B's questions. Use: arrive cost go go to bed late happen have a nice time stay 1 A: We went to New York last month. B: Where did you stay? A: With some friends. 5 A: We came home by taxi. B: How much A: Ten pounds. 2 A: I was late this morning. B: What time ? B: What time ? B: What time ? B: We came home by taxi. B: How much A: Ten pounds.	1 I watched TV last night. And you? 2 I enjoyed the party. And you? 3 I had a good holiday. And you? 4 I finished work early. And you?	you watch TV last night?
A: With some friends. A: Ten pounds. 2 A: I was late this morning. B: What time ? B: B:	1 (watch TV) 2 (get up before 7 o'clock) 3 (have a shower) 4 (buy a magazine) 5 (eat meat) 6 (go to bed before 10.30)	
	arrive cost go go to bed late h 1 A: We went to New York last month.	5 A: We came home by taxi.
A: Half past nine. A: No, but I didn't sleep very well	1 A: We went to New York last month. B: Where did you stay? A: With some friends. 2 A: I was late this morning.	5 A: We came home by taxi. B: How much
	1 A: We went to New York last month. B: Where did you stay? A: With some friends. 2 A: I was late this morning.	5 A: We came home by taxi. B: How much A: Ten pounds. 6 A: I'm tired this morning. B:
4 A: I had a nice holiday. B: Good. Where	1 A: We went to New York last month. B: Where did you stay? A: With some friends. 2 A: I was late this morning. B: What time ? A: Half past nine. 3 A: I played tennis this afternoon. B:	5 A: We came home by taxi. B: How much A: Ten pounds. 6 A: I'm tired this morning. B: A: No, but I didn't sleep very well. 7 A: We went to the beach yesterday. B:

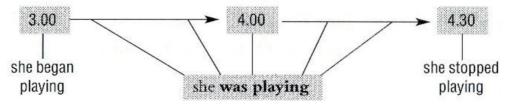
I was doing (past continuous)



It is 6 o'clock now. Sarah **is** at home. She is watching television.

At 4 o'clock she wasn't at home. She **was** at the sports club.

She was playing tennis. She wasn't watching television.



R was/were + -ing is the past continuous:

positive

I he she it	was	doing watching playing
we you they	were	runn ing liv ing etc.

negative

I he she it	was not (wasn't)	doing watching playing
we you they	were not (weren't)	running living etc.

question

was	I he she it	do ing ? watch ing ? play ing ?
were	we you they	runn ing ? liv ing ? etc.

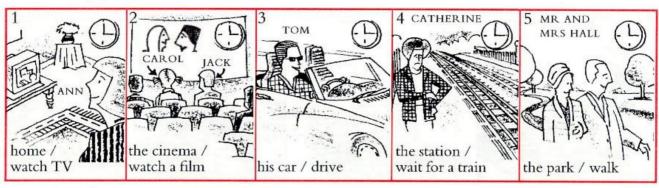
- What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday? Were you working?
- 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I wasn't listening.'
- It was raining, so we didn't go out.
- In 1985 we were living in Canada.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.

Spelling (live \rightarrow living / run \rightarrow running / lie \rightarrow lying etc.) \Rightarrow Appendix 5

 $am/is/are + -ing (present) \rightarrow was/were + -ing (past)$:

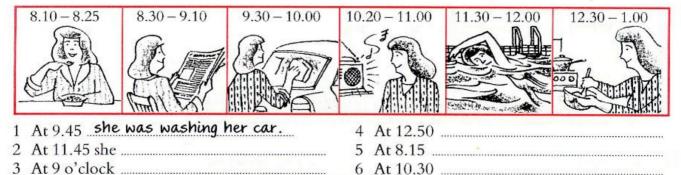
- I'm working (now). I was working at 10.30 last night.
- It isn't raining (now). It wasn't raining when we went out. • What are you doing (now)? What were you doing at three o'clock?

13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.



1	Ann was at home. She was watching TV.		
2	Carol and Jack	They	
3			
4			
5	3		
6	And you? I		

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

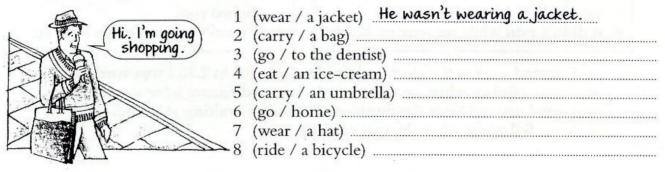


13.3 Complete the questions. Use was/were -ing. Use what/where/why if necessary.

1	(you/live) Where were you living in 1990?
2	(you/do)
3	(it/rain) when you got up?
4	(Ann/drive) so fast?
	(Tim/wear) a suit yesterday?

In London.
I was asleep.
No, it was sunny.
Because she was in a hurry.
No, a T-shirt and jeans.

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.



I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

A









Jack was reading a book.

The phone rang.

He stopped reading.

He answered the phone.

What happened? The phone rang. (past simple)

What was Jack doing when the phone rang?
He was reading a book.

(past continuous)

What **did** he **do** when the phone rang?
He **stopped** reading and **answered** the phone.

(past simple)

Jack began reading *before* the phone rang. So: **When** the phone rang, he **was reading**.



B

past simple

A: What did you do yesterday morning?
B: We played tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)

beginning
(10 o'clock)

we played
(complete action)

Jack read a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)

Did you watch the film on television last night?

It didn't rain while we were on holiday.

past continuous

A: What were you doing at 10.30?
 B: We were playing tennis.

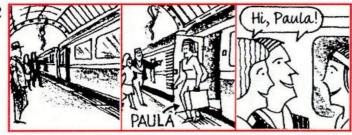


- Jack was reading a book when the phone rang.
- Were you watching television when I phoned you?
- It wasn't raining when I got up.
- I started work at 9 o'clock and finished at 4.30. At 2.30 I was working.
- It was raining when we went out. (= it started raining before we went out)
- I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
- Jenny fell asleep while she was reading.

14.1 Look at the pictures and put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.



Carol broke (break) her arm last week. It (happen) when she (paint) her room. She (fall) off the ladder.



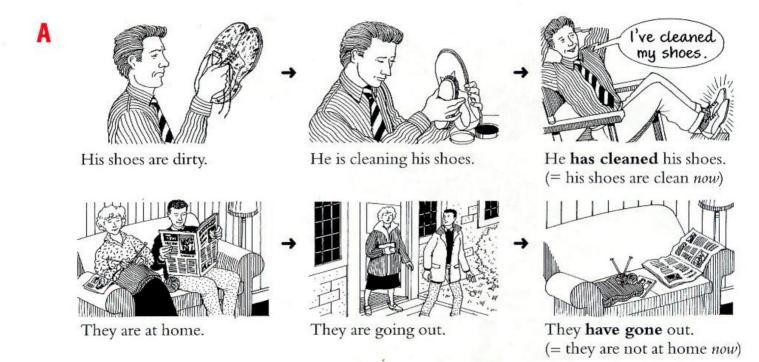


14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

- 1 A: What were you doing (you/do) when the phone rang (ring)?
 - B: I was watching (watch) television.
- 2 A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
 - B: Yes, she(study).
- 3 A: What time _____ (the post / arrive) this morning?
- 4 A: Was Margaret at work today?
- - B: I don't know exactly but I (not/drive) very fast.
- 6 A: (your team / win) the football match yesterday?

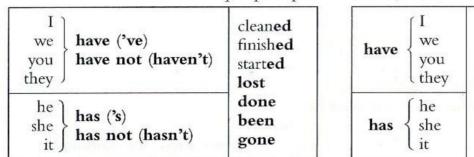
- 8 A: (you/see) Jenny last night?
 - B: Yes, she (wear) a very nice jacket.
- - B: I was asleep.
- 10 A: I (lose) my key last night.
 - B: How (you/get) into your room?
 - A: I (climb) in through a window.

I have done (present perfect 1)



has cleaned / have gone etc. is the present perfect (have + past participle):

past participle



have	I we you they	cleaned? finished? started?	regular verbs
has •	he she it	done? been? gone?	} irregular verbs

Regular verbs: The past participle is **-ed** (the same as the past simple):

clean \rightarrow I have clean**ed**

finish \rightarrow we have finished

 $start \rightarrow she has started$

Irregular verbs: The past participle is sometimes the same as the past simple and sometimes different (\Rightarrow Appendix 2-3). For example:

the same:

buy \rightarrow I bought / I have bought

have \rightarrow he had / he has had

different:

 $break \rightarrow I broke / I have broken$

see → you saw / you have seen

 $fall \rightarrow it fell / it has fallen$

 $go \rightarrow they went / they have gone$

We use the present perfect for an action in the past with a result now:

• I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport now)

• 'Where's Linda?' 'She's gone to bed.' (= she is in bed now)

• We've bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)

• It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present.

• 'Bob is on holiday.' 'Oh, where has he gone?'

• Can I take this newspaper? Have you finished with it?

15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from:

go to bed clean his shoes stop raining close the door fall down have a bath before now 1 He has cleaned his shoes. 2 She 3 They 4 It 5 6 The

15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the list.

bre	eak buy decide finish forget go go invite see not/see	take	tell
1	'Can I have this newspaper?' 'Yes, I've finished with it.'		
2	Isome new shoes. Do you want to see them?		
3	'Where is Liz?' 'She out.'		
4	I'm looking for Paula you her?		
5	Look! Somebody that window.		
	'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, I	her.'	
7	I can't find my umbrella. Somebody it.		
8	I'm looking for Sarah. Where she?		
9	I know that woman but I her name.		
10	Sue is having a party tonight. She		
	What are you going to do? you		
12	'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I them.'		

I've just ... I've already ... I haven't ... yet (present perfect 2)

Α I've just ...



They have just arrived.

just = a short time ago

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?
 - B: Yes, they've just arrived.
- A: Are you hungry?
 - B: No, I've just had dinner.
- A: Is Tom here?
 - B: No, I'm afraid he's just gone. (= he **has** just gone)

В I've already ...



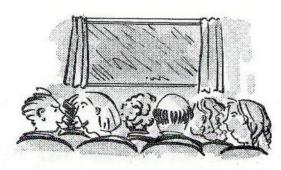
already = before you expected / before I expected

- A: What time are Diane and Paul coming?
 - B: They've already arrived. (= before you expected)
- It's only nine o'clock and Ann has already gone to bed. (= before I expected)
- A: John, this is Mary.
 - B: Yes, I know. We've already met.

C I haven't ... yet / Have you ... yet?

yet = until now

You can use **yet** in *negative sentences* and *questions*. **Yet** is usually at the end.



The film hasn't started yet.

yet in negative sentences:

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?
 - B: No, they haven't arrived yet. (but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)
- A: Does John know that you're going away?
 - B: No, I haven't told him yet. (but B is going to tell him soon)
- Margaret has bought a new dress but she hasn't worn it yet.

yet in questions:

- A: Have Diane and Paul arrived yet?
 - B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.
- A: Has Linda started her new job yet?
- B: No, she starts next week.
- This is my new dress.
 - B: Oh, it's nice. Have you worn it yet?



16.1 Write a sentence with just for each picture.



	77)	: L		1
1	Ineu	ve.	ust	arrived	L.
1				***************	

2 He.

3	They	

16.2 Complete the sentences. Use already + present perfect.

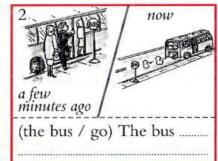
What time is Paul arriving?
Do Sue and Bill want to see the film?
Don't forget to phone Tom.
When is Martin going away?
Do you want to read the newspaper?
When does Linda start her new job?

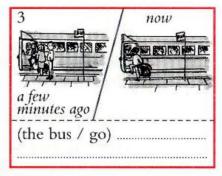
He's already arrived	
No, they	it,
I	
He	
I	
She	

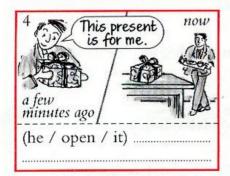
The race

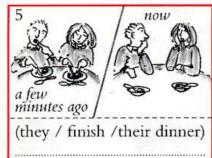
Write a sentence with just (They've just ... / She's just ... etc.) or a negative sentence with yet (They haven't ... yet / She hasn't ... yet etc.).

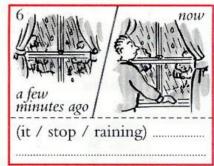










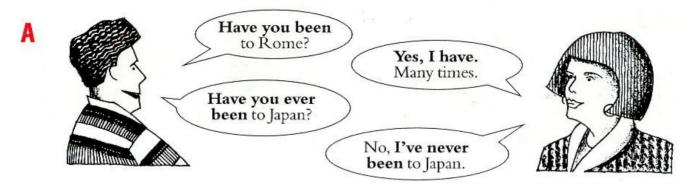


16.4 Write questions with yet.

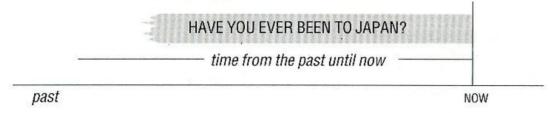
- 1 Your friend has got a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her:

 Have you started your new job yet?
- 3 Your friend must write a letter. Perhaps she has written it now. You ask her:
- 4 Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it now. You ask a friend about Tom:

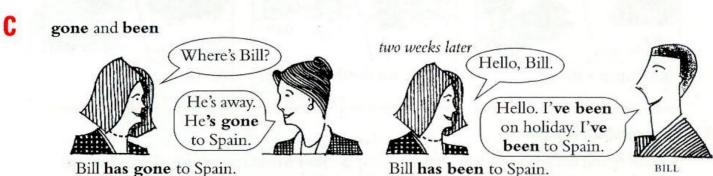
Have you ever ...? (present perfect 3)



We use the *present perfect* (have been / have had / have played *etc.*) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, a person's life:



- 'Have you been to France?' (in your life) 'No, I haven't.'
- I've been to Canada but I haven't been to the United States.
- Mary is an interesting person. She has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.
- I've seen that woman before but I can't remember where.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- 'Have you read this book?' 'Yes, I've read it twice.' (twice = two times)
- **B** present perfect + **ever** (in questions) and **never**:
 - 'Has Ann ever been to Australia?' 'Yes, once.' (once = one time)
 - 'Have you ever played golf?' 'Yes, I often play golf.'
 - My mother has never travelled by air.
 - I've never ridden a horse.
 - 'Who is that man?' 'I don't know. I've never seen him before.'



Compare:

- I can't find Susan. Where has she gone? (= Where is she now?)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where have you been?

(= he is in Spain now)

(= he went to Spain but now he is back)

	2,21101020		Dogo
17.1	You are asking Helen questions beginni	ng Have you ever? Write	
			HELEN
104	(London?) Have you ever bee (play / golf?) Have you ever ple (Australia?) Have (lose / your passport?)	layed golf?	
	(fly / in a helicopter?) (fly / in a helicopter?) (eat / Chinese food?) (New York?) (drive / a bus?) (break / your leg?)		No, never. Yes, a few times. Yes, twice. No, never.
17.2	4 (drive / a bus)	New York twice.	
	have be do write travel meet 1 She has had many different, 2 She 3	all over the world many different jobs ten books	a lot of interesting things a lot of interesting people married three times
17.4	Put in gone or been. 1 Bill is on holiday at the moment. 2 'Where's Jill?' 'She's not here. I as Hello, Sue. Where have you	think she's? Have you o Mexico?' 'No, never.' ening. They've	to the bank? out to it? nes.

How long have you ...? (present perfect 4)

A Jill is on holiday in Ireland. She is there now.

She arrived in Ireland on Monday. Today is Thursday.

How long has she been in Ireland?

She has been in Ireland since Monday. for three days.



Compare is and has been:

She has been in Ireland { since Monday. for three days.

Monday

NOW
Thursday

is = present

has been = present perfect

B Compare:

present simple

present perfect simple (have been/have lived/have known etc.)

Mark and Liz are married.	They have been married for five years. (not 'They are married for five years.')
Are you married?	How long have you been married? (not 'How long are you married?')
Do you know Sarah?	How long have you known her? (not 'How long do you know her?')
I know Sarah.	I've known her for a long time. (not 'I know her for')
Linda lives in London.	How long has she lived in London? She has lived there all her life.
I have a car.	How long have you had your car? I've had it since April.

She is in Ireland

present continuous present perfect continuous (have been + ing)

I'm learning German.	How long have you been learning German? (not 'How long are you learning German?') I've been learning German for two years.
David is watch ing TV.	How long has he been watching TV? He's been (= He has been) watching TV since 5 o'clock.
It's raining.	It's been (= It has been) raining all day.

18.1 Complete these sentences.

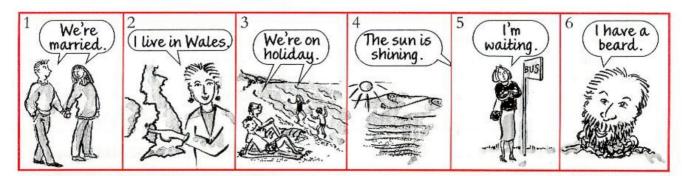
- 1 Jill is in hospital. She has been in hospital since Monday.
- 2 I know Sarah. I have known her for a long time.
- 3 Linda and Frank are married. They married since 1989.
- 4 Brian is ill. Heill for the last few days.
- 5 We live in Scott Road. We there for ten years.
- 6 Catherine works in a bank. She in a bank for five years.
- 7 Alan has a headache. He a headache since he got up this morning.
- 8 I'm learning English. I English for six months.

18.2 Make questions with How long ...?

1	Jill is on holiday.
2	Mike and Judy are in Brazil.
3	I know Margaret.
4	Diana is learning Italian.
5	My brother lives in Canada.
6	I'm a teacher.
7	It is raining.

How long has she been on holiday?	
How long	?
How long you	?
	?
	?
	?
	?

18.3



Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Your sentence must end with one of these:

for ten minutes all day all her life for ten years since he was 20 since Sunday

- 1 They have been married for ten years.
- 2 She
- 3 They
- 4 The sun

18.4 Which is right?

- 1 Mark is / has been in Canada since April. has been is right
- 2 Jane is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her very well.
- 3 Jane is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her for a long time.
- 4 'Sorry I'm late. How long are you / have you been waiting?' 'Not long. Only five minutes.'
- 5 Martin works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job very much.
- 6 Linda is reading the newspaper. She is / has been reading it for two hours.
- 7 'How long do you live / have you lived in this house?' 'About ten years.'
- 8 'Is that a new coat?' 'No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time.'
- 9 Tom <u>is / has been</u> in Spain at the moment. He <u>is / has been</u> there for the last three days.

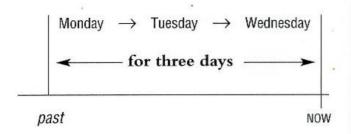
for since ago

for and since

We use **for** and **since** to say how long:

for three days. Jill is in Ireland. She has been there since Monday.

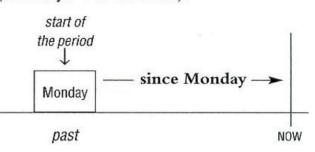
We use **for** + a period of time (**three days** / two years etc.):



for	
three days	ten minutes
an hour	two hours
a week	four weeks
a month	six months
five years	a long time

- Richard has been in Canada for six months. (not 'since six months')
- We've been waiting for two hours. (not 'since two hours')
- I've lived in London for a long time.

We use **since** + *the start* of the period (Monday / 9 o'clock etc.):



since		
Monday	Wednesday	
9 o'clock	12.30	
24 July	Christmas	
January	I was ten years old	
1985	we arrived	

- Richard has been in Canada since **January**. (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting since 9 o'clock. (= from 9 o'clock to now)
- I've lived in London since I was ten years old.

ago

 $\mathbf{ago} = before \ now$:

- Susan started her new job three weeks ago. (= three weeks before now)
- 'When did Tom go out?' 'Ten minutes ago.' (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner an hour ago.
- Life was very different a hundred years ago.

We use ago with the past (started/did/had/was etc.).

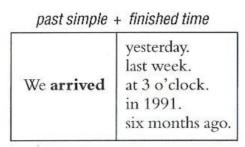
Compare ago and for:

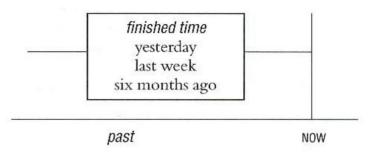
- When did Jill arrive in Ireland? She arrived in Ireland three days ago.
- How long has she been in Ireland? She has been in Ireland for three days.

19.1	Write for or since.	
)	1 Jill has been in Ireland since Monday.	
7	 2 Jill has been in Ireland for three days. 3 My aunt has lived in Australia	
	4 Margaret is in her office. She has been there	
	5 India has been an independent country 1947.	
	6 The bus is late. We've been waiting	
	7 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty ma 8 Mike has been ill a long time. He has been in hospital	
19.2	Answer these questions. Use ago .	Octobel.
10.2		
	1 When was your last meal? 1 When was the last time you were ill?	
	3 When did you last go to the cinema?	
	4 When was the last time you were in a car?	
	5 When was the last time you went on holiday?	
19.3	Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets $()$ + for or ago.	
	1 Jill arrived in Ireland three days ago.	(three days)
	2 Jill has been in Ireland for three days.	(three days)
	3 Linda and Frank have been married	(20 years)
	4 Linda and Frank got married	(20 years)
	6 We had lunch	(ten minutes) (an hour)
	7 Silvia has been learning English	(six months)
	8 Have you known Lisa ?	(a long time)
	9 I bought these shoes	(a few days)
19.4	Complete the sentences with for or since.	
	1 Jill is in Ireland now. She arrived there three days ago. She has been	there for three days.
	2 Jack is here. He arrived here on Tuesday. He has	
	3 It's raining. It started an hour ago. It's been	
	4 I know Sue. I first met Sue two years ago. I've	
	5 I have a camera. I bought it in 1989. I've	
1	6 They are married. They got married six months ago. They've	
	7 Liz is studying medicine at university. She started three years ago.	
	She has	
1	8 Dave plays the piano. He started when he was seven years old.	
	Dave has	
19.5	Write sentences about yourself. Begin with the words in brackets (\ldots) .	
1	1 (I've lived)	
	2 (I've been)	
)	3 (I've been learning)	
	4 (I've known)	
	5 (I've had)	

I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)

With a finished time (yesterday / last week etc.), we use the past (arrived/saw/was etc.):





Do not use the present perfect (have arrived / have done / have been etc.) with a finished time:

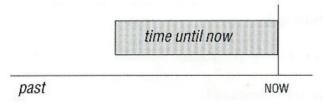
- I saw Paula yesterday. (not 'I have seen')
- Where were you on Sunday afternoon? (not 'Where have you been')
- We didn't have a holiday last year. (not 'We haven't had')
- What did you do last night?' 'I stayed at home.'
- William Shakespeare lived from 1564 to 1616. He was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.

Use the past simple to ask When ...? or What time ...?:

- When did they arrive? (not 'When have they arrived?')
- Compare:

present perfect

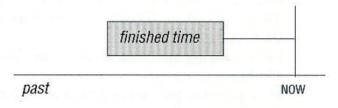
- I have lost my key. (= I can't find it now)
- Bill has gone home. (= he isn't here now)
- Have you seen Ann? (= where is she now?)



- Have you ever been to Spain? (= in your life, until *now*)
- My friend is a writer. He has written many books.
- The letter hasn't arrived yet.
- We've lived in Singapore for six years. (= we live there now)

past simple

- I lost my key last week.
- Bill went home ten minutes ago.
- Did you see Ann on Saturday?



- Did you go to Spain last year?
- Shakespeare wrote many plays and poems.
- The letter didn't arrive yesterday.
- We lived in Glasgow for six years but now we live in Singapore.

20

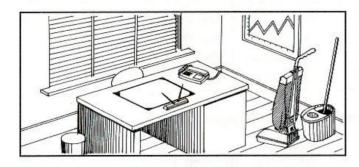
EXERCISES

0

	EXERCISES		
1	Use the words in brackets () to answer the question	ons.	1
	2 Have you started your new job?	ninutes ago) (last week) t 5 o'clock) (on Friday) (yesterday)	Yes, I saw her 5 minutes ago. Yes, I last week Yes, they Yes, Yes,
2	Right or wrong? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (To 1 I've lost my key. I can't find it. 2 Have you seen Ann yesterday? 3 I've finished my work at 2 o'clock. 4 I'm ready now. I've finished my work. 5 What time have you finished your work? 6 Sue isn't here. She's gone out. 7 Jim's grandmother has died in 1989.	RIGHT WRONG: 1	underlined.) Did you see
	8 Where have you been last night? Put the verb in the present perfect or past simple. 1 My friend is a writer. He has written (v 2 We didn't have (not/have) a holiday last 3 I (play) tennis ye 4 What time (you 5 (you 6 The weather (not) 7 My hair is wet. I	year. sterday afterr go) to bed la u/ever/meet st/be) very go (just/wash) i	noon. ast night?) a famous person? ood yesterday. it.
	8 I	(visit)	many countries.
	to Florida? B: Yes, we went (go) there on holiday two years ago. A: (you/have) a good time? B: Yes, it (be) great.	months. (be) a w years bu	
	2 A: Where's Alan? (you/see) him? B: Yes, he (go) out a few minutes ago. A: And Julia? B: I don't know. I	B: I time (nev	you know Martin's sister?(see) her a few s but I er/speak) to her(you/ever/speak) to her? I(meet) her

is done was done (passive 1)

A



The office is cleaned every day.

The office was cleaned yesterday.

Compare active and passive:

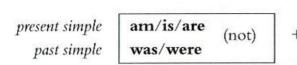
Somebody cleans the office every day. (active)

The office is cleaned every day. (passive)

Somebody cleaned the office yesterday. (active)

The office was cleaned yesterday. (passive)

B The passive is:



past participle

cleaned	done
invent ed	built
injured	taken etc.

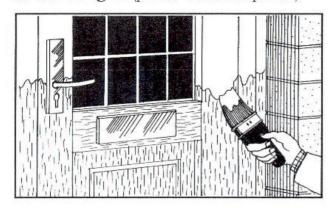
The past participle of regular verbs is **-ed** (clean**ed**/damag**ed** *etc.*). For a list of *irregular* past participles (**done/built/taken** etc.), see Appendix 2–3.

- Butter is made from milk.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.
- How often are these rooms cleaned?
- I am never invited to parties.
- This house was built 100 years ago.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- When was the telephone invented?
- We weren't invited to the party last week.
- Was anybody injured in the accident?' 'Yes, two people were taken to hospital.'
- Was/were born
 - I was born in London in 1962. (not 'I am born')
 - Where were you born?
- Passive + \mathbf{by} ...
 - We were woken up by a loud noise. (= The noise woke us up.)
 - The telephone was invented by Alexander Bell in 1876.
 - My brother was bitten by a dog last week.

21.1	Write sentences from the words in brackets (). Sentences 1-7 are present.
	1 (the office / clean / every day) The office is cleaned every day. 2 (these rooms / clean / every day?) Are these rooms cleaned every day? 3 (glass / make / from sand) Glass 4 (stamps / sell / in a post office) 5 (this room / not / use / very often) 6 (we / allow / to park here?) 7 (how / this word / pronounce?)
	Sentences 8-15 are past.
21.2	8 (the office / clean / yesterday) The office was cleaned yesterday. 9 (the house / paint / last month) The house 10 (three people / injure / in the accident) 11 (my bicycle / steal / a few days ago) 12 (when / this bridge / build?) 13 (you / invite / to the party last week?) 14 (how / these windows / break?) 15 (I / not / wake up / by the noise) Correct these sentences. 1 (This house built) 100 years ago. This house was built 2 Football plays in most countries of the world. 3 Why did the letter send to the wrong address? 4 A garage is a place where cars repair. 5 Where are you born? 6 How many languages are speaking in Switzerland? 7 Somebody broke into our house but nothing stolen.
	8 When was invented the bicycle? Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:
21.0	clean damage find give invite make make show steal take 1 The room is cleaned every day. 2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people were taken to hospital. 3 Paper from wood. 4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms from wood. 5 'Where did you get this picture?' 'It to me by a friend of mine.' 6 Many American programmes on British television. 7 'Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?' 'No. They but they didn't go.' 8 'How old is this film?' 'It in 1965.' 9 My car last week but the next day it by the police.
21.4	Where were they born?
21.4	1 (Ian / Edinburgh) 2 (Sally / Birmingham) 3 (her parents / Ireland) 4 (you / ???) 5 (your mother / ???) Lan was born in Edinburgh. Sally IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII

is being done has been done (passive 2)

is/are being ... (present continuous passive)



Somebody is painting the door . (active) The door is being painted. (passive)

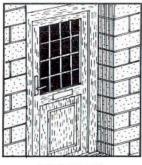
- My car is at the garage. It is being repaired. (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses are being built opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the *present continuous* and *present simple*:

- The office is being cleaned at the moment. (continuous) The office is cleaned every day. (simple)
- In Britain football matches are usually played on Saturday, but no matches are being played next Saturday.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 26.

В has/have been ... (present perfect passive)





Somebody has painted the door. (active) The door has been painted. (passive)

BEFORE

NOW

- My key has been stolen. (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys have been stolen. (= somebody has stolen them)
- I'm not going to the party. I haven't been invited. (= nobody has invited me)
- Has this shirt been washed? (= Has somebody washed it?)

Compare the *present perfect* and *past simple*:

- The room is clean now. It has been cleaned. (present perfect) The room was cleaned yesterday. (past simple)
- I can't find my keys. I think they've been stolen. (present perfect) My keys were stolen last week. (past simple)

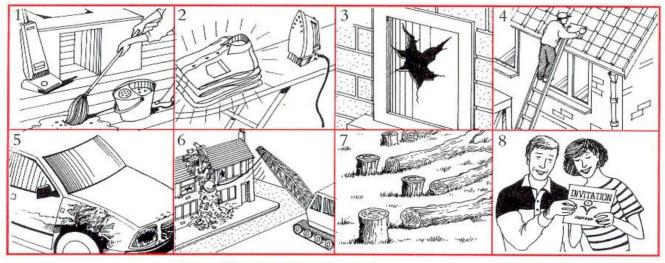
For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.

22.1 What's happening?

	2		4 A STATE OF THE S
and the same			

- 1 The car is being repaired.
- 3 The windows

- 2 A bridge
- 4 The grass
- 22.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).



- 1 (the office / clean) The office is being cleaned.
- 2 (the shirts / iron) The shirts have been ironed.
- 3 (the window / break) The window
- 4 (the roof / repair) The roof.....
- 5 (the car / damage)
- 6 (the houses / knock / down)
- 7 (the trees / cut / down)
- 8 (they / invite / to a party)
- **22.3** Use the words in brackets (...) to complete the sentences. (Units 21 and 22)
 - 1 I can't use my office at the moment. It is being painted (paint).
 - 2 We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited (not/invite).

 - 5 A factory is a place where things (make).
 - 6 How old are these houses? When (they/build)?
 - 7 A: (the computer / use) at the moment?
 - B: Yes, Jim is using it.

 - 9 Some trees _____ (blow) down in the storm last night.

be/have/do in present and past tenses

be (= am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working etc.)

am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) \Rightarrow Units 3-4 and 26 Please be quiet. I'm working.

It isn't raining at the moment.

What are you doing this evening?

was/were + -ing (past continuous) ⇒ Unit 13

I was working when she arrived.

It wasn't raining, so we went out.

What were you doing at three o'clock?

В be + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten etc.)

> am/is/are + past participle (passive present simple) ⇒ Unit 21

The room is cleaned every day.

I'm never invited to parties.

Oranges are imported into Britain.

was/were + past participle (passive past simple) ⇒ Unit 21

The room was cleaned yesterday.

These houses were built 100 years ago.

• How was the window broken?

Where were you born?

have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been etc.)

have/has + past participle (present perfect) ⇒ Units 15-18

I've cleaned my room.

Tom has lost his passport.

Barbara hasn't been to Canada.

Where have Paul and Linda gone?

D do/does/did + infinitive (clean/like/eat/go etc.)

> do/does + infinitive (present simple negative and questions) \Rightarrow Units 6-7

I like coffee but I don't like tea.

Chris doesn't go out very often.

What do you usually do at weekends?

Does Barbara live alone?

did + infinitive (past simple negative and questions) \Rightarrow Unit 12

I didn't watch TV yesterday.

It didn't rain last week.

What time did Paul and Linda go out?

23

3.1	Put in is/are/do/does.
	1
3.2	Put in am not / isn't / aren't / don't / doesn't. All these sentences are negative.
	1 Tom doesn't work in the evenings. 2 I'm very tired. I want to go out this evening. 3 I'm very tired. I going out this evening. 4 George working this week. He's on holiday. 5 My parents are usually at home. They go out very often. 6 Barbara has travelled a lot but she speak any foreign languages. 7 You can turn off the television. I watching it. 8 There's a party next week but we going.
3.3	Put in was/were/did/have/has.
	1 Where were your shoes made?6 What time she go?2 you go out last night?7 When these houses built?3 What you doing at 10.30?8 Jim arrived yet?4 Where your mother born?9 Why you go home early?5 Barbara gone home?10 How long they been married?
3.4	Put in is/are/was/were/have/has.
	1 Joe has lost his passport. 2 This bridge built ten years ago. 3 you finished your work yet? 4 This town is always clean. The streets cleaned every day. 5 Where you born? 6 I just made some coffee. Would you like some? 7 Glass made from sand. 8 This is a very old photograph. It taken a long time ago. 9 Joe bought a new car.
3.5	Complete the sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form.
	damage eat enjoy go go away listen open pronounce rain understand use
	1 I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's raining
	11 How do you this window? Can you show me?

Regular and irregular verbs

Regular verbs

The past simple and past participle of *regular* verbs is **-ed**: $clean \rightarrow cleaned$ $paint \rightarrow painted$ study → studied live \rightarrow lived

Past simple (\Rightarrow Unit 11)

- I cleaned my shoes yesterday.
- Charlie studied engineering at university.

Past participle

Present perfect = have/has + past participle (\Rightarrow Units 15-18):

- I have cleaned my shoes.
- Jane has lived in London for ten years.

Passive = be (is / are / were / has been etc.) + past participle (\Rightarrow Units 21-22):

- These rooms are cleaned every day.
- My car has been repaired.

В

Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of *irregular* verbs are *not* **-ed**:

	make	break	cut	
past simple	made	broke	cut	
past participle	made	broken	cut	

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

	make	find	buy	cut
past simple past participle	made	found	bought	cut

- I made a cake yesterday. (past simple)
- I have made some coffee. (past participle present perfect)
- Butter **is made** from milk. (past participle passive present)

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are *different*. For example:

le.	break	know	begin	go
past simple	broke	knew	began	went
past participle	broken	known	begun	gone

- Somebody **broke** this window last night. (past simple)
- Somebody has broken this window. (past participle present perfect)
- This window was broken last night. (past participle passive past)

2 cut Ckt 7 buy 12 put 3 get 8 sit 13 catch 4 bring 9 leave 14 watch 5 pay 10 happen 15 understand Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs. 1 break broke broken 6 run 11 take 2 begin 7 speak 12 go 3 eat 8 write 13 give 4 drink 9 come 14 throw 5 drive 10 know 15 forget 14 throw 15 drive 10 know 15 forget 15 know 15 forget 17 know 15 forget 18 leave 19 know 15 forget 19 know 15 forget 19 know 15 forget 10 know 15 forget 19 know 15 forget 10 k	1 :	make made	6	enjoy			11	hear .		
3 get			7	buy						
Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs. 1 break broke broken 6 run 11 take 2 begin 7 speak 12 go 3 eat 8 write 13 give 4 drink 9 come 14 throw 5 drive 10 know 15 forget 15 forget 17 know 15 drive 10 know 15 forget 17 know 15 drive 10 know 15 forget 18 know 15 forget 19 know 15 for	3	get	8	sit	•••••					
Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs. 1 break broke broken 6 run 11 take 2 begin 7 speak 12 go 3 eat 8 write 13 give 4 drink 9 come 14 throw 5 drive 10 know 15 forget 14 throw 5 drive in the right form. 1 I Washed my hands because they were dirty. (wash) 2 Somebody has broken this window. (break) 3 I feel good. I very well last night. (sleep) 4 We a very good film yesterday. (see) 5 It a lot while we were on holiday. (rain) 6 I've my bag. (lose) Have you it? (see) 7 Rosa's bicycle was last week. (steal) 8 I to bed early because I was tired. (go) 9 Have you your work yet? (finish) 10 The shopping centre was about 20 years ago. (build) 11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn) 12 I've never a horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) 14 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. 14 cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have Made. some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we 1 I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday — a very fast car?	4	bring	9	leave						
1 break broke broken 6 run 11 take 2 begin 7 speak 12 go 3 eat 8 write 13 give 4 drink 9 come 14 throw 5 drive 10 know 15 forget 7 live werb in the right form. 1 I Mashed my hands because they were dirty. (wash) 2 Somebody has broken this window. (break) 3 I feel good. I very well last night. (sleep) 4 We a very good film yesterday. (see) 5 It a lot while we were on holiday. (rain) 6 I've my bag. (lose) Have you it? (see) 7 Rosa's bicycle was last week. (steal) 8 I to bed early because I was tired. (go) 9 Have you your work yet? (finish) 10 The shopping centre was about 20 years ago. (build) 11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn) 12 I've never a horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) 14 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. 15 Cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we 14 I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?	5	pay	10	happer	ıi		15	under	stand	•••••
2 begin 7 speak 12 go 3 3 eat 8 write 13 give 4 4 drink 9 come 14 throw 5 5 drive 10 know 15 forget 7 Put the verb in the right form. 1 I Mashed my hands because they were dirty. (wash) 2 Somebody has broken this window. (break) 3 I feel good. I very well last night. (sleep) 4 We a very good film yesterday. (see) 5 It alot while we were on holiday. (rain) 6 I've my bag. (lose) Have you it? (see) 7 Rosa's bicycle was last week. (steal) 8 I to be dearly because I was tired. (go) 9 Have you your work yet? (finish) 10 The shopping centre was about 20 years ago. (build) 11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn) 12 I've never a horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) 14 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. 15 Cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 1 Have you John about your new job? 1 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we 1 know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 15 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 15 Toid you like the film? 'Yes, I it was very good.' 16 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 16 Our holiday alot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?	Wri	te the past simple and past pa	rticip	le of the	se verb	S.				
3 eat 8 write 13 give 4 drink 9 come 14 throw 5 drive 10 know 15 forget 15 forget 10 know 15 forget 16 know 15 forget 17 know 15 forget 18 drive 10 know 15 forget 18 drive 18 drive 10 know 15 forget 18 drive 19 complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. 1 I Mashed my hands because they were dirty. (wash) 2 Somebody has broken this window. (break) 3 I feel good. I very well last night. (sleep) 4 We a very good film yesterday. (see) 5 It a lot while we were on holiday. (rain) 6 I've my bag. (lose) Have you it? (see) 7 Rosa's bicycle was last week. (steal) 8 I to bed early because I was tired. (go) 9 Have you your work yet? (finish) 10 The shopping centre was about 20 years ago. (build) 11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn) 12 I've never a horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) 15 Komplete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. 16 Cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we 1 I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?	1	oreak broke broken	6	run			11	take		
4 drink 9 come 14 throw 5 drive 10 know 15 forget 15 drive 10 know 15 forget 15 forget 15 drive 10 know 15 forget 15 forget 15 drive 16 drive 17 know 15 forget 17 forget 18 drive 18 drive 18 drive 18 drive 19 drive 18 drive 19 d	2		7	speak			12	go		
Put the verb in the right form. 1 I washed my hands because they were dirty. (wash) 2 Somebody has broken this window. (break) 3 I feel good. I very well last night. (sleep) 4 We a very good film yesterday. (see) 5 It a lot while we were on holiday. (rain) 6 I've my bag. (lose) Have you it? (see) 7 Rosa's bicycle was last week. (steal) 8 I to bed early because I was tired. (go) 9 Have you your work yet? (finish) 10 The shopping centre was about 20 years ago. (build) 11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn) 12 I've never a horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we hild the way on the film? 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday alvery a very fast car?	3	eat	8	write				give	***************************************	
Put the verb in the right form. 1	4	drink	9	come			14	throw		
1 I Mashed my hands because they were dirty. (wash) 2 Somebody has broken this window. (break) 3 I feel good. I very well last night. (sleep) 4 We a very good film yesterday. (see) 5 It a lot while we were on holiday. (rain) 6 I've my bag. (lose) Have you it? (see) 7 Rosa's bicycle was last week. (steal) 8 I to bed early because I was tired. (go) 9 Have you your work yet? (finish) 10 The shopping centre was about 20 years ago. (build) 11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn) 12 I've never a horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?	5	drive	10	know			15	forget		
2 Somebody has broken this window. (break) 3 I feel good. I very well last night. (sleep) 4 We a very good film yesterday. (see) 5 It a lot while we were on holiday. (rain) 6 I've my bag. (lose) Have you it? (see) 7 Rosa's bicycle was last week. (steal) 8 I to bed early because I was tired. (go) 9 Have you your work yet? (finish) 10 The shopping centre was about 20 years ago. (build) 11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn) 12 I've never a horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we John about your new job? 4 I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?	Put	the verb in the right form.								
2 Somebody has broken this window. (break) 3 I feel good. I very well last night. (sleep) 4 We a very good film yesterday. (see) 5 It a lot while we were on holiday. (rain) 6 I've my bag. (lose) Have you it? (see) 7 Rosa's bicycle was last week. (steal) 8 I to bed early because I was tired. (go) 9 Have you your work yet? (finish) 10 The shopping centre was about 20 years ago. (build) 11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn) 12 I've never a horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we John about your new job? 4 I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?	1	I washed my hands bec	ause	they we	ere dirt	y. (wasł	1)			
3 I feel good. I							,			
4 We a very good film yesterday. (see) 5 It a lot while we were on holiday. (rain) 6 I've my bag. (lose) Have you it? (see) 7 Rosa's bicycle was last week. (steal) 8 I to bed early because I was tired. (go) 9 Have you your work yet? (finish) 10 The shopping centre was about 20 years ago. (build) 11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn) 12 I've never a horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I my leg. (fall / hurt) Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we ti know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?						A 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 10	eep)			
5 It						_				
6 I've										
Rosa's bicycle was								it? (se	e)	
8 I								10. (50	<i>C)</i>	
9 Have you										
The shopping centre wasabout 20 years ago. (build) 11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn) 12 I've nevera horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I'veher for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I andmy leg. (fall / hurt) Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we 4 I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?							50)			
11 Ann to drive when she was 18. (learn) 12 I've never a horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we 4 I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?							ears ago (build)		
12 I've never a horse. (ride) 13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we 4 I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?								ound)		
Julia is a good friend of mine. I've her for a long time. (know) 14 Yesterday I and my leg. (fall / hurt) Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?						o. from	11)			
Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever average average average average average average average.						he	er for a lon	or time	(know)	
Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form. cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we 1 know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?									(KHOW)	
cost drive fly make meet sell speak swim tell think wake up win 1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we 4 I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?						0.009	X 100 50			
1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?										
1 I have made some coffee. Would you like some? 2 Have you John about your new job? 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we file. 4 I know Gary but I've never his wife. 5 We were by loud music in the middle of the night. 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and to the other side. 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?]	meet	sell	speak	swim	tell	think	
2 Have you		•	e W	Jould vo	uı like	some?				
3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we										
4 I know Gary but I've never							well but w	a		
5 We were							wen but w	·	······································	
6 Stephanie jumped into the river and							e of the ni	wh t		
7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I it was very good.' 8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?										
8 Many different languages are in the Philippines. 9 Our holiday a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel. 10 Have you ever a very fast car?	7									
9 Our holiday		The same of the sa								
10 Have you ever a very fast car?	0									
		O 11: 1		1	1		1		. 1	1
11 All the tickets for the concert were very quickly.	9						we stayed i		pensive hote	el.
12 A bird in through the open window while we were having our dinner	9 10	Have you ever		a very f	ast car	?		n an exp	pensive hoto	el.

I used to ...

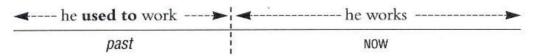
A DAVE A FEW YEARS AGO

DAVE TODAY

I work in a supermarket. I used to work in a factory.

Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.

Dave **used to work** in a factory = he worked in a factory before but he doesn't work there now:



B You can say I used to work ... / she used to have ... / they used to be ... etc.:

I/you/we/they he/she/it	used to	be work have play etc.
-------------------------	---------	---------------------------------

- When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- I used to read a lot of books but I don't read much these days.
- Liz has got short hair now but it used to be very long.
- They used to live in the same street as us, so we often used to see them. But we don't see them very often these days.
- Ann used to have a piano but she sold it a few years ago.

The negative is I didn't use to ...:

• When I was a child I didn't use to like tomatoes.

The question is did you use to ...?:

- Where did you use to live before you came here?
- We use **used to** ... only for the *past*. You cannot say 'I use to ...' (*present*):
 - I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (not 'I use to play golf')
 - We usually **get** up early. (not 'We use to get up early.')



Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **used to ...**.



She used to have long hair.



football.



a taxi driver.









This building

in the country.

Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

KAREN A FEW YEARS AGO



Do you do any sport?

Do you go out in the evenings? Do you play a musical instrument?

Do you like reading?

Do you travel much?

Yes, I go swimming every day and I play volleyball.

Yes, most evenings.

Yes, the guitar.

Yes, I read a lot.

Yes, I go away two or three times a year.

KAREN NOW



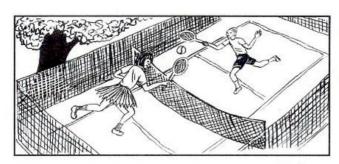
I work very hard in my job. I don't have any free time.

Write sentences about Karen with used to

1	She used to go swimming every day.	4	
2	She	5	
3		6	

- Complete these sentences. Use **used to** or the present simple (**I play / he lives** etc.).
 - 1 I used to play tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
 - 2 Do you do any sport?' 'Yes, I play basketball.
 - 3 'Have you got a car?' 'No, I one but I sold it.'
 - 4 George a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel. 5 'Do you go to work by car?' 'Sometimes but most days I by train.'
 - 6 When I was a child, I never meat, but I eat it now.
 - 7 Mary loves watching TV. SheTV every evening.
 - 8 We near the airport but we moved to the city centre a few years ago.
 - 9 Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I up very early.
 - 10 What games _____ you ____ when you were a child?

What are you doing tomorrow?





They are playing tennis (now).

He is playing tennis tomorrow.

We use **am/is/are** + **-ing** (present continuous) for something happening now:

- 'Where are Sue and Caroline?' 'They're playing tennis in the park.'
- Please be quiet. I'm working.

We also use **am/is/are** + **-ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week *etc.*):

- Andrew is playing tennis tomorrow.
- I'm not working next week.
- **I am doing something tomorrow** = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:
 - Alice is going to the dentist on Friday. (= she has an appointment to see the dentist)
 - We're having a party next weekend.
 - Are you meeting Bill this evening?
 - What are you doing tomorrow evening?
 - I'm not going out tonight. I'm staying at home.

You can also say 'I'm going to do something' (\Rightarrow Unit 27).



- Do not use the present simple (I stay / do you go etc.) for plans and arrangements:
 - I'm staying at home this evening. (not 'I stay')
 - **Are** you **going** out tonight? (*not* 'Do you go')
 - Ann isn't coming to the party next week. (not 'Ann doesn't come')

But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc.:

- The train **arrives** at 7.30.
- What time does the film finish?

Compare:

present continuous – usually for people

- I'm going to a concert tomorrow.
- What time are you leaving?

present simple – timetables, programmes etc.

- The concert starts at 7.30.
- What time does your train leave?

26.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?

	Control of the Contro				
	1 Andrew	2 RICHARD	3 BARBARA	4 DENISE	5 TOM AND SUE
	2 Richard	ying tennis on Frid	cinema. 5		lunch with Ken.
5.2	Write questions. All ti	ne sentences are futu	re.		
	1 (you / go / out / 2 (you / work / no 3 (what / you / do	tonight?) ext week?) o / tomorrow eveni or friends / arrive?)	Are u	you going out toni	ght?
i.3	Write sentences about 1 I'm staying at 2 I'm going to th 3 4 5			xt few days?	
.4	Put the verb in the pre	esent continuous (he	is leaving etc.) or	present simple (the	train leaves etc.).
	1 'Are you going 2 We're going 3 Do you know a 4 A: My parents B: Oh, that's n	(you/go) out the (we/go) to a conc bout Sally?	is evening?' 'N ert this evening. (go	o, I'm too tired.' !t starts (it/s(she/go b) on holiday next(they/go	start) at 7.30. et) married next month! week.)?
	(finish) on Frida		the moment. 11	ie course	
		ll match tomorrow	but		(I/not/go).
	7		/go) out with so	me friends tonigh	t. Why don't you come
	8 A: How		(you/get)	home after the pa	rty tomorrow? By taxi? (leave) at midnight.
	9 A: Do you war	it to go to the ciner	na tonight?		
	B: Yes, what til	ne	(vou/do	(the film /	begin)?
				, heat monday an	ternoom

I'm going to ...



She is going to watch TV this evening.

We use am/is/are going to... for the future:

I	am	(not) going to	do
he/she/it	is		drink
we/you/they	are		watch

am	I		buy ?
is	he/she/it	going to	eat ?
are	we/you/they		wear?

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:

I'm going to do it I decided to do it — future past NOW

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
- 'Your hands are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them.'
- Are you going to invite John to your party?

We also use the present continuous (I am doing) for the future, usually for arrangements $(\Rightarrow Unit 26)$:

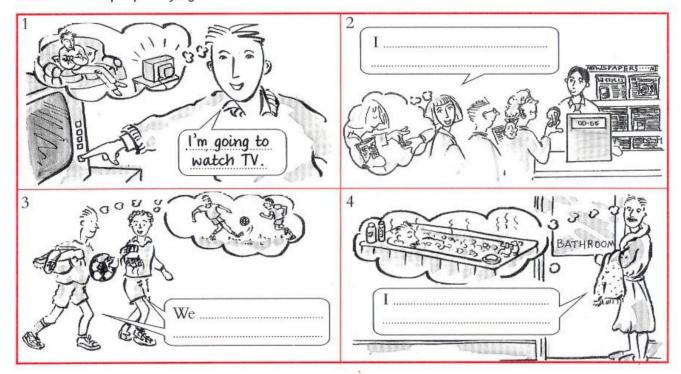
- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.
- Something is going to happen

Something **is going to happen** = it is clear *now* that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! It's going to rain. (black clouds $now \rightarrow rain$)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready. I'm going to be late. (9 o'clock *now* and not ready \rightarrow late)



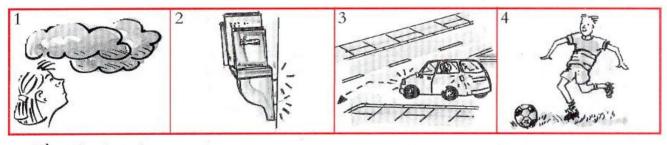
27.1 What are these people saying?



27.2 Complete the sentences. Use **going to** + one of these verbs:

eat	do	give	lie down	stay	walk	wash	watch	wear	
1	My hands a	re dirty.	I'm going to ng to wear	wash	them.				
2	What are	you goir	ng to wear	to the par	rty tonight	:?			
3	I don't wan	t to go h	ome by bus. I .						
4	lohn is goir	ng to Lon	don next weel	c. He			W	vith some fr	iends
5	I'm hungry	. I			this	sandwich.			
6	It's Sharon's	s birthday	next week. W	/e			her	a present.	
			very tired. Sh						
8 '	There's a go	ood film	on TV this eve	ning		you			it?
9	What		Rachel			when	she leaves sc	hool?	

27.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?



1	It's going to rain.	3	The car
2	The shelf	4	He

7.4	What are you going	to do today	or tomorrow?	Write three sentences.
	what are you going	to uo touay	OI LOIHOHOW!	WILL THE SCHIEFICES.

1	I'm
2	
3	

will/shall (1)





Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8.30 until 4.30.

It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah is at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she was at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she will be at work.

be? win?

eat?

come? etc.

will + infinitive (will be / will win / will come etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	will ('ll) will not (won't)	be win eat come etc.	will	I/we/you/they he/she/it
-------------------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------	------	----------------------------

'll = will: I'll (I will) / you'll / she'll etc. won't = will not: I won't (= I will not) / you won't / she won't etc.

- B We use **will** for the *future* (**tomorrow** / **next week** *etc.*):
 - Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she'll be in Rome. Next week she'll be in Tokyo.
 - You can phone me this evening. I'll be at home.
 - Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will eat it.
 - We'll probably go out this evening.
 - Will you be at home this evening?
 - I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
 - Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.

We often say I think ... will ...:

- I think Diana will pass the exam.
- I don't think it will rain this afternoon.
- Do you think the exam will be difficult?
- We do not use **will** for things we have arranged or decided to do (\Rightarrow Units 26-27):
 - We're going to the cinema on Saturday. (not 'We will go')
 - I'm not working tomorrow. (not 'I won't work')
 - Are you going to do the exam? (not 'Will you do')
- Shall n

You can say **I shall** (= I will) and **we shall** (= we will):

- I shall be late tomorrow. I will (I'll) be late tomorrow.
- I think we will (we'll) win. I think we shall win.

But do not use shall with you/they/he/she/it:

• Tom will be late. (not 'Tom shall be')

28.1	Helen is travelling in Europe. Complete the sentences with she was, she's or she'll be.
	1 Yesterday she was in Paris. 2 Tomorrow in Amsterdam. 3 Last week in Barcelona. 4 Next week in London. 5 At the moment in Brussels. 6 Three days ago in Munich. HELEN LONDON (NOW) PARIS (YESTERDAY) MUNICH (3 DAYS AGO)
	7 At the end of her tripvery tired. Where will you be? Write contances about yourself. Use: (AST WEEK)
28.2	Where will you be? Write sentences about yoursell. Ose.
	I'll be or I'll probably be or I don't know where I'll be.
	1 (at 10 o'clock tomorrow) I'll probably be on the beach. OR I'll be at work. OR I don't know where I'll be.
	2 (one hour from now)
	3 (at midnight tonight)
	4 (at 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon)
	5 (two years from now)
28.3	Put in will ('II) or won't.
	1 Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.
	2 'Are you ready yet?' 'Not yet. I be ready in five minutes.'
	3 I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I be at home tomorrow.
	4 It rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
	5 A: I don't feel very well this evening.
	B: Well, go to bed early and you feel better in the morning.
	6 It's Bill's birthday next Monday. He be 25.
	7 I'm sorry I was late this morning. It happen again.
28.4	Write sentences beginning I think or I don't think
	1 (Diana will pass the exam) 1 think Diana will pass the exam.
	2 (Diana won't pass the exam) I don't think Diana will pass the exam.
	3 (we'll win the game) I
	4 (I won't be here tomorrow)
	5 (Sue will like her present)
	6 (they won't get married)
	7 (you won't enjoy the film)
28.5	Which is right? (Study Unit 26 before you do this exercise.)
	1 We'll go / We're going to the theatre tonight. We've got tickets. We're going is right
	2 'What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening?' 'Nothing. I'm free.'
	3 They'll go / They're going away tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8.40.
	4 I'm sure she'll lend / she's lending us some money. She's very rich.
	5 'Why are you putting on your coat?' 'I'll go / I'm going out.'
	 6 Do you think Claire will phone / is phoning us tonight? 7 Steve can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.
	8 Will / Shall you be at home tomorrow evening?
	WILL OHILL YOU DE AN HOME COMMENTS.

will/shall (2)





You can use I'll ... (I will) when you offer or decide to do something:

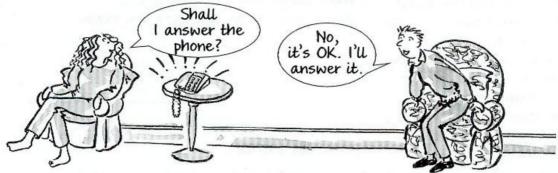
- 'My bag is very heavy.' 'I'll carry it for you.'
- 'I'll phone you tomorrow, OK?' 'OK, goodbye.'

We often say I think I'll ... / I don't think I'll ... when we decide to do something:

- I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. I think I'll sit in the garden.
- It's raining. I don't think I'll go out.

Do not use the present simple (**I go** / **I phone** etc.) in sentences like these:

- I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (not 'I phone you')
- I think I'll go to bed early. (not 'I go to bed')
- B Do not use I'll ... for something you decided before (\Rightarrow Units 26-27):
 - I'm working tomorrow. (not 'I'll work')
 - There's a good film on TV tonight. I'm going to watch it. (not 'I'll watch')
 - What are you doing at the weekend? (not 'What will you do')
- Shall we ...? Shall I ... ?



Shall I/we ...? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- It's very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- 'Shall I phone you this evening?' 'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?
- It's a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- Where shall we go for our holidays this year?
- 'Let's go out this evening.' 'OK, what time shall we meet?'

29.1

	ete the sentences.						
1	carry	do ea	t sen	d show	sit	stay	1
	My bag is	very heavy.	l'u	carry it fo	r you.		
		our holiday.				y	ou a postcard
	I don't want						1 PA
		vant a chair?	100000000000000000000000000000000000000		•		
		hone Jenny?	14/15/50/5/10/00/00			•••••	
	Are you comir						
	Iow do you use		50.1				
				**			you.
	ete the sentences.		l l or l d	on't think I'll	+ one of	these verbs:	
uy	go have	play	20				
	cold today!						
	hungry. I						
	el tired						
Thi	is camera is too e	expensive					it.
/hich i	is right?				,		
	•		0111	T211	la siste		
	none / I'll phone				<u>e</u> is right		
	ven't done the s						
	ke sport. I water	ch / I'll watch	a lot of	chart on TV			
I					•		
	eed some exercis	e. I think <u>I</u> go	o / I'll go	for a walk.			
Jim	is going to buy	e. I think <u>I g</u> e / will buy a 1	o / I'll go new car. I	for a walk. He told me l	ast week.		
Jim 'Th	is going to buy is letter is for Ro	e. I think <u>I go</u> / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. <u>I</u>	o / I'll go new car. I give / I'	for a walk. He told me l ll give / I'm	ast week. going to g	<u>ive</u> it to her.'	
Jim 'Th	is going to buy	e. I think <u>I go</u> / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. <u>I</u>	o / I'll go new car. I give / I'	for a walk. He told me l ll give / I'm	ast week. going to g	<u>ive</u> it to her.'	
Jim 'Th A:	is going to buy is letter is for Ro	e. I think <u>I go</u> / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. <u>I</u> Will you do	o / I'll go new car. I give / I' anything	for a walk. He told me l U give / I'm this evenin	ast week. going to g	ive it to her.'	
Jim 'Th A: B:	is going to buy is letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going /	e. I think <u>I go</u> / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. <u>I</u> Will you do ' I'll go out w	o / I'll go new car. I give / I' anything vith some	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm this evening friends.	ast week. going to g g?	ive it to her.'	
Jim Th A: B:	is going to buy is letter is for Ro Are you doing /	e. I think <u>I go</u> / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. <u>I</u> Will you do ' I'll go out w	o / I'll go new car. I give / I' anything vith some	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm this evening friends.	ast week. going to g g?	ive it to her.'	Tax a
Jim Th A: B:	is going to buy his letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / hentences with Sha	e. I think <u>I go</u> / will buy a rose.' 'OK. <u>I</u> Will you do 'I'll go out w	o / I'll go new car. I give / I' anything vith some se words	for a walk. He told me lil give / I'm this evening friends. from Box A ar	ast week. going to g g? nd Box B.	r ell d	
Jim 'Th A: B:	is going to buy is letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / entences with Sha	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do 'I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make	o / I'll go new car. I give / I' anything rith some	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. from Box A ale some same same same same same same same sa	ast week. going to g g? nd Box B. undwiches	the television	
Jim 'Th A: B:	is going to buy is letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / entences with Sha	e. I think <u>I go</u> / will buy a rose.' 'OK. <u>I</u> Will you do 'I'll go out w	o / I'll go new car. I give / I' anything rith some	for a walk. He told me l give / I'm this evening friends. from Box A ar	ast week. going to g g? nd Box B. undwiches	r ell d	
Jim 'Th A: B:	is going to buy is letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / entences with Sha	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do 'I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make	o / I'll go new car. I give / I' anything rith some se words	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. from Box A and some sather wire.	ast week. going to g g? nd Box B. andwiches	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: B:	is going to buy is letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / entences with Sha	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do 'I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make n off open	o / I'll go new car. I give / I' anything rith some se words	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. from Box A ale some same same same same same same same sa	ast week. going to g g? nd Box B. andwiches	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: B:	is going to buy his letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / hentences with Sha A turn turn	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make n off open in this room	b / I'll go new car. I give / I' anything with some se words	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. from Box A and some sather wire.	ast week. going to g g? nd Box B. andwiches	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: B:	is going to buy his letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / hentences with Sha A turn turn turn It's very warm	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good	new car. If go new car. If give / I'll go new car. If give / I'l anything with some se words	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. from Box A and some sather wire.	ast week. going to g g? nd Box B. andwiches	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: B: /rite s	is going to buy his letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / hentences with Sha A turn turn It's very warm his programme is	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good I'm hungr	o / I'll go new car. I give / I'l anything with some se words	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. from Box A and some sather wire.	ast week. going to g g? nd Box B. andwiches	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: B: /rite s	is going to buy his letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / hentences with Sha A turn turn It's very warm his programme is	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good	o / I'll go new car. I give / I'l anything with some se words	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. from Box A and some sather wire.	ast week. going to g g? nd Box B. andwiches	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: B: //rite s	is going to buy his letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / hentences with Sha It's very warm his programme is It's dark	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good I'm hungry c in this room	b / I'll go new car. I give / I'l anything with some se words	for a walk. He told me l ll give / I'm this evening friends. from Box A and B some sa the win Shall I open	ast week. going to g g? Ind Box B. Indwiches Indwow In the wind	the television the light	n
Jim 'Th A: B: Vrite s	is going to buy his letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / hentences with Sha A turn turn It's very warm his programme is	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good I'm hungry c in this room	b / I'll go new car. I give / I'l anything with some se words	for a walk. He told me l ll give / I'm this evening friends. from Box A and B some sa the win Shall I open	ast week. going to g g? Ind Box B. Indwiches Indwow In the wind	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: B: Vrite s	is going to buy his letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / hentences with Sha A turn turn his programme is It's dark hentences with Sha	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good I'm hungry c in this room	o / I'll go new car. I give / I'l anything with some se words I.	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm this evening friends. From Box A and B some sathe wire. Shall I open	ast week. going to g g? Ind Box B. Indwiches	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: B: Vrite s	It's very warm is programme is It's dark	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good I'm hungry in this room all we ? Ch	o / I'll go new car. I give / I'l anything with some se words I.	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. From Box A and B some sathe wire. Shall I open led from Box A led buy	ast week. going to g g? Ind Box B. Indwiches Indow In the wine and Box B. invite	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: B: Vrite s	is going to buy his letter is for Ro Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / hentences with Sha It's very warm his programme is It's dark hentences with Sha	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good I'm hungry in this room all we ? Ch	o / I'll go new car. I give / I'l anything with some se words I.	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. From Box A and Box	ast week. going to g g? Ind Box B. Indwiches	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: B: /rite s	It's very warm is programme is It's dark	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good I'm hungry in this room all we ? Ch	o / I'll go new car. I give / I'l anything with some se words l. l. y. n. oose word re	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. From Box A and B some sathe wire. Shall I open buy go	ast week. going to g g? Ind Box B. Indwiches Indow In the wine and Box B. invite Invite Invite Invite Invite Invite	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: B: //rite s	It's very warm is programme is It's dark entences with Share and It's dark entences with Share and It's dark entences with Share what what	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good I'm hungry in this room all we ? Ch when	o / I'll go new car. I give / I'l anything rith some se words l. d oose word re	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. From Box A and B some sathe wire. Shall I open led from Box A led buy	ast week. going to g g? Ind Box B. Indwiches Indow In the wine and Box B. invite Invite Invite Invite Invite Invite	the television the light	
Jim 'Th A: Vrite s	It's very warm is programme is It's dark Let's g	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good I'm hungry in this room all we ? Ch when time who	o / I'll go new car. I give / I'l anything with some se words l. l. y. n. oose word re	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm gethis evening friends. From Box A and B some sathe wire. Shall I open buy go OK, what	ast week. going to g g? Ind Box B. Indwiches Indow In the wind and Box B. invite Ineet time shal	the television the light	
Jim A: B: Vrite s	It's very warm is programme is It's dark A what what Let's g Let's later is for Road Are you doing / Yes, I'm going / Yes, I	e. I think I go / will buy a r ose.' 'OK. I Will you do I'll go out w all I ? Choo n on make n off open in this room n't very good I'm hungry in this room all we ? Ch when	o / I'll go new car. I give / I'l anything with some se words l. l. y. oose word re t. y.	for a walk. He told me led give / I'm this evening friends. From Box A and B some sathe wire. Shall I open the buy go OK, what OK, what	ast week. going to g g? Ind Box B. Indwiches Indow In the wine and Box B. invite	the television the light dow?	

A



He **might go** to New York. (= it is possible that he will go to New York)



It might rain.
(= it is possible that it will rain)

might + infinitive (might go / might be / might rain etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	might	(not)	be go play come etc.
----------------------------	-------	-------	-------------------------------

- **B** I **might** ... = it is possible that I will ...:
 - I might go to the cinema this evening. (= it is possible that I will go)
 - A: When is Barbara going to phone you?
 B: I don't know. She might phone this afternoon.
 - Take an umbrella with you. It might rain.
 - Buy a lottery ticket. You might be lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
 - 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I might.' (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

- I'm playing tennis tomorrow. (sure)
 I might play tennis tomorrow. (possible)
- Barbara is going to phone later. (sure)
 Barbara might phone later. (possible)
- The negative is **might not**:
 - I might not go to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
 - Sue might not come to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)
- D may

You can use may in the same way. I may ... = I might ...:

- I may go to the cinema this evening. (= I might go)
- Sue may not come to the party. (= Sue might not come)

May I ... ? = Is it OK to ... / Can I ... ?:

- May I ask a question? (= Can I ask?)
- 'May I sit here?' 'Yes, of course.'

30.1

W	rite sentences with might .	
1 2 3 4 5	(it's possible that I'll go to the cinema) (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow) (it's possible that Ann will forget to phone) (it's possible that it will snow today) (it's possible that I'll be late tonight)	I might go to the cinema. I
W	rite sentences with might not.	
6 7	(it's possible that Mary will not be here) (it's possible that I won't have time to meet	you)
	mebody is asking you about your plans. You haved write sentences with I might .	ve some ideas but you are not sure. Choose from the list
	fish go away Italy M	Ionday new car taxi
1 2 3 4 5 6	Where are you going for your holidays? What are you doing at the weekend? When will you see Ann again? What are you going to have for dinner? How are you going to get home tonight? I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it?	I'm not sure. I might go to Italy. I don't know. I I'm not sure. I don't know. I'm not sure. I haven't decided yet.
Yo	u ask Bill questions about his plans. Sometimes	
1 2	Are you playing tennis tomorrow Are you going out in the evening	
3	Are you going to get up early	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
4	Are you working tomorrow	7? No, I'm not.
5	Will you be at home tomorrow morning	
6	Are you going to watch television	
8	Are you going out in the afternoon Are you going shopping	
	w write about Bill. Use might where necessary.	, and the same of
1 2	He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon. He might go out this evening.	* 1 more a constitue a 5 may on 1
3	He	
4		
5		
6		
8		
Wr	ite three things that you might do tomorrow.	gt MO givener - Chileno Deno E - en el
1	and married a process party and the	
2		
3		

can and could

A





He can play the piano.

can + infinitive (can do / can play / can come etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it }	can cannot (can't)	do play see come etc.
---------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------------

can	I/we/you/they he/she/it	do? play? see? come? etc.	
-----	----------------------------	------------------------------------	--

- **I can** do something = I know how to do it or it is possible for me to do it:
 - I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
 - Sarah can speak Italian but she can't speak Spanish.
 - 'Can you swim?' 'Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.'
 - 'Can you change twenty pounds?' 'I'm sorry, I can't.'
 - I'm having a party next week but Paul and Jenny can't come.
- For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use could/couldn't:
 - When I was young, I **could run** very fast.
 - Before Anna came to Britain, she couldn't understand much English. Now she can understand everything.
 - I was tired last night but I couldn't sleep.
 - I had a party last week but Paul and Jenny couldn't come.
- D Can you ...? Could you ...? Can I ...? Could I ...?

We use Can you ...? or Could you ...? when we ask people to do things:

- Can you open the door, please? or Could you open the door, please?
- Can you wait a moment, please? or Could you wait ...?

We use Can I have ...? or Could I have ...? to ask for something:

• (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please? or Could I have ...?

Can I ... ? or Could I ... ? = is it OK to do something?:

- Tom, can I borrow your umbrella? or Tom, could I borrow your umbrella?
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Gerry, please? or ... could I speak ...?

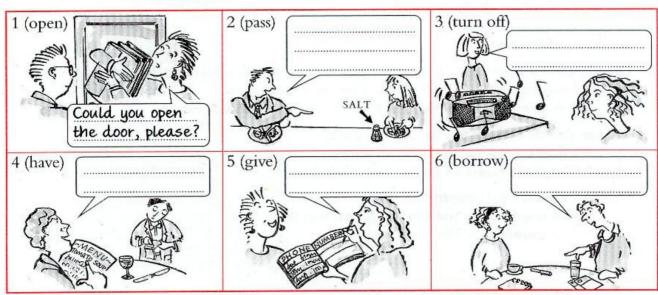
31.1	Ask Steve if he can do these things:			STEVE
	1 0 0 2 3	The second	/rou/	Carried St.
			1 Can you swim?	
	4. 5	CHESS	3	
	5	6	45	
	10 KILOMETRES	MAT	6	
	Can you do these things? Write sent	ences about you	irself. Use I can or I can't.	
	7 I	9	11	

Complete these sentences. Use **can** or **can't** + one of these verbs:

come	ind nea	11 300	Speak
1 I'm sor	ry but we can'	t come to	your party next Saturday.
2 I like tl	his hotel room.	You	the mountains from the window.
3 You are	e speaking very	quietly. I	you.
4 Have y	ou seen my bag	? I	it.
5 Cather	ine got the job l	because she	five languages.
Complete t	hese sentences I	lse can't or c	couldn't + one of these verbs:

ea	t decide	find	go	go	sleep
1	I was tired but	I couldn	't sleep		
2	I wasn't hungr	y yesterda	y. I		my dinner.
					•
4	I wanted to spe	eak to Ma	rtin yest	erday but	t Ihim.
5	Jim		to	o the con	cert next Saturday. He has to work.
6	Paula			to the m	eeting last week. She was ill.

What do you say in these situations? Use $\ \mathbf{can}\ \mathrm{or}\ \mathbf{could}.$ Use the words in brackets (\ldots) .



must mustn't needn't

A



must + infinitive (must do / must see etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	must	do stop go write etc.
----------------------------	------	--------------------------------

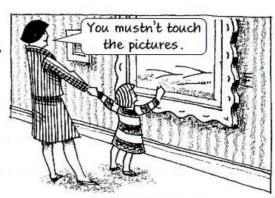
- B Use **must** when you think it is necessary to do something:
 - The windows are very dirty. I must clean them.
 - It's a fantastic film. You must see it.
 - We must go to the bank today. We haven't got any money.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use had to ... (not must):

- We had to go to the bank yesterday. (not 'We must go ... yesterday')
- I had to walk home last night. There were no buses. (not 'I must walk')
- C mustn't (= must not)

I **mustn't** (do something) = it is necessary *not* to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:

- I must hurry. I mustn't be late.
- I mustn't forget to phone Julia. (= I must remember to phone her)
- Be happy! You mustn't be sad. (= don't be sad)
- You mustn't touch the pictures.
 (= don't touch the pictures)



needn't (= need not)

I **needn't** (do something) = it is *not necessary* to do it, I don't need to do it:

- I needn't clean the windows. They aren't very dirty.
- You needn't go to the bank today. I can give you some money.

You can also say **don't need to** ... (= needn't):

- I don't need to clean the windows.
- You don't need to go to the bank today.

Compare **needn't** and **mustn't**:

- You needn't go. You can stay here if you want.
- You mustn't go. You must stay here.

32.1 Complete the sentences. Use must + one of these verbs:							
	be go go learn meet wash wi	n					
	1 We must go to the bank today. We haven't g	ot any money.					
	2 Marilyn is a very interesting person. Youher.						
	3 My hands are dirty. I them.						
	4 You to drive. It will be very useful.						
	5 I to the post office. I need some stamps. 6 The game tomorrow is very important for us. We						
	6 The game tomorrow is very important for us. \ 7 You can't always have things immediately. You		nt				
32.2		pauci	iic.				
04.L	ratin rinator rinato.						
	1 I had to go to the bank yesterday to get som	e money.					
	2 It's late. go now.						
	3 I don't usually work on Saturdays but last Saturd						
	4 get up early tomorrow. I've go		a d all the second				
	5 I went to London by train last week. The train6 I was nearly late for my appointment this morn						
	7 I forgot to phone David yesterday.		there on time.				
		priorie mini later today.					
32.3	Complete the sentences. Use mustn't or needn't + one	of these verbs:					
	elean forget hurry lose wait	write					
	1 The windows aren't very dirty. You needn't cl	ean them					
	2 We have a lot of time. We	AMARIAN CITCHI.					
	3 Keep these documents in a safe place. You						
	4 I'm not ready yet but you	for me. You can go now and	l I'll come later.				
	5 We to turn off the li						
	6 I the letter now. I ca	n do it tomorrow.					
	Find the sentences with the same meaning.						
	Find the sentences with the same meaning.						
	1 We can leave the meeting early. A V	We must stay until the end.	1 D				
		We couldn't stay until the end.	2				
	3 We mustn't leave the meeting early. C V	We can't stay until the end.	3				
	0 ,	We needn't stay until the end.	4				
	5 We had to leave the meeting early. E V	We can stay until the end.	5				
		The state of the s	THE 26 1				
32.5	Put in must / had to / mustn't / needn't.						
	1 You needn't go. You can stay here if you wan	it.					
	2 It's a fantastic film. You must see it.	as shopping					
	We've got enough food, so weWe didn't have any food yesterday, so we						
	4 We didn't have any food yesterday, so we						
	6 You tell Sue what happened. I						
	7 I hurry or I'll be late.	The state of the s					
	8 'Why were you so late?' 'Iw	vait half an hour for a bus.'					
	9 We decide now. We can decide						

should

A



should + *infinitive* (**should** do / **should** watch *etc.*):

I/we/you/they he/she/it }	should shouldn't	do stop go watch etc.
---------------------------	---------------------	--------------------------------

- (You) **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:
 - Tom should go to bed earlier. He goes to bed very late and he's always tired.
 - It's a good film. You should go and see it.
 - When you play tennis, you should always watch the ball.
- (You) **shouldn't** do something = it is *not* a good thing to do. **Shouldn't** = should not:
 - Tom **shouldn't go** to bed so late.
 - You watch TV all the time. You shouldn't watch TV so much.
- We often use think with should:

I think ... should ...:

- I think Carol should buy some new clothes.
 (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It's late. I think I should go home now.
- A: Shall I buy this coat?
 B: Yes, I think you should.

I don't think ... should ...:

- I don't think you should work so hard.
 (= I don't think it is a good idea.)
- I don't think we should go yet. It's too early.

Do you think ... should ... ?:

- Do you think I should buy this hat?
- What time do you think we should go home?



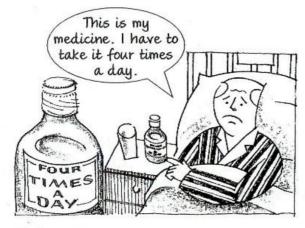
- Must is stronger than should:
 - It's a good film. You should go and see it.
 - It's a fantastic film. You must go and see it.
- Another way to say should ... is ought to ...:
 - It's a good film. You **ought to go** and see it. (= you should go)
 - I think Carol ought to buy some new clothes. (= Carol should buy)

33.1 Complete the sentences. Use **you should** + one of these verbs:

clean go take visit watch wear
1 When you play tennis, you should watch the ball. 2 It's late and you're very tired
Write about the people in the pictures. Use He/She shouldn't so .
You watch TV too much. You eat too much. You work too hard.
1 She shouldn't watch TV so much. 3 hard. 2 He 4
You ask a friend for advice. Write questions with Do you think I should?
1 You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?) You ask your friend: Do you think I should buy this jacket? 2 You can't drive. (learn?) You ask your friend: Do you think 3 You don't like your job. (get another job?) You ask your friend: 4 You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?) You ask your friend:
Write sentences with I think should or I don't think should
1 It's late. (go home now) I think we should go home now. 2 That coat is too big for you. (buy it) I don't think you should buy it. 3 You don't need your car. (sell it) 4 Diane needs a rest. (have a holiday) 5 Sally and Colin are too young. (get married) 6 You're not well this morning. (go to work) 7 James isn't well today. (go to the doctor) 8 The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there)
What do you think? Write sentences with should .
1 I think everybody should learn another language. 2 I think everybody

I have to ...

A



I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they	have	to do to work
he/she/it	has	to go to wear etc.

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
- Jill starts work at 7 o'clock, so she has to get up at 6.
- You have to pass a test before you can get a driving licence.
- B The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is had to ...:
 - I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
 - We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.
- In questions and negatives we use **do/does** (present) and **did** (past):

present

do	I/we/you/they	have to?
does	he/she/it	have to :

I/we/you/they	don't	have to
he/she/it	doesn't	nave to

past

did I/we/you/they he/she/it have to

I/we/you/they he/she/it	didn't have to
----------------------------	----------------

- What time do you have to go to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does Jill have to work on Sundays?
- Why did they have to leave the party early?

I don't have to (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.
- Ian doesn't have to work very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We didn't have to wait very long for the bus.
- must and have to

Use must or have to when you say what you think is necessary, when you give your opinion:

• It's a fantastic film. You must see it. or You have to see it.

When you are not giving your personal opinion, use have to (not must):

- Jill won't be at work this afternoon. She has to go to the doctor. (this is not my personal opinion it is a fact)
- In many countries, men **have to** do military service. (this is not my opinion it is the law in those countries)

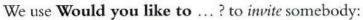
Complete the sentences. Use have to or has	to + one of these verbs:
do read speak travel	wear
1 My eyes are not very good. I have to	o wear glasses.
2 At the end of the course all the studer	
3 Mary is studying literature. She	a lot of books.
	ish. Youvery slowly to hi
5 Kate is not often at home. She	a lot in her job.
Complete the sentences. Use have to or had	to + one of these verbs:
answer buy change go	walk
1 We had to walk home last night.	There were no buses.
2 It's late. I n	ow. I'll see you tomorrow.
3 I went to the supermarket after work	yesterday. Isome food.
4 This train doesn't go all the way to Lo	ondon. You at Bristol.
5 We did an exam yesterday. We	six questions out of ten.
Complete the questions. Some are present a	nd some are past.
1 I have to get up early tomorrow.	What time do you have to get up?
2 George had to wait a long time.	How long
3 Liz has to go somewhere.	Where
We had to pay a lot of money.	How much
5 I have to do some work.	What exactly
3 Why did you get up early? You	have to go out.
	e
Which is correct? Sometimes must and have	
1 It's a great film. You must see / have t	
2 In many countries, men must do / ha	
3 You can't park your car here for nothing	
	night, so I must borrow / had to borrow some.
5 I eat too much chocolate. I really mu	st stop / have to stop.
6 'Why is Paula going now?' 'She mu	st meet / has to meet somebody.'
7 What's wrong? You must tell / have to	o tell me. I want to help you.
Write some things that you (or your friends of	or family) have to do or had to do.
1 (every day) I have to travel ten m	iles every day.
3 (tomorrow)	

I'd like ... Would you like ...?

Would you like ...? = Do you want ...?

We use **Would you like** ...? to offer things:

- A: Would you like some coffee? B: No, thank you.
- A: Would you like a chocolate?
 - B: Yes, please.
- A: What would you like, tea or coffee? B: Tea, please.



- Would you like to go for a walk?
- A: Would you like to have dinner with us on Sunday? B: Yes, **I'd love to**. (= I would love to have dinner with you)
- What would you like to do this evening?
- B **I'd like** ... is a polite way to say 'I want'. **I'd** like = **I would** like:
 - I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink. • (in a tourist office) **I'd like** some information about hotels, please.
 - I'd like to see the film on television this evening.
- C Would you like ...? and Do you like ...?

Would you like ...? / I'd like ...



Would you like some tea? = Do you want some tea?

- A: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight? (= Do you want to go tonight?) B: Yes, I'd love to.
- I'd like an orange, please. (= Can I have an orange?)
- What would you like to do next weekend?

Do you like ...? / I like ...

Would you like a chocolate?

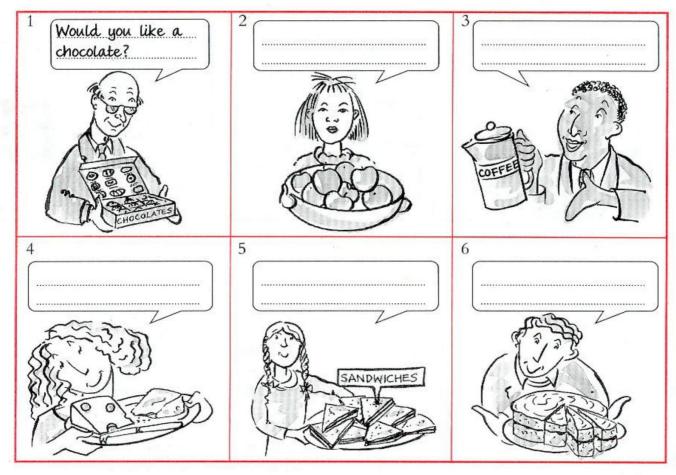
> Yes, please.



Do you like tea? = Do you think tea is nice?

- A: Do you like going to the cinema? (in general)
 - B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- I like oranges. (in general)
- What do you like to do at weekends?

What are the people in the pictures saying? Use Would you like ...?

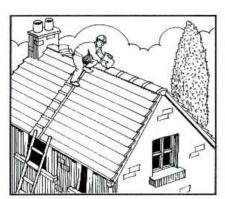


- What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use Would you like to ...?
 - 1 You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go) You say: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?
 - 2 You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play) You say:
 - 3 You've got some holiday photographs. Sue hasn't seen them yet. (see) You say:
 - 4 You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will go. (go) You say:
 - 5 It's raining and Sue is going out. She hasn't got an umbrella but you have one. (borrow) You say:

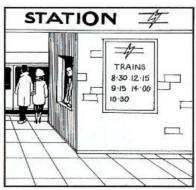
Which is right?

- 1 'Do you like / Would you like a chocolate?' 'Yes, please.' Would you like is right
- 2 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.'
- 3 'Do you like / Would you like an ice-cream?' 'No, thank you.'
- 4 'What do you like / would you like to drink?' 'A glass of water, please.'
- 5 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'
- 6 I like / I'd like tomatoes but I don't eat them very often.
- 7 What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
- 8 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'
 9 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' 'Yes I'm enjoying it'
- 9 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' 'Yes, I'm enjoying it.'
- 10 I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.

there is there are







There's a train at 10.30.



There are seven days in a week.

singular

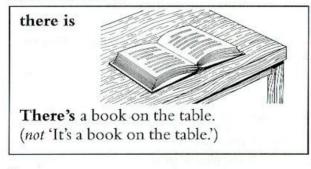
there is ... (there's) is there ...? there is not ... (there isn't or there's not)

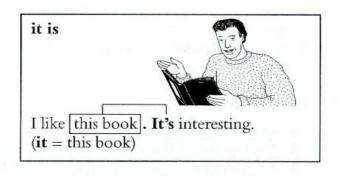
plural

there are ... are there ...? there are not ... (there aren't)

- There's a big tree in the garden.
- There's a good film on TV tonight.
- A: Have you got any money? B: Yes, there's some in my bag.
- A: Excuse me, is there a hotel near here? B: Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.
- There are some big trees in the garden.
- There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: **Are there** any letters for me today? B: Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.
- This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- How many players are there in a football team?
- There are 11 players in a football team.

there is and it is





Compare:

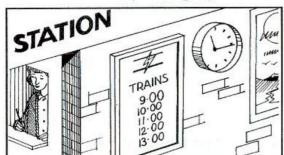
- 'What's that noise?' 'It's a train.' (it = that noise) **There's** a train at 10.30. It's a fast train. (it = the 10.30 train)
- There's a lot of salt in this soup. I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (it = this soup)

hat you know). Use There is/are/isn't/aren't . 4 5 6
in the class?' 'Twenty.' a film in the camera.' y centre to the airport?' 'Yes. Every 20 minutes.' 'No, everything is OK.' wn. any chairs. from the boxes.
days days the USA a week states a rugby team the English alphab
fast train?'very expensive. mething in my eye.'
fa

there will be

there was/were there has/have been

there was / there were (past)



There is a train every hour.

The time now is 11.15. There was a train at 11 o'clock.

Compare:

there is/are (present)

- There is a good film on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a very big hotel. There are 250 rooms.
- Are there any letters for me this morning?
- I'm hungry but there isn't anything to eat.

there was/were (past)

- There was a good film on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. There were 250 rooms.
- Were there any letters for me yesterday?
- When I got home, I was hungry but there wasn't anything to eat.

there has been / there have been (present perfect)



- Look! There's been an accident. (there's been = there has been)
- This road is very dangerous. There have been many accidents.

Compare there was (past):

There was an accident last night. (not 'There has been an accident last night.')

For past simple and present perfect see Unit 20.

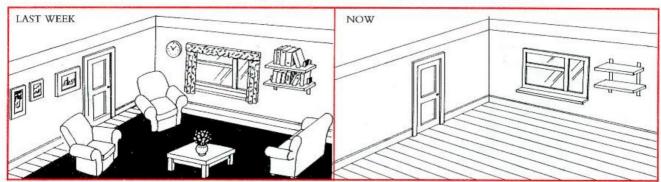
C there will be



- Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so there will be a new manager soon.
- I'm going away tomorrow. I'll do my packing today because there won't be time tomorrow. (there won't be = there will not be)

27.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty but what was in the room last week? Write sentences with **There was** ... or **There were** ... + the words in the list.

an armchair a carpet some flowers a sofa some books a clock three pictures a small table



1	There was a clock on the wall near the window.
2	on the floor.
3	on the wall near the door.
4	in the middle of the room.
5	on the table.
6	on the shelves.
7	in the corner near the door
8	opposite the door.

- 37.2 Put in there was / there wasn't / was there / there were / there weren't / were there.
 - 1 I was hungry but there wasn't anything to eat.
 - 2 Were there any letters for me yesterday?
 - 3a football match on TV last night. Did you see it?
 - 4 'We stayed at a very nice hotel.' 'Did you? ______ a swimming pool?'

 - 6 The wallet was empty. any money in it.

 - 8 We didn't visit the museum. enough time.
 - 9 I'm sorry I'm late. a lot of traffic.
 - 10 Twenty years ago many tourists here. Now there are a lot.
- 37.3 Put in there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be.

.1.	a good film on TV yesterday evening.
2	
3	a party at the club last Friday but I didn't go.
4	'Where can I buy a newspaper?' '
	'Why are those policemen outside the bank?' ' a robbery.'
6	When we arrived at the cinema,
7	When you arrive tomorrow,somebody at the station to meet you
	Ten years ago
	Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now.

A

We use it for time/day/distance/weather:

time



- What time is it?
- It's half past ten.
- It's late.
- It's time to go home.

day



- What day is it?
- It's Thursday.
- It's 16 March.
- It was my birthday yesterday.

distance

- It's three miles from our house to the city centre.
- How far is it from London to Bristol?
- It's a long way from here to the station.
- We can walk home. It isn't far.

We use far in questions (is it far?) and negatives (it isn't far). We use a long way in positive sentences (it's a long way).

weather

our house



- It's raining. It isn't raining. Is it snowing?
- It rains a lot here. It didn't rain yesterday. Does it snow very often?
- It's warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
- It's a nice day today.

Compare it and there:

• It rains a lot in winter.
There is a lot of rain in winter.

citycentre

It was very windy.
 There was a strong wind yesterday.

B It's nice to ... etc.

It's

easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.

to ...

- It 's nice to see you again . (it = to see you again)
- It's impossible to understand her. (it = to understand her)
- It wasn't easy to find your house. (it = to find your house)
- C Don't forget it:
 - It's raining again. (not 'Is raining again')
 - Is it true that you are going away? (not 'Is true that ...')

38.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use It's

A something		William				
1!	lt's raining.		4			
3			5 6			
Put ir	n it is (it's) or is it.					
1 W	That time is it?					
	le must go now.					
	true that Bill ca What daytoda				Wednesd	ovr'
	ten kilometres					ay.
	possible to pho					
	Oo you want to walk to the			n't know. H	low far	?'
	Linda's birthda don't believe it!					
	questions with How far?	•				
1 (h	ere / the station)	How fo	ur is it f	rom here to	o the station	1?
	ne hotel / the beach)	How				
The state of the s	New York / Washington)					
4 (ye	our house / the airport)				••••••	
Put in	it or there.					
1!	t rains a lot in winter.		6	I was afraid	d because	was very darl
	lere was a strong wind yes		7	v	vas a storm la	st night. Did you
	was a nice day yeste			hear it?	1	
4 W	e can't go skiings s hot in this room. (. isn't any Inen a svi	snow. 8	nearest sho		om here to the
				mearest sine	P.	
Comp	lete the sentences. Choose fr	om the box	es.			
	easy dangerous	W	ork in th	is office	get up early	
		to V		ent places	go out alone	
it's	difficult nice			in	make friend	
it's	difficult nice impossible interesting	se	e you aga	1111	make mend	s
	impossible interesting					S
	impossible interesting	ficult to	get up ea	arly in the	e morning.	
1 If 2	impossible interesting	ficult to	get up ea	arly in th	e morning.	y are you?

lam I don't etc.



She isn't tired but he is. (**he is** = he is tired)



He likes tea but she doesn't. (**she doesn't** = she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat words ('he is tired', 'she doesn't like tea').

You can use these verbs in the same way:

am/is/are was/were have/has do/does/did can will might must

- I haven't got a car but my sister has. (= my sister has got a car)
- A: Please help me.
 - B: I'm sorry. I can't. (= I can't help you)
- A: Are you tired?
 - B: I was, but I'm not now. (= I was tired but I'm not tired now)
- A: Do you think Ann will phone this evening?
 - B: She **might**. (= she might phone)
- A: Are you going now?
 - B: Yes, I'm afraid I must. (= I must go)

You cannot use 'm/'s/'ve etc. (short forms) in this way. You must use am/is/have etc.:

• She isn't tired but he is. (not ... but he's)

But you can use isn't / haven't / won't etc. (negative short forms):

- My sister has got a car but I haven't.
- 'Are you and Jim working tomorrow?' 'I am but Jim isn't.'
- B You can use I am / I'm not etc. after Yes and No:
 - 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.'
 - 'Will Alan be here tomorrow?' 'Yes, he will. / No, he won't.'
 - 'Is there a bus to the airport?' 'Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.'
- C We use do/does for the present simple: (\Rightarrow Units 6–7)
 - I don't like hot weather but Sue does. (= Sue likes hot weather)
 - Sue works hard but I don't. (= I don't work hard)
 - 'Do you enjoy your work?' 'Yes, I do.'

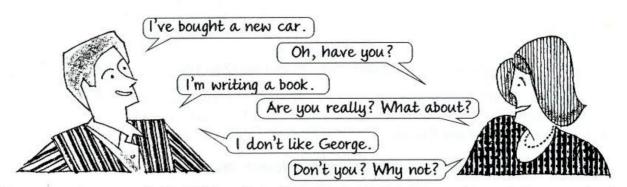
We use **did** for the past simple: $(\Rightarrow Unit 12)$

- A: Did you and John enjoy the film? B: I did but John didn't. (= I enjoyed it but John didn't enjoy it)
- 'I enjoyed the film.' 'I **did** too.' (= I enjoyed it too)
- 'Did it rain yesterday?' 'No, it didn't.'

39.1	Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (is/have/can etc.) each time.
	1 Kate wasn't hungry but we were . 4 I haven't seen the film but Tom . 5 Diane won't be here but Chris . 3 Bill can't help you but I . 6 You weren't late but I
39.2	Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/can't etc.).
	1 My sister can play the piano but I can't . 4 Richard has got a car but I
39.3	Complete these sentences with do/does/did or don't/doesn't/didn't.
	1 I don't like hot weather but Sue
39.4	Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people. (See the example.)
39.5	1 I didn't go out last night but my friends did. 2 I like but 3 I don't but 4 I'm 5 I haven't Put in a verb, positive or negative. 1 'Are you tired?' 'I was earlier but I'm not now.'
	2 John is happy today but he yesterday. 3 The post office isn't open yet but the shops
	4 I haven't got a video camera but I know somebody who
	5 I would like to help you but I'm afraid I
	6 I don't usually go to work by car but I yesterday.7 A: Have you ever been to the United States?
	B: No, but Sandra
	8 'Do you and Ann watch TV a lot?' 'I but Ann doesn't.'
	9 I've been invited to the party but Kate
	10 'Do you think Diane will pass her exams?' 'Yes, I'm sure she
39.6	Answer these questions about yourself. Use Yes, I have. / No, I'm not. etc.
	1 Are you British? No, I'm not. 2 Have you got a car? 6 Do you like classical music? 7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow?
	3 Do you feel well? 8 Have you ever been in hospital?
	4 Is it snowing? ————————————————————————————————————
	5 Are you hungry? 10 Were you asleep at 3 a.m.?

Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.

A



You can say have you? / is it? / can't he? etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:

- 'You're late.' 'Oh, am I? I'm sorry.'
- 'I was ill last week.' 'Were you? I didn't know that.'
- 'It's raining again.' 'Is it? It was sunny ten minutes ago.'
- 'There's a letter for you.' 'Is there? Where is it?'
- 'Bill can't drive.' 'Can't he? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm not hungry.' 'Aren't you? I am.'
- 'Sue isn't at work today.' 'Isn't she? Is she ill?'

Use do/does for the present simple and did for the past simple:

- 'I speak four languages.' 'Do you? Which ones?'
- 'Tom doesn't eat meat.' 'Doesn't he? Does he eat fish?'
- 'Linda got married last week.' 'Did she? Really?'

B Question tags

You can use have you? / is it? / can't she? etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'mini-questions' are question tags.

a positive sentence \rightarrow a negative question tag a negative sentence \rightarrow a positive question tag



positive → negative

It's a beautiful day,
Sally lives in London,
You closed the window,
Those shoes are nice,
Tom will be here soon,
won't he?

Yes, it's lovely. Yes, that's right. Yes, I think so. Yes, very nice. Yes, probably.

negative \rightarrow positive

That isn't your car, is it?
You haven't met my mother, have you?
Sally doesn't smoke, does she?
You won't be late, will you?

No, my car is white. No, I haven't.

No, she doesn't. No, I'm never late.

40.1 Answer with Do you? / Doesn't she? / Did they? etc.

I speak four languages.
I work in a bank.
I didn't go to work yesterday.
Jill doesn't like me.
You look tired.
Julia phoned me last night.

Do you	?	Which ones?
	?	I work in a bank too.
	?	Were you ill?
	?	Why not?
	?	I feel fine.
	?	What did she say?

40.2 Answer with Have you? / Haven't you? / Did she? / Didn't she? etc.

I've bought a new car. 1 2 Tim doesn't eat meat. 3 I've lost my key. 4 Sue can't drive. I was born in Italy. 5 I didn't sleep well last night. 6 There's a film on TV tonight. 7 I'm not happy. 8 9 I met Paula last week. 10 Margaret works in a factory. I won't be here next week. 11 The clock isn't working. 12

Have you?	What make is it?
Doesn't he	Does he eat fish?
?	When did you last have it?
??	She should learn.
?	I didn't know that.
?	Was the bed uncomfortable?
?	Are you going to watch it?
?	Why not?
?	How is she?
?	What kind of factory?
?	Where will you be?
?	It was working yesterday.

40.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (isn't it? / haven't you? etc.).

```
1 It's a beautiful day, isn't it?
2 These flowers are nice, ?
3 Judy was at the party, ?
4 You've been to Paris, ?
5 You speak German, ?
6 Martin looks tired, ?
7 You'll help me, ?
```

Yes, it's lovely.
Yes, what are they?
Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
Yes, many times.
Yes, but not very well.
Yes, he works very hard.
Yes, of course I will.

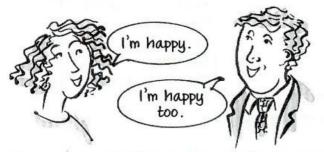
40.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (is it? / do you? etc.) or negative (isn't it? / don't you? etc.).

1	You haven't got a car, have you?	
2	You aren't tired,	?
3	Carol is a very nice person,	?
4	You can play the piano,	?
5	You don't know Mike's sister,	?
6	Sally went to university,	?
7	The film wasn't very good,	?
8	Ann lives near you,	
9	You won't tell anybody what I said,	?

No, I can't drive.
No, I feel fine.
Yes, everybody likes her.
Yes, but I'm not very good.
No, I've never met her.
Yes, she studied economics.
No, it was terrible.
That's right. In the same street.
No, of course not.

too/either so am I / neither do I etc.

A too and either





We use too and either at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a *positive* verb:

- A: I'm happy.
 - B: I'm happy too.
- A: I enjoyed the film. B: I enjoyed it too.
- Mary is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor too.

We use either after a negative verb:

- A: I'm not happy.
 - B: I'm **not** happy **either**. (not 'I'm not ... too')
- A: I can't cook.
 - B: I can't either. (not 'I can't too')
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers either.

B so am I / neither do I etc.



neither

SO

am/is/are ... was/were ... do/does ... did ... have/has ... can ... will ... would ...



so am I = I am too

so have I = I have too (etc.):

- A: I'm working.
 - B: **So am I**. (= I'm working too)
- A: I was late for work today.
 - B: So was John. (= John was late too)
- A: I work in a bank.
 - B: So do I.
- A: We went to the cinema last night.
 - B: Did you? So did we.
- A: I'd like to go to Australia.
 - B: So would I.

neither am I = I'm not either **neither can** I = I can't either (etc.):

- A: I haven't got a key.
 - B: Neither have I. (= I haven't either)
- A: Ann can't cook.
 - B: **Neither can Tom.** (= Tom can't either)
- A: I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.
 - B: Neither will I.
- A: I never go to the cinema.
 - B: Neither do I.

You can also use **Nor** ... (= Neither ...):

- A: I'm not married.
 - B: Nor am I. or Neither am I.

Note that we say: So am I (not 'So I am'), Neither have I (not 'Neither I have').

Put in too or either.

1	I'm happy.
2	I'm not hungry.
3	I'm going out.
4	It rained on Saturday.
5	Jenny can't drive a car.
6	I don't like shopping.
7	Jane's mother is a teacher.

/ /
I'm happy too
I'm not hungry
I'm going out
It rained on Sunday
She can't ride a bicycle
I don't like shopping
Her father is a teacher

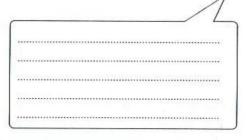
Answer with So ... I (So am I / So do I / So can I etc.).

1	I went to bed late last night.
2	I'm thirsty.
3	I've just had dinner.
4	I need a holiday.
5	I'll be late tomorrow.
6	I was very tired this morning.

			,	()		,		•	(-			į		•									i		ī																					
		•			•		•								•		•				,		,	•							,			,													•		
j				•	•																								,		,			,		•			,				,	,	,				
								,																				,																					
						,		,								,																																	
	•	•			•		•	•	•	,		•		•				•	•		,	•		•	•		•	•				0			•		•		•				-					•	

Answer with Neither.

7	I can't go to the party.
8	I didn't phone Alex last night.
9	I haven't got any money.
10	I'm not going out tomorrow.
11	I don't know what to do.



You are talking to Maria. Write true sentences about yourself. Where possible, use So ... I or Neither ... I. Look at these examples carefully:

16	1	2
810	Co.	s/
00	8	5-
4	26	1

4

5

6

7 8

9

10

11

12

9	1 m	tirea.
-		

you can answer:

6			1
(=	00	am	1.5

(1)	
ľm	not
1 111	noc.

on't work hard.)	you can answer:	Neither do

Neither	do	١.)	or
---------	----	-----	----

	\
7	\sim
0.5	14011
	20

I'm learning English. I can ride a bicycle. I'm not American. I like cooking. I don't like cold weather. I slept well last night. I've never been to Scotland. I don't write letters very often. I'm going out tomorrow evening. I haven't got a headache. I didn't watch TV last night. I often go to the cinema.

 į.

isn't haven't don't etc. (negatives)

We use **not** (**n**'**t**) in negative sentences:

positive · am	→ negative am not ('m not)	I'm not tired.
is	is not (isn't or 's not)	It isn't (or It's not) raining.
are	are not (aren't or 're not)	They aren't (or They're not) here.
was	was not (wasn't)	Julian wasn't hungry.
were	were not (weren't)	The shops weren't open.
have	have not (haven't)	I haven't finished my work.
has	has not (hasn't)	Sue hasn't got a car.
will	will not (won't)	We won't be here tomorrow.
can	cannot (can't)	George can't drive.
could	could not (couldn't)	I couldn't sleep last night.
must	must not (mustn't)	I mustn't forget to phone Ann.
should	should not (shouldn't)	You shouldn't work so hard.
would	would not (wouldn't)	I wouldn't like to be an actor.

B don't/doesn't/didn't

I/we/you/they do not (don't) work/live/go etc. Present simple negative: he/she/it does not (doesn't)

I/they/he/she (etc.) did not (didn't) work/live/go etc. Past simple negative:

positive \rightarrow negative I want to go out. \rightarrow I don't want to go out. They work hard. \rightarrow They don't work hard. Liz plays the guitar. \rightarrow Liz doesn't play the guitar. My father likes his job. \rightarrow My father doesn't like his job.

I got up early this morning. \rightarrow I didn't get up early this morning. They worked hard yesterday. \rightarrow They didn't work hard yesterday.

We played tennis. \rightarrow We didn't play tennis. Diane **had** a bath. \rightarrow Diane **didn't have** a bath.

Don't ...

Look! → Don't look! Wait for me. \rightarrow Don't wait for me.

Sometimes do is the main verb (don't do / doesn't do / didn't do):

Do something! → Don't do anything! Sue **does** a lot at weekends. \rightarrow Sue **doesn't do** much at weekends. I **did** what you said. \rightarrow I **didn't do** what you said.

42.1	Make these sentences negative.			
	1 He's gone away. He hasn't gone away	. 4	It's c	old today
	2 They're married.		We'l	l be late.
	3 I've had dinner.			should go.
42.2	Make these sentences negative. Use don't/does	n't/didn'	l.	
	1 She saw me. She didn't see me.	4	Hal	ives here.
	2 I like cheese.			way!
	3 They understood.	6		the shopping.
42.3	Make these sentences negative.			
	1 She can swim. She can't swim.	6	He'l	be pleased.
	2 They've arrived.			ne me tonight.
	3 I went to the bank.			ned yesterday.
	4 He speaks German.			ıld hear them.
	5 We were angry.			ieve you.
	5 We were angry.	10	1 Del	leve you.
42.4	Complete these sentences with a negative verb			on't etc.).
	1 They aren't rich. They haven't got	much m	oney.	*
	2 'Would you like something to eat?' 'N	No. than	k vou.	Ihungry.'
	3 I find my glasses. Have			
	4 George write letters ve			
	5 We can walk to the station from here. It			
	6 'Where's Jill?' 'Iknow			
	7 Be careful! fall!	vv		seen her today.
	8 We went to the cinema last night. I		1;	ke the film wery much
	9 I've been to Spain many times but I			
	10 Julia be here tomorrow			
	11 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me.			
	12 We didn't see what happened. We	······································	loc	oking at the time.
42.5	You ask Gary some questions. His answers are a or negative.	always 'Y	es' or 'l	No'. Write sentences about Gary, positive
	of flegative.	á	with a	
)	*	00	
40	DUT VUICE	1)	Š GA	RY
77	Are you married?	No.	1	He isn't married.
	Do you live in London?	Yes.	2	He lives in London.
	Were you born in London?	No.	3	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
	Do you like London?	No.	4	
	Would you like to live in the country?	Yes.	5	
		Yes.		-
	Can you drive?	100000000000000000000000000000000000000	6	
	Have you got a car?	No.	0	
	Do you read newspapers?	No.	8	
	Are you interested in politics?	No.	9	
	Do you watch TV most evenings?	Yes.	10	
	Did you watch TV last night?	No.	11	
	Did you go out last night?	Vec	12	

is it ...? have you ...? do they ...? etc. (questions 1)

A positive: you are You are eating.

question: are you Are you eating? What are you eating?

In questions, the first verb (is/are/have etc.) is before the subject:

```
positive
                                           question
                                          verb + subject
  subject + verb
                                          Am I late?
       I am late.
                                            Is that seat free?
That seat is free.
                                     Why was she angry?
    She was angry.
                                   Where has David gone?
  David has gone.
                                         Have you got a car?
    You have got a car.
                                    When will they be here?
   They will be here soon.
                                          Can Paula swim?
   Paula can swim.
```

Be careful with word order: the subject is after the first verb:

- Where has David gone? (not 'Where has gone David?')
- Are those people waiting for something? (not 'Are waiting ...?')
- When was the telephone invented? (not 'When was invented ...?')
- B do ... ? / does ... ? / did ... ?

Present simple questions:

do I/we/you/they does he/she/it work/live/go etc.

Past simple questions: did you/she/they (etc.) work/live/go etc.

```
question
   positive
They work hard.
                            \rightarrow
                                              Do they work hard?
                                   How often do you watch television?
 You watch television.
                            \rightarrow
                                          Does Chris work hard?
Chris works hard.
                            \rightarrow
                                  What time does she get up?
 She gets up early.
They worked hard.
                                             Did they work hard?
                            \rightarrow
 You had dinner.
                                        What did you have for dinner?
                            \rightarrow
                            \rightarrow
                                   What time did she get up?
 She got up early.
```

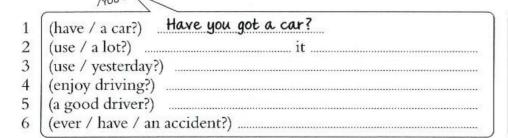
Sometimes do is the main verb (do you do / did he do etc.):

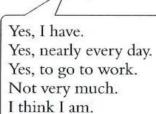
- What do you usually do at weekends?
- 'What does your brother do?' 'He works in a bank.'
- 'I broke my finger last week.' 'How did you do that?' (not 'How did you that?')
- Why isn't ...? / Why don't ...? etc. (Why + negative):
 - Where's John? Why isn't he here? (not 'Why he isn't here?')
 - Why can't Paula come to the meeting tomorrow? (not 'Why Paula can't ...?')
 - Why didn't you phone me last night?

3.1	Write	questions
No. 1	MILLE	questions

1	I can swim.	(and you?)	Can you swim?
2	I work hard.	(and Jim?)	Does Jim work hard?
3	I was late this morning.	(and you?)	
4	I've got a key.	(and Ann?)	
5	I'll be here tomorrow.	(and you?)	
6	I'm going out this evening.	(and Paul?)	
7	I like my job.	(and you?)	
8	I live near here.	(and Linda?)	
9	I enjoyed my holiday.	(and you?)	
0	I had a shower this morning.	(and you?)	

43.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.





No, never.

43.3 Put the words in the right order. All the sentences are questions.

1	(has / gone / where / David?) Where has David gone?
	(working / Rachel / is / today?) Is Rachel working today?
3	(the children / what / are / doing?) What
4	(made / is / how / cheese?)
5	(to the party / coming / is / your sister?)
6	(you / the truth / tell / don't / why?)
7	(your guests / have / yet / arrived?)
8	(leave / what time / your train / does?)
9	(your car / in the accident / was / damaged?)
10	(to work / Ann / why / go / didn't?)

13.4 Complete the questions.

1	I want to go out.
2	Ann and Paul aren't going to the party.
3	I'm reading.
4	Sue went to bed early.
5	My parents are going on holiday.
6	I met Tom a few days ago.
7	Tina has gone away.
8	I can't come to the party.
9	I need some money.
10	Angela doesn't like me.
1	It rains sometimes.
12	I did the shopping.

Where do you want to go Why aren't they going?	?
What	***************************************
What time	•••••
When	
Where	
Where	
Why	
How much	
Why	
How often	
When	

Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)

A

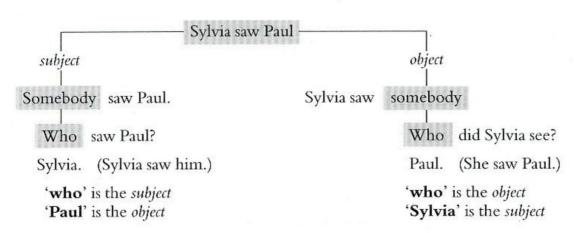




Sylvia saw Paul.

Who **saw** Paul? Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)

Who **did** Sylvia **see**? Paul. (She saw Paul.)



- B In these questions, who/what is the subject:
 - Who lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it who?)
 (not 'Who does live?')
 - What happened? (= something happened what?)
 (not 'What did happen?)
 - What's happening? (What's = What is)
 - Who's got my key? (Who's = Who has)

In these questions, who/what is the object:

- Who did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody who?)
- What did Paul say? (= Paul said something what?)
- Who are you phoning?
- What was Sylvia wearing?

Compare:

- George likes oranges. → Who likes oranges? George.
 - What does George like? Oranges.
- Jill won some money. → **Who won** some money? Jill.
 - What did Jill win? A hundred pounds.
- Use who for people (somebody). Use what for things, ideas etc. (something):
 - Who is your favourite singer?
 - What is your favourite song?

1	Somebody broke the window.	Who broke the window?
2	Something fell off the shelf.	What
3	Somebody wants to see you.	** 1140
4	Somebody took my umbrella.	-
5	Something made me ill.	
6	Somebody is coming.	
	Someody is coming.	
Mak	ce questions with who or what (subject or o	object).
		Nat did you buy?
1	I bought something.	What did you buy? Who lives in this house?
2	Somebody lives in this house.	Who lives in this house:
3	I phoned somebody.	
4	Something happened last night.	
5	Somebody knows the answer.	
6	Somebody did the washing-up.	
7	Jill did something.	
8	Something woke me up.	
9	Somebody saw the accident.	
10	I saw somebody.	
11	Somebody has got my pen.	
12	This word means something.	
	want the missing information (XXXXX). W	rite questions with who or what .
(I lost XXXXX yesterday but fortunately XXXXX found it and gave it back to me.	What did you lose?
1 (I lost XXXXX yesterday but fortunately	What did you lose? Who found it?
1 (2 (I lost XXXXX yesterday but fortunately XXXXX found it and gave it back to me.	What did you lose? Who found it?
$ \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \end{array} $ $ \begin{array}{c} 3 \end{array} $	I lost XXXXX yesterday but fortunately XXXXX found it and gave it back to me. XXXXX phoned me last night. She want XXXXX. I needed some advice, so I asked XXXX	. What did you lose? Who found it?
$ \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{array} $	I lost XXXXX yesterday but fortunately XXXXX found it and gave it back to me. XXXXX phoned me last night. She want XXXXX. I needed some advice, so I asked XXXX He said XXXXX.	. What did you lose? Who found it?
$ \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \\ 6 \end{array} $	I lost XXXXX yesterday but fortunately XXXXX found it and gave it back to me. XXXXX phoned me last night. She want XXXXX. I needed some advice, so I asked XXXX He said XXXXX. I hear that XXXXX got married last wee XXXXX told me. I met XXXXX on my way home this	What did you lose? Who found it? ted X.

Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

A

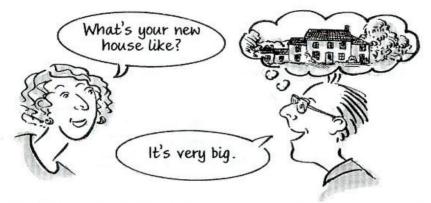


Julia is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking to?

In questions beginning Who ...? / What ...? / Where ...? / Which ...?, prepositions (to/from/with etc.) usually go at the end:

- 'Where are you from?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- 'John was afraid.' 'What was he afraid of?'
- 'Who do these books belong to?' 'They're mine.'
- Tom's father is in hospital.' 'Which hospital is he in?' 'Kate is going on holiday.' 'Who with?' / 'Who is she going with?'
- 'I want to talk to you.' 'What about?' / 'What do you want to talk to me about?'
- B What is it like? / What are they like? etc.



What's (= What is) it like? = tell me something about it – is it good or bad, big or small, old or new? etc.

When we say 'What is it like?', like is a preposition. It is not the verb like ('Do you like your new house?' etc.).

- A: There's a new restaurant in our street.
 - B: What's it like? Is it good?
 - A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.
- A: What's your new teacher like?
 - B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
- A: I met Linda's parents yesterday.
 - B: Did you? **What** are they **like**?
 - A: They're very friendly.
- A: Did you have a nice holiday? What was the weather like?
 - B: It was lovely. The sun shone every day.

45.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with who or what.

, , ,	1	ang morman	on (radiaty. 1				1
$1\left(\right)$	Γhe letter is	from XXXXX	ζ.	(N	Mo is the lett	er from?	χ.,
2 [I	l'm looking for a XXXXX .			What you			
3 [I	I went to the cinema with XXXXX .						
4	The film was about XXXXX .						
5 [I	gave the m	oney to XXX	XX.				
6	Гhe book w	as written b	y XXXXX .				
Comp	olete the ques	stions for the	pictures. Use o	one of th	nese verbs + a pi	reposition:	
liste	n look	talk	talk v	vait	write		
The state of the s					yas very good. Yes, very interesting.	THE STATE OF THE S	
2 W	hat				What		
Write	questions be	eginning Whi o	ch ?				1
$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix} $	Jack plays	father is in l We stayed at for a footba school in th	a hotel. Il team.		ich hospital is	he in? you	
		formation abo		untry. Yo	ou ask somebod	y who has been th	nere.
			e roads like			e) ner)	
Ask q	uestions with	What was/w	ere like?				
					Ask about the v		
2 Yo	our triend ha	as Just come	back from th	e ciner	na. Ask about t	ne film.	
3 Yo	our friend ha	as just finishe	ed an English	course	e. Ask about the	e lessons.	
4 Yo	our friend ha	as just come	back from he	olidav.	Ask about the l	notel.	

What ...? Which ...? How ...?

What + noun (What colour ...? / What kind ...? etc.)

- What colour is your car?
- What colour are your eyes?
- What size is this shirt?
- What make is your TV set?
- What time is it?
- What day is it today?
- What kind of job do you want? (or What type of job ...? / What sort of job ...?)

What without a noun:

- What's your favourite colour? What do you want to do this evening?
- В **Which** + *noun* (things or people):
 - Which train did you catch the 9.50 or the 10.30?
 - Which doctor did you see Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

We use **which** *without a noun* for things, not people:

Which is bigger – Canada or Australia?

We use **who** for people (without a noun):

Who is taller – Bill or Gerry? (not 'Which is taller?')

C What or which?

We use which when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4):

- We can go this way or that way. Which way shall we go?
- There are four umbrellas here. Which is yours?



What is more general:

- What is the capital of Argentina?
- What sort of music do you like?

Compare:

- What colour are his eyes? (not 'Which colour?') Which colour do you prefer, pink or yellow?
- What is the longest river in the world? Which is the longest river – the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile?
- D How ... ?
 - 'How was the party last night?' 'It was great.'
 - 'How do you usually go to work?' 'By bus.'

You can use **how** + *adjective/adverb* (**how tall / how old / how often** *etc.*):

tall are you?' 'I'm 1 metre 70.' big is the house?' 'Not very big.' old is your mother?' 'She's 45.' far is it from here to the airport?' 'Five kilometres.' 'How often do you use your car?' 'Every day.' long have they been married?' 'Ten years.' much was the meal?' 'Twenty pounds.'

46.1 Write questions with what.

1	I've got a new TV set.
2	I want a job.
3	I've got a new sweater.
4 5	I got up early this morning.
5	I like music.
6	I want to buy a car.

(make?)	What make is it?	
(kind?)	What kind of job do you want?	
(colour?)	What	
(time?)		get up?
(type?)		
(kind?)		

46.2 Complete the questions. Use Which ...?



46.3 Put in what/which/who.

1	what is that man's name?	
2	Which way shall we go? Left or right?	
3	You can have tea or coffee	d
	you prefer?	
4	' day is it today?' 'Friday.'	
5	This is a nice house room is	S
	yours?	

6	is your favourite sport?
7	is more expensive, meat or fish?
8	is older, Ann or George?
9	kind of camera have you got?
10	A: Mary has got three cameras.
	B: camera does she use most?
11	nationality are you?

46.4 Complete the questions with How + adjective or adverb (high/long etc.).

1	How high is Mount Everest?
2	is it to the station?
3	is Helen?
4	do the buses run?
5	is the water in the pool?
6	have you lived here?

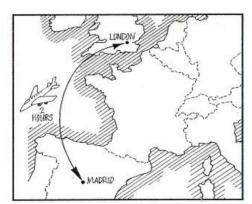
	_
Nearly 9000 metres.	
It's about two kilometres from here.	
She's 26.	
Every ten minutes.	
Two metres.	
Nearly three years.	

46.5 Write questions with How ...?

1 .	Are you 1 metre 70? 1.75? 1.80?	How tall are you?
2	Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three?	
3	Are you 20 years old? 22? 25?	
4]	Did you spend £10? £15? £20?	
5	Do you watch TV every day? Once a w	eek? Never?
6]	s it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow?	1500? 2000?

How long does it take ...?

A



How long	g does it take	by plane		3
It takes	two hours ten minutes a long time	by train by car	from to	

How long **does it take** by plane from London to Madrid?

It takes two hours.

- How long does it take by train from London to Manchester?
- It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- How long does it take by car from your house to the station?
- It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

B



How long	does did will	it take	(you) (Ann) (them)	to ?
----------	---------------------	---------	--------------------------	------

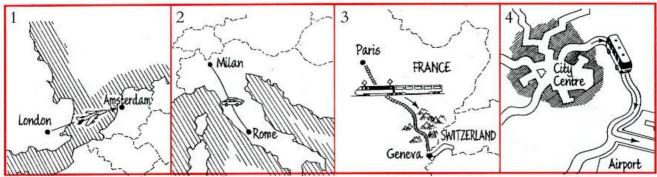
	takes	(me)	a week	
It	took	(Ann)	a long time	to
	will take	(them)	three hours	

I started reading the book on Monday. I finished it on Wednesday evening.

It took me three days to read it.

- How long does it take to fly from London to Madrid?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It doesn't take long to cook an omelette.
- It takes me 20 minutes to get to work.
- 'I came by train.' 'Did you? How long did it take (to get here)?'
- It took Tom an hour to do his shopping.
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It will take us an hour to cook the dinner.

47.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with How long ...?



77	Maria San Maria Ma	Airpo
1	How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?	
2		
3)	
4		
Н	low long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.	
1	fly from your city/country to London It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.	
2	2 fly from your city/country to New York	
3	study to be a doctor in your country	
4	walk from your home to the nearest shop	č
5	get from your home to the nearest airport	
W	Vrité questions with How long did it take ?	
1	(She found a place to live.) How long did it take her to find a	place to live?
2	(I walked to the station.) you	
3	사용하다 가장에서 어느 어느 아는	
4	(I learnt to ski.)	
5	(They repaired the car.)	
Re	lead the situations and write sentences with It took	
1	I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it It took me three days to read the book.	three days later.
2	We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock and we arrived ho	ome at 10.20.
3	I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I p months later.	assed my driving test s
4	Mark drove to London yesterday. He left home at 8 o'clock and got	to London at 10.
5	Linda began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last we	ek.

Do you know where ...? I don't know what ... etc.

A



We say:

Where is Paula?

but:

Do you know where **Paula is** ? (not 'Do you know where is Paula?')

In the same way we say:

I know I don't know Can you tell me

I don't know \ where Paula is

Compare:

Who are those people? but
How old is Linda?
What time is it?
Where can I go?
How much is this camera?
When are you going away?
Where have they gone?
What was Ann wearing?

Do you know Can you tell me

I know I don't know I don't remember who those people are how old Linda is what time it is where I can go how much this camera is

?

?

how much this camera i when you're going away where they have gone what Ann was wearing

B Questions with **do/does/did** (present simple and past simple):

Where does he live ?

Do you know where he lives? (not 'Do you know where does he live?')

Compare:

How **do aeroplanes** fly? What **does Jane** want? Why **did she** go home? Where **did I** put the key?

but

Do you know I don't know I don't remember I know how aeroplanes fly what Jane wants why she went home where I put the key

Questions beginning Is ...? / Do ...? / Can ...? etc. (yes/no questions):

Compare:

Is Jack at home?
Have they got a car?
Can Brian swim?
Do they live near here?
Did anybody see you?

but

Do you know if
or
I don't know whether

Jack is at home they've got a car Brian can swim they live near here anybody saw you

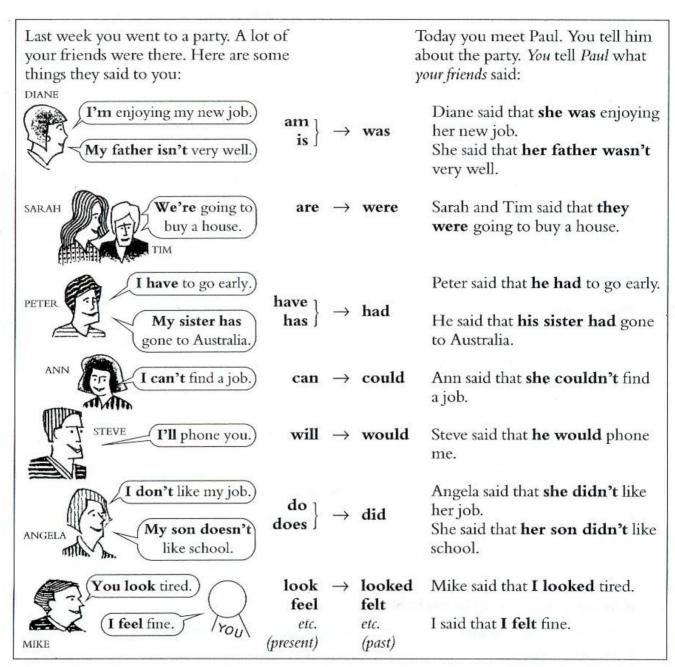
You can use if or whether in these sentences:

Do you know if they've got a car? or Do you know whether, they've got a car?

ſ					
1	Have your friends gone home?	(where) I don't know where they've gone.			
2	Is Kate in her office?	(where) I don't know			
3	Is the castle very old?	(how old)			
4	Will Paul be here soon?	(when)			
5	Was he angry because I was late?	(why)			
6	Has Sally lived here a long time?	(how long)			
Cor	nplete the sentences.				
1	(How do aeroplanes fly?)	Do you know how aeroplanes fly?			
	(Where does Susan work?)	I don't know			
	(What did Peter say?)	Do you remember			
	(Why did he go home early?)	I don't know			
	(What time does the film begin?)	Do you know			
	(How did the accident happen?)	I don't remember			
	ich is right?				
		B			
	Do you know what time is it / it is?	Do you know what time it is? is right			
	Why are you / you are going away?	4			
	I don't know where are they / they are going.				
	Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?				
	Where do you want / you want to go for your holidays?				
6	Do you know what <u>do elephants eat</u>	/ elephants eat?			
Wri	te questions with Do you know if?				
1	(Have they got a car?)	Do you know if they've got a car?			
2	(Are they married?)	Do you know			
	(Does Sue know Bill?)	*			
	(Will George be here tomorrow?)	2			
	(Did he pass his exam?)				
	te questions beginning Do you know	?			
	(What does Ann want?)	Do you know what Ann wants?			
	Where is Paula?)	Do			
	(Is she working today?)				
	(What time does she start work?)				
	(Are the shops open tomorrow?)				
	(Where do Sarah and Tim live?)				
((Did they go to Ann's party?)				
100	your own ideas to complete these sente	ences.			
Use					
Jse	Do you know why the bus was la				
Use	Do you know why the bus was la	te?			
Use 1 1 2 1	Do you know why the bus was la Do you know what time				
Use 1 1 2 1 3 1	Do you know why the bus was la Do you know what time Excuse me, can you tell me where	te ?			

She said that ... He told me that ...

A



B say and tell

 $say (\rightarrow said)$

- He **said** that he was tired. (not 'He said me')
- What did she say to you? (not 'say you')

Do not say: 'he said me', 'I said Ann' etc.

 $tell (\rightarrow told)$

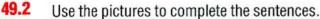
- He **told me** that he was tired. (not 'He told that ...')
- What did she **tell you**? (not 'tell to you')

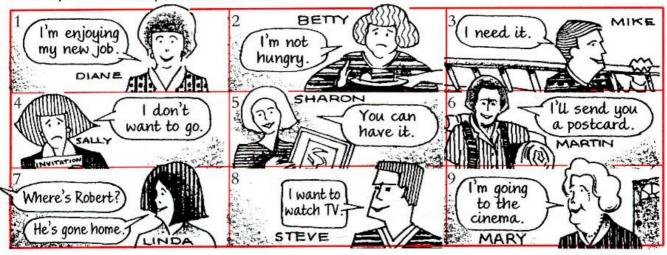
Do not say: 'he told to me', 'I told to Ann' etc.

- C You can say:
 - He said **that** he was tired. or He said he was tired. (without 'that')
 - Ann told me that she didn't like her job. or Ann told me she didn't like her job.

19.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with He/She /They said (that)







1 I met Diane last week. She said she was enjoying her new job.
2 Betty didn't want anything to eat. She said
3 I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder but he said
4 Sally was invited to the party but she said
5 Sharon told me she didn't want the picture. She said
6 Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said
7 I was looking for Robert. Linda said
8 'Why did Steve stay at home?' 'He said
9 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said

49.3 Put in say/said or tell/told.

1 He said he was tired.
2 What did she tell you?
3 Ann she didn't like Peter.
4 Jack me that you were ill.
5 Please don't Jim what happened.
6 Did Lucy she would be late?
7 The woman she was a reporter.
8 The woman us she was a reporter.
9 They asked me a lot of questions but I didn't me anything.
10 They asked me a lot of questions but I didn't manything.

work/working go/going do/doing

A

work/go/be etc. (infinitive)

We use the infinitive with will/can/must etc.:

will	Ann will be here soon.	⇒ Units 28–29
shall	Shall I open the window?	-> Omes 20-27
might may	I might phone you later. May I sit here?	⇒ Unit 30
can could	I can't meet you tomorrow. Could you pass the salt, please?	⇒ Unit 31
must	It's late. I must go now.	⇒ Unit 32
should	You shouldn't work so hard.	\Rightarrow Unit 33
would	Would you like some coffee?	\Rightarrow Unit 35

do/does	Do you work?	\Rightarrow Units 6–7
(present simple)	They don't work very hard. Tina doesn't know many people.	
	How much does it cost ?	
did (past simple)	What time did the train leave ? We didn't sleep well.	\Rightarrow Unit 12

B

to work / to go / to be etc. (to + infinitive)

(I'm) going to	I'm going to play tennis tomorrow. What are you going to do?	$\Rightarrow \text{Unit } 34$ $\Rightarrow \text{Unit } 51$	
(I) have to	I have to go now. Everybody has to eat.		
(I) want to	Do you want to go out? They don't want to come with us.		
(l) would like to	I'd like to talk to you. Would you like to go out?		
(I) used to	Dave used to work in a factory.	⇒ Unit 25	

C

working/going/playing etc.

am/is/are + -ing (present continuous)	Please be quiet. I'm working. Tom isn't working today. What time are you going out?	\Rightarrow Units 3–4, 8, 26	
was/were + -ing (past continuous)	It was raining, so we didn't go out. What were you doing when the phone rang?	⇒ Units 13–14	100

UN	IIT
5	n
J	U

1 I'll phone Paul				
2 I'm going to pl				
	Paul?			
	?		0	
5 I'd like		10	You must	
	es with a verb from the box. S ing (working/going etc.).	ometii	mes you need the	e infinitive (work/go etc.
do/doing	get/getting	sleep	/sleeping	watch/watching
eat/eating	go/going	7.0	staying	wear/wearing
fly/flying	listen/listening	wait	/waiting	work/working
3 What time do you 4 'Where are you 5 Did you	t I didn't	up in the ban	the morning? k.' to it. ney weren't hur arrived. 'No, only for re	eading.'
	k/go etc.) or to (to work	k / to g	o etc.) or -ing	(working/going etc.)
	ne window? (open)			
2 It's late. I have			Treas	
	ng this week. She's on ho			
	t want out			1
	, so take an umbr			
그 경영 선생님 그는 나라 속이 살아 되었었다면 가장 못 되었다면 되었다면 하나 살아가게 하나 때마다.	ou have to : you. (he		ow morning:	(leave)
	student. He's		hysics (study)	
	on a trip r			
	anet, what was she			-,
	London, where are you g			.? (stay)
	ustsometl			and the same
	e?' 'He's			
	a car but I sold it las			
15 He spoke very q	uietly. I couldn't		him. (hear)	0001 101109735 341101
	well. I don't think you sho			
17 I Jan't languary year				at and
	nat he said. I wasn't			sten)
18 I'm sorry I'm lat	e. I hada	phon	e call. (make)	
18 I'm sorry I'm lat 19 I want		phon	e call. (make)	

to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

A verbs + to ... (I want to do)

want hope need	plan expect	decide offer refuse	- /	+ to (to do / to work / to be et	c.)
	A	offer refuse	forget learn	+ to (to do / to v	vork / to be et

- What do you want to do this evening?
- It's not very late. We don't need to go home yet.
- Tina has decided to sell her car.
- You **forgot to switch** off the light when you went out.
- My brother is learning to drive.
- I tried to read my book but I was too tired.

B verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

enjoy stop mind finish suggest + -ing (doing / working / being etc.)

- I enjoy dancing. (not 'enjoy to dance')
- I don't mind getting up early.
- Has it stopped raining?
- Sonia suggested going to the cinema.



C verbs + -ing or to...

like prefer	love hate	start begin	continue	+ -ing (doing etc.) or	to (to do etc.)
----------------	--------------	----------------	----------	------------------------	-----------------

- Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
- I prefer travelling by car. or I prefer to travel by car.
- Ann loves dancing. or Ann loves to dance.
- I hate being late. or I hate to be late.
- It started raining. or It started to rain.
- would like to ... (etc.)

would like would love would prefer would hate + to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- Julia would like to meet you. (not 'would like meeting')
- I'd love to go to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- Would you like to sit down?' 'No, I'd prefer to stand, thank you.'
- I wouldn't like to be a teacher.

51.1	Put the verb in the right form, to or -ing.						
	1 I enjoy dancing (dance).	9 Where's Bill? He promised					
	2 What do you want to do (do) tonight?	(be) here on time.					
	3 Goodbye! I hope(see) you	10 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind					
	again soon.	(wait).					
	4 I learnt(swim) when I was	11 What have you decided(do)?					
	five years old.	12 George was very angry and refused					
	5 Have you finished(clean) the						
	kitchen?	13 Where's Ann? I need (ask)					
	6 I'm tired. I want(go) to bed.						
		14 I was very upset and started(cry).					
	7 Do you enjoy(visit) other countries?	15 I'm trying (work). Please stop					
	.8 The weather was nice, so I suggested (go) for a walk by the river.	(talk).					
51.2	Complete the sentences using to or -ing. Use	one of these verbs:					
	go help live lose rain read se						
	1 I like London but I wouldn't like to live	there.					
	2 I like taking (OR to take) photographs	when I'm on holiday.					
	3 Linda has a lot of books. She enjoys						
	4 I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expectyou.						
	5 Don't forget us a postcard when you're on holiday.						
	6 'Shall we get a taxi to the cinema?' 'If you like, but it isn't far. I don't mind						
	7 This ring is very beautiful. I'd hateit.						
	8 Julia had a lot to do, so I offeredher.						
	9 What shall we do this afternoon? Would you like to the beach?						
	10 When I'm tired in the evenings, I like						
	11 'Shall we go now?' 'No, I'd prefer						
	12 I'm not going out until it stops						
	12 1 In not going out until it stops						
51.3	Complete the answers to the questions.	Sec. Sec.					
234							
£ 3							
Ky	V = 11	(V VIII autting (OR to get) up agetu					
4	Do you usually get up early?	Yes, I like getting (OR to get) up early					
	Do you ever go to museums? Do you often write letters?	Yes, I love					
	[10] [10] [10] [10] [10] [10] [10] [10]	No, I don't like					
	4 Have you ever been to New York?	No, but I'd love one day.					
	5 Do you often travel by train?	Yes, I enjoy					
	6 Shall we eat at home or go to a	I don't mind a restaurant					
	restaurant?	but I'd prefer home.					
51.4	Complete these sentences. Write about yourself.	Use to or -ing					
	Like the second of the second						
	1 I enjoy						
	15.						
		1					
		but					
	6 I wouldn't like						

I want you to ... I told you to ...

A I want you to ...



The woman wants to go.

The man **doesn't want** the woman **to go**. He **wants** her **to stay**.

We say:

- I want you to be happy. (not 'I want that you are happy')
- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

We use would like in the same way:

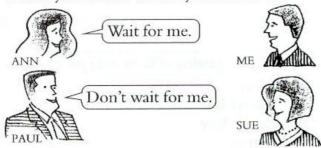
- Would you like me to lend you some money?
- **B** We also use this structure (verb + somebody + to ...) with:

verb + somebody + to ...

ask tell advise expect persuade teach

		,		
Sue I	asked told	a friend you	to lend to be	her some money.
What do you I didn't	advise	me them	to do?	here.
We	expect persuaded	George	to come	with us.
I	taught	my brother	to swim.	

I told you to ... / I told you not to ...



- → Ann told me to wait for her.
- → Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

D make and let

After make and let, we do not use to:

- He's very funny. He makes me laugh. (not 'makes me to laugh')
- At school our teacher made us work very hard.
- Sue let me use her computer because mine wasn't working (not 'let me to use')

You can say Let's ... (= Let us) when you want people to do things with you:

- Come on! Let's dance.
- 'Shall we go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.'

52.1	Write sentences beginning I want you	/ I don't want you	/ Do you want me ?
	10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 1	AND THE RESIDENCE AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY O	••

1	(von	must	come	with	me)
1	(you	must	Come	WILLI	me

2 (listen carefully)

3 (please don't be angry)

4 (shall I wait for you?)

5 (don't phone me tonight)

6 (you must meet Sarah)

•••	1 WW	ic you to come war me.	
I	want		

I don't

Do you

52.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 Dan persuaded me to go to the cinema.
 2 I wanted to get to the station. A woman told
- 3 Brian wasn't well. I advised
- 4 Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked
- 5 I was busy. I told

Ann's mother taught

3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes to is necessary (to go / to wait etc.);

sometimes to is not necessary (go/wait etc.).

arrive borrow get go go make repeat tell think wait

- 1 Please stay here. I don't want you to go.....
- 2 I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her it.
- 4 Are they already here? I expected them much later.
- 5 Kevin's parents didn't want him married:
- 6 I want to stay here. You can't make me with you.
- 7 'Is that your bicycle?' 'No, it's John's. He let me it.'
 8 Mary can't come to the party. She told me you.
- 9 Would you like a drink? Would you like mesome coffee?
- 10 'Ann doesn't like me.' 'What makes youthat?'

I went to the shop to ...

A

Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop? **To buy** a newspaper.

She went to the shop **to buy** a newspaper.





to ... (to buy / to see etc.) tells us why a person does something:

- Why are you going out?' 'To get some bread.'
- Ann went to the station to meet her friend.
- Sue turned on the television to watch the news.
- I'd like to go to Spain to learn Spanish.

money/time to (do something):

- We need some money to buy food.
- I haven't got time to watch television.

B

to ... and for ...

to + verb

(to buy / to see etc.)

- I went to the shop **to buy** a newspaper. (not 'for buy')
- They're going to Scotland to see their friends.
- We need some money to buy food.

for + noun

(for a newspaper / for food etc.)

- I went to the shop for a newspaper.
- They're going to Scotland for a holiday.
- We need some money for food.

C wait for ...

- Please wait for me.
- Are you waiting for the bus?

wait to (do something):

- Hurry up! I'm waiting to go.
- Are you waiting to see the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) to ...:

- I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone.
- Are you waiting for the doctor to come?



go to ... and go for ... \Rightarrow UNIT.54 something to eat / nothing to do etc. \Rightarrow UNIT 78 enough to/for ... \Rightarrow UNIT 90 too ... to/for ... \Rightarrow UNIT 91

53.1 Write sentences beginning I went to Choose from the boxes.

the café the super	rmarket catch a	train	meet a friend
1 I went to the station			
4			
Finish the sentences. Choose	from the box.		
to open this door to	o wake him up	to see	who it was
to watch the news to	o read the newspaper	to get	some fresh air
1 I turned on the televisio	to watch the new	5.	
6 The doorbell rang, so I l	ooked out of the wind	ow	
Use your own ideas to finish t	hese sentences. Use to		
1 I went to the shop			
Put in to or for .			
	to home and		
1 Paula went to the shop 2 We went to a restaurant			
3 Robert wants to go to		economic	8
4 I'm going to London			3.
5 I'm going to London			
6 Have you got time			
7 I got up late this morni		wasł	ı.
8 Everybody needs mone			
9 The office is very small.		a desk	and chair.
10 A: Excuse me, are you	waiting use the	phone?	
B: No, I'm waiting	somebody.		
inish these sentences. Choos	e from:		
	arrive you / tell i	me th	e film / begin
ohn / phone it / to a	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		
ohn / phone it / to a I can't go out yet. I'm wa	•	one.	
I can't go out yet. I'm wa	aiting for John to pho		

go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing

- A go to ... (go to work / go to London / go to a concert etc.)
 - What time do you usually go to work?
 - I'm going to France next week.
 - Tom didn't want to go to the concert.
 - 'Where's Ann?' 'She's gone to bed.'
 - I went to the dentist last week.

go to sleep = start to sleep:

I was very tired and went to sleep quickly.

go home (without to)

• I'm going home now. (not 'going to home')

B go on ...

go on	holiday a trip a tour an excursion a cruise
	strike

- We're going on holiday next week.
- Children often go on school trips.
- When we were in Scotland, we went on a lot of excursions to different places.
- The workers have gone on strike. (= they are refusing to work)

C go for ...

	go (somewhere) for	a walk a run a swim a drink
--	--------------------	--------------------------------------

- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's gone for a walk.'
- Do you go for a run every day?
- The sea looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
- We went for a drink after work yesterday.
- Shall we go out for a meal? I know a good restaurant.
- They've gone to Scotland for a holiday.
 (We say 'on holiday' but 'for a holiday'.)

D go + -ing

We use go + -ing for many sports (swimming / skiing etc.) and also shopping:

I go he is going we went they have gone she wants to go	shopping swimming fishing sailing skiing jogging etc.
---	--

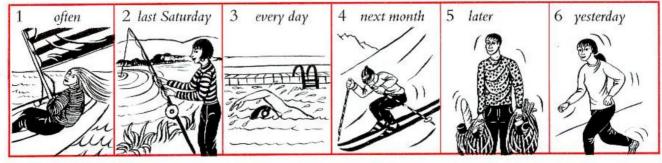


- Are you going shopping this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's go swimming. (or Let's go for a swim.)
- Rachel has a small boat and she often goes sailing.
- I went jogging before breakfast this morning.

- Put in to/on/for where necessary.
 - 1 I'm going to France next week.
 - 2 Rachel often goes sailing.
 - 3 Sue went Mexico last year.
 - 4 Would you like to gothe cinema this evening?
 - 5 Jack goesjogging every morning.
 - 6 I'm going out a walk. Do you want to come?
 - 7 I'm tired because I went to a party last night and went bed very late.
 - 8 Martin is going holiday Italy next week.

 - 10 There will be no buses next week because the bus drivers are going strike.
 - 11 I need some stamps, so I'm going the post office.
 - 12 It's late. I must go home now.
 - 13 Would you like to go a tour of the city?
 - 14 Shall we go out a meal this evening?
 - 15 My parents are going a cruise this summer.

54.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use go/goes/going/went + -ing.



RACHEL

DIANE

GEORGE

LINDA

PETER

SHEILA

- 1 Rachel has a boat. She often goes sailing ...
- 2 Last Saturday Diane went
- 3 George every day.
- 4 Linda is going on holiday next month. She is
- 5 Peter is going out later. He has to
- 6 Sheila after work yesterday evening.

54.3 Use the words in the box to finish these sentences. Use to/on/for if necessary.

home	shopping	holiday	a swim	sleep
a walk	Portugal	riding	the bank	skiing

- 1 The sea looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
- 2 'Is Ann at home?' 'No, she's gone ______ to get some money.'
- 3 I'm going _____ now. I have to buy some presents.
- 5 I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went ______ early.
- 6 We live near the mountains. In winter we go every weekend.
- 7 Richard has got a horse. He often goes
- 8 The weather is nice. Shall we go in the park?
- 9 A: Are you goingsoon?
 - B: Yes, next month. We're going

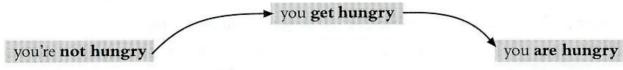
get a letter / get a job etc. (get + noun) = receive/buy/fetch/find:

you get it you don't have something you have it

- 'Did you **get** my letter?' 'Yes, I **got** it yesterday.' (= receive)
- I like your pullover. Where did you **get** it? (= buy)
- (on the phone) 'Hello, can I speak to Ann, please?' 'One moment. I'll get her.' (= fetch)
- It's difficult to **get** a job at the moment. (= find)

also get a bus / a train / a taxi (= take a bus/train etc.):

- 'Did you come here on foot?' 'No, I got the bus.'
- **get hungry** / **get cold** / **get tired** etc. (**get** + adjective) = become:



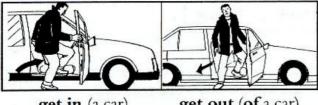
- If you don't eat, you get hungry.
- Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
- I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she **gets better** soon.
- We got very wet because we didn't have an umbrella.

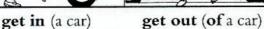
get married also **get dressed** (= put your clothes on) **get lost** (= lose your way)

- Linda and Frank are getting married soon.
- I got up and got dressed quickly.
- We went for a walk and got lost.

get to a place = arrive:

- I usually **get to work** before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
- We left London at 10 o'clock and got to Manchester at 12.45.
- How did you get here? By bus? get home (without to):
 - What time did you get home last night?
- D get in/out/on/off







get on

get off

(a bus / a train / a plane)

- Kate got in the car and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got into the car ...)
- A car stopped and a man **got out**. (but A man got out **of the car**.)
- We got on the bus outside the hotel and got off in Church Street.

55.1 Complete these sentences. Use **get(s)** and choose from the box.

a taxi your jack		letter ood salary			octor job			
1 I wrote to 2 Where do 3 Quick! 7 4 I don't wo 5 I had an 6 When yo 7 'Are you 8 Margare	to you last valid you This man is vant to walk interview value out, of going to the thas got a value out as got a value out, of going to the control of the contro	week. Did you ill. We must k home. Let' with the man can you he concert?' well-paid joes. Use gettin	yes, if I	letter ? didn't	? It's ver	?		······································
dark la	ate co	ld read	y mar	ried				
2 Turn on 3 'I'm 4 'Where's	the light. I Sally?' '	It's getting t'sShe's		next wee	k.' 'Oh, re	to go o	Congratu out.'	ılations!'
					o go nome	•		
Complete the		Use get/got -		e words:				
angry	better	hungry	lost	married	nervo	ous	old	wet
1 If you do	n't eat, you	get hungi	y					
2 Don't go	out in the	rain. You'll		***************************************				
3 My broth	ner			1a	st year. His	wife's	name is	Julia.
4 Why did	you				with me? I	didn't	do anytl	ning wro
		hotel but w						
6 Everyboo	dy wants to	stay young	but we all					•
7 The begi	inning of th	ne film wasn	t very good	d but it				
8 Most peo	ple	/			efore exan	ninatio	ns.	
Write senten	ces with I le	ft and got						
		100		al 7 20 -	علامة أما	- يارون	1045	
		rk / 8.15!		at 1.50 a	na got to 1	Nork a	L 0.15.	
		Bristol / 11						
		15 and						
3 the party	/ 11.15 →	home / m	anight					
		about yoursel	f.					,
		got on / got o	off.					
Put in got in ,	got out of /	got on / got o						
Put in got in ,	got out of /	got on / got o	away.		house from	the b	us stop	
Put in got in , 1 Kate . got 2 I	got out of /	got on / got o	away. bus and wa	lked to my				

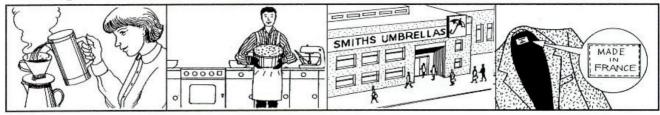
do and make

Do is a general word for actions:

- What are you doing this evening? (not 'What are you making?')
- 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll do it.'
- Julia's job is very boring. She does the same thing every day.
- I did a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?:

- 'What do you do?' 'I work in a bank.'
- B **Make** = produce/create. For example:



She's **making** coffee. He has **made** a cake. They make umbrellas. It was made in France.

Compare do and make:

- I did a lot of things yesterday. I cleaned my room, I wrote some letters and I made a
- A: What do you **do** in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies? B: I make clothes. I make dresses and jackets. I also make toys for children.

Expressions with do

do	an exam (examination) / a test a course homework (somebody) a favour exercises
	housework

- I'm doing my driving test next week.
- John has just done a training course.
- Have the children done their homework?
- Ann, could you do me a favour?
- I go for a run and do exercises every morning.
- I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.

also do the shopping / the washing / the washing-up / the ironing / the cooking etc.: I did the washing but I didn't do the shopping.

Expressions with make

make	a mistake an appointment a phone call a list a noise a bed
------	--

- I'm sorry, I made a mistake.
- I must make an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to make a phone call.
- Have you made a shopping list?
- It's late. We mustn't make a noise.
- Sometimes I forget to make my bed in the morning.

We say make a film but take a photograph:

• When was this film made? but When was this photograph taken?

Put in make/making/made or do/doing/did/done.

- 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll do it.' 2 What did you at the weekend? Did you go away?
- 3 Do you know how to bread?
- 4 Paper is from wood.
- 5 Richard didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and nothing.
- 6 'What do you?' 'I'm a doctor.'
- 7 I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have youit?
- 8 'What do they in that factory?' 'Shoes.'
- 9 I'msome coffee. Would you like some?
- 10 Why are you angry with me? I didn't anything wrong.
- 11 'What are you tomorrow afternoon?' 'I'm working.'

What are these people doing?



1	He's making a cake.	7	
2	They	8	
3	He	9	
4		10	
5		11	
6		12	

Put in make or do in the correct form.

- 1 I hate doing housework, especially cleaning.
- 2 Why do you always the same mistake?
- 3 'Can you me a favour?' 'It depends what it is.'
- 4 'Have you your homework?' 'Not yet.'
- 5 I need to see the dentist but I haven't an appointment.
- 6 I'm a course in photography at the moment. It's very good.
- 7 The last time I an exam was ten years ago.
- 8 When you've finished Exercise 1, you can Exercise 2.
- 9 There's something wrong with the car. The engine is a strange noise.
- 11 Let's a list of all the things we have to today.

have

have and have got $(\Rightarrow Unit 9)$

I've got (something) or I have (something) = it is mine:

- I've got a new car. or I have a new car.
- Sue has got long hair. or Sue has long hair.
- Have they got any children? or Do they have any children?
- Tim hasn't got a job. or Tim doesn't have a job.
- How much time have you got? or How much time do you have?

also

I've got }	a headache / (a) toothache / a stomach ache / a pain (in my leg etc.) a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.
I have	a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu <i>etc</i> .

- I've got a headache. or I have a headache.
- Have you got a cold? or Do you have a cold?

The past is: I had (without 'got') / I didn't have / Did you have? etc.:

- When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
- He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
- How much time did you have?

B have breakfast / have a shower etc.

In these expressions **have** = eat/drink/take etc. You cannot use 'have got'.

have	breakfast / lunch / dinner a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc. a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc. something to eat/drink
------	--

- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's having lunch.'
- I don't usually have breakfast.
- I had three cups of coffee this morning.
- 'Have a biscuit!' 'Oh, thank you.'

We also use **have** (*not* 'have got') in these expressions:

have	a bath / a shower a rest / a holiday / a party a nice time / a good journey etc. a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.) a dream / an accident a baby a look (at)
------	---

- I **had** a shower this morning.
- We're having a party next week. You must come.
- Enjoy your holiday. **Have** a nice time!
- Did you have a good time in London?
- Sandra has just had a baby.
- Can I have a look at your newspaper?

C Compare I've got and I have:

- I've got / I have a new shower. It's very good. (You can use I've got or I have in this sentence.)
- I have a shower every morning. (not 'I've got')
- A: Where's Paul?
 - B: He's having a shower. (= he's washing now)

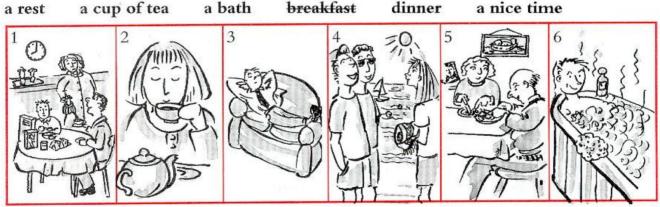




1.10	Put in the	correct	form of	have	or	have	got.

1	I didn't have time to do the shopping yesterday.	(I / not / have)
2	I didn't have time to do the shopping yesterday. 'Has Lisa got (OR Does Lisa have) a car?' 'No, she can't drive.'	(Lisa / have?)
3	He can't open the door a key.	(he / not / have)
4	a cold last week. He's better now.	(George / have)
5	What's wrong? a headache?	(you / have?)
6	We wanted to go by taxi but we enough money.	(we / not / have)
7	Liz is very busy. much free time.	(she / not / have)
8	any problems when you were on holiday?	(you / have?)

57.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:



- 1 They're having breakfast. 4 They
 2 She 5
 3 He 6
- 57.3 What do you say in these situations?
 - 1 Ann is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes? Have a nice holiday!
 - 2 You meet Claire at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about the flight. Did you have a good flight?
 - 3 Tom is going on a long journey. What do you say to him before he leaves?
 - 4 It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.

5 Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.

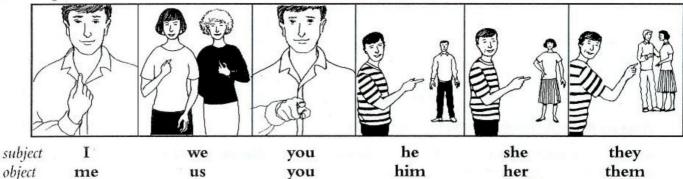
- 6 Rachel is going out for a meal tonight. What do you say to her before she goes?
- 57.4 Complete the sentences. Use have/had and choose from the list.

an accident a glass of water a look a walk a party something to eat

- 1 We had a party a few weeks ago. We invited fifty people.
- 2 'Shall we?' 'No, I'm not hungry.'
- 3 I was thirsty, so I
- 4 I like to get up early and ______ before breakfast.
- 5 Tina is a very good driver. She has never
- 6 There's something wrong with the engine of my car. Can youat it?

he/him I/me they/them etc.

People



subject I we you he	I know Ann. We know Ann. You know Ann. He knows Ann.	Ann knows me . Ann knows us . Ann knows you . Ann knows him .	object me us you him
she	She knows Ann.	Ann knows him . Ann knows her .	him
they	They know Ann.	Ann knows them.	them

Things

subject

object



- I don't want this book. You can have it.
 - I don't want these books. You can have them.
 - Diane never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
 - I never go to parties. I don't like them.
- We use **me/her/them** etc. (object) after a preposition (**for/to/with** etc.):
 - This letter isn't for me. It's for you.
 - Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
 - We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come with us?
 - Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with them?
 - 'Where's the newspaper?' 'You're sitting on it.'

give it/them to ...:

- I want that book. Please give it to me.
- Robert wants these books. Can you give them to him, please?

58.1	Finish the sentences with him/her/them.		
	1 I don't know those girls. Do you ke 2 I don't know that man. Do you ke 3 I don't know those people. Do you 4 I don't know David's wife. Do you 5 I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you 6 I don't know Sarah's parents. Do y 7 I don't know the woman with the	now? u know? u know? know?	?
58.2	Complete the sentences. Use I/me/you/s		
	1 I want to see her but she doesn	't want to see me	
	2 They want to see me but	don't want to see	
	3 She wants to see him but	doesn't want to see	•
	4 We want to see them but		
	5 He wants to see us but		
	6 They want to see her but		
	7 I want to see them but	don't want to see	•
	8 You want to see her but		
	o tou want to see her but	doesn't want to see	
58.3	Write sentences beginning I like, I do	on't like or Do you like ?	
	1 I don't eat tomatoes. I don't lik	ce them.	
	2 George is a very nice man. I like		
	3 This jacket isn't very nice. I don't		
	4 This is my new car. Do		
	5 Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I		
	6 These are my new shoes.		
	o These are my new snoes.	•	
58.4	Complete the sentences. Use I/me/he/hi	i m etc.	
	1 Who is that woman? Why are yo	ou looking at her?	
	2 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes,		
	3 Where are the tickets? I can't find		
	4 I can't find my keys. Where are		
	5 We're going out. You can come v		
	6 Margaret likes music.		
	7 I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of		
	8 I'm talking to you. Please listen t		
	9 Where is Ann? I want to talk to		
	10 My brother has a new job		very much
	10 Wry brother has a new job	doesn't like	very maen.
58.5	Complete the sentences.		
	1 I want that book. Can you give i	t to me ?	
			2
	2 He wants the keys. Can you give		
	3 She wants the keys. Can you		
	4 I want that letter. Can you		
	5 They want the money. Can you		
	6 We want the photographs. Can ye	ou	

my/his/their etc.









	$I \rightarrow my$	I	like	my	job.
	we \rightarrow our	We	like	our	jobs.
	you \rightarrow your	You	like	your	job.
	he \rightarrow his	He	likes	his	job.
	she \rightarrow her	She	likes	her	job.
	they $ o$ their	They	like	their	jobs.
	it \rightarrow its	Oxford	(= it) i	s famou	is for its university.
_					

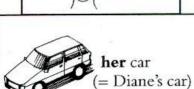
We use my/your/his etc. + a noun:

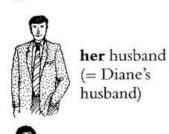
my hands our house his mother your best friend

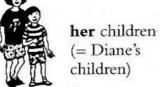
her new car their room

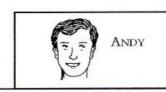
his/her/their







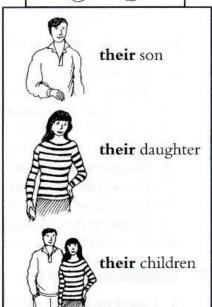












its and it's

its

Oxford is famous for its university.

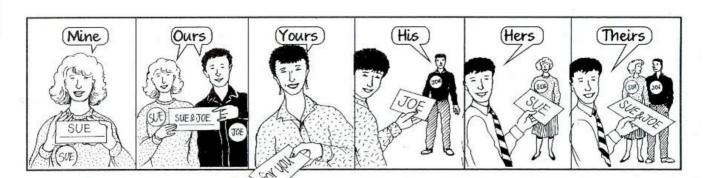
it's (= it is)

I like Oxford. It's a nice city. (= It is a nice city.)

59.1	Finish these sentences.
	1 I'm going to wash my hands. 4 He's going to wash 5 They're going to wash 6 Are you going to wash
59.2	Finish these sentences.
59.3	1 He lives with his parents. 2 They live with parents. 3 We parents. 4 Julia lives Most children Look at the family tree and complete the sentences with his/her/their.
	I I saw Liz with her husband, Philip. I I saw Liz with her husband, Philip. I I saw Ann and Ted with children. I saw George with wife, Ann. I saw George with brother, Bill. I saw Ann with brother, Bill. I saw Ann with parents.
59.4	Put in my/our/your/his/her/their/its. 1 Do you like _your job? 2 I know Mr Watson but I don't know wife. 3 Mr and Mrs Baker live in London son lives in Australia. 4 We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all friends. 5 Ann is going out with friends this evening. 6 I like tennis. It's favourite sport. 7 'Is that car?' 'No, I haven't got a car.' 8 I want to phone Ann. Do you know phone number? 9 Do you think most people are happy in jobs? 10 I'm going to wash hair before I go out. 11 This is a beautiful tree leaves are a beautiful colour. 12 John has a brother and a sister brother is 25 and sister is 21.
59.5	Complete the sentences. Use my/his/their etc. with one of these words: coat homework house husband job key name
	1 Jim doesn't enjoy his job . It's not very interesting. 2 I can't open the door. I haven't got

Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.

A



 $I \rightarrow my$ \rightarrow mine we \rightarrow our \rightarrow ours you \rightarrow your \rightarrow yours he \rightarrow his \rightarrow his she \rightarrow her \rightarrow hers they \rightarrow their \rightarrow theirs It's my money. It's mine. It's our money. It's ours. It's your money. It's yours. It's his. It's **his** money. It's her money. It's hers. It's their money. It's theirs.

- B We use my/your etc. + a noun (my hands / your book etc.):
 - My hands are cold.
 - Is this your book?
 - Ann gave me her umbrella.
 - It's their problem, not our problem.

We use mine/yours etc. without a noun:

- Is this book mine or yours? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Ann gave me hers. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not **ours**. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car and they went in **theirs**. (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun:

- 'Is this his camera or hers?' 'It's his.'
- C a friend of mine / a friend of his / some friends of yours etc.
 - I went out to meet a friend **of mine**. (not 'a friend of me')
 - Tom was with a friend of his. (not 'a friend of him')
 - Are those people friends of yours? (not 'friends of you')
- n Whose ...?
 - Whose book is this? (= Is it your book? his book? my book? etc.)

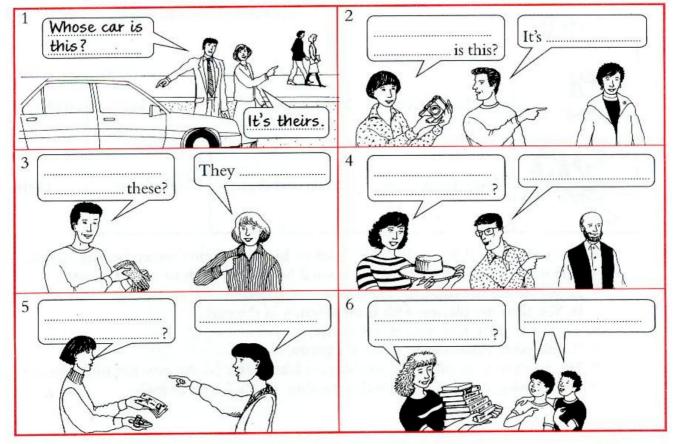
You can use **whose** with or without a noun:

- Whose money is this? It's mine. Whose is this?
- Whose shoes are these? They're John's. Whose are these?

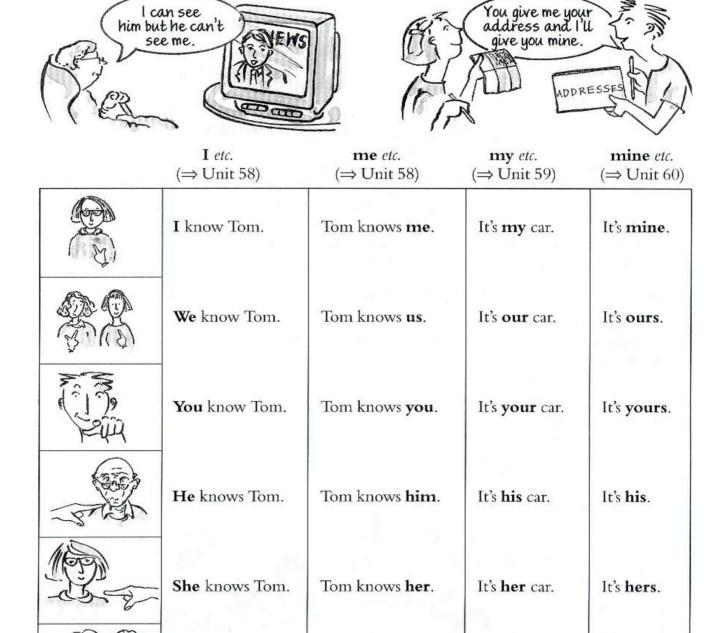
- Finish the sentences with mine/yours etc.
 - 1 It's your money. It's yours.
 - 2 It's my bag. It's
 - 3 It's our car. It's
 - 4 They're her shoes. They're
- 5 It's their house. It's
- 6 They're your books. They're
- 7 They're my glasses. They're
- 8 It's his coat. It's

- Choose the right word.
 - their and ours are right 1 It's their/theirs problem, not our/ours.
 - 2 This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
 - 3 That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
 - 4 Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
 - 5 Catherine is going out with her/hers friends this evening.
 - 6 My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
 - 7 They've got two children but I don't know their/theirs names.
 - 8 Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours is broken.
- Finish these sentences. Use friend(s) of mine/yours etc.
 - 1 I went to the cinema with a friend of mine.
 - 2 They went on holiday with some friends of theirs.
 - 3 She's going out with a friend
 - 4 We had dinner with some
 - 5 I played tennis with a
 - 6 Tom is going to meet a

 - 7 Do you know those people? Are they?
- Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?



I/me/my/mine



'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.'

Tom knows them.

- She was very pleased because we invited her to stay with us at our house.
- A: Where are the children? Have you seen them? B: Yes, they are playing with their friends in the park.
- That's my pen. Can you give it to me, please?
- 'Is this your umbrella?' 'No, it's yours.'

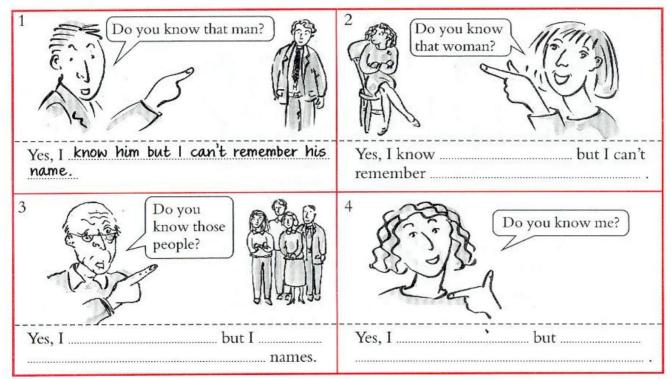
They know Tom.

- **He** didn't have an umbrella, so **she** gave **him hers.** (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I'm meeting a friend of **mine** this evening. (not 'a friend of me')

It's their car.

It's theirs.

61.1 Answer the questions in the same way.



61.2 Finish these sentences in the same way.

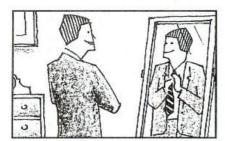
1 We invited her to stay with us at our house.
2 He invited us to stay with house.
3 They invited me to stay with house.
4 I invited them She invited us Did you invite him ?

61.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1 I gave him my address and he gave me his.
2 I gave her address and she gave me
3 He gave me address and I gave
4 We gave them address and they gave
5 She gave him address and
6 You gave us address and
7 They gave you address and

61.4 Put in him/her/yours etc.

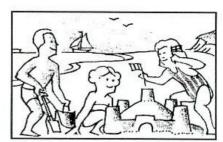
myself/yourself/themselves etc.



He's looking at himself.



Help yourself!



They're enjoying themselves.

- \rightarrow myself me $him \rightarrow$ himself her herself yourself yourselves ourselves themselves them \rightarrow they
- I looked at myself in the mirror.
- He cut himself with a knife.
- She fell off her bike but she didn't hurt herself.
- Please help yourself. (one person)
- Please help yourselves. (two or more people)
- We had a good holiday. We enjoyed ourselves.
- They had a nice time. They enjoyed themselves.

В Compare:

me/him/them etc.



She is looking at **him** different people



- You never talk to me. I didn't pay for them.
- Did I hurt you?

myself/himself/themselves etc.

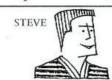


He is looking at himself -the same person -



- Sometimes I talk to myself.
- They paid for themselves.
- Be careful. Don't hurt yourself.
- by myself / by yourself etc. = alone:
 - I went on holiday by myself. (= I went alone)
 - 'Was she with friends?' 'No, she was by herself.'
- each other
 - Jill and Ann are good friends. They know each other well. (= Jill knows Ann / Ann knows Jill)
 - Paul and I live near **each other**. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare each other and -selves:





Steve and Sue looked at each other. (= he looked at her / she looked at him)









Steve and Sue looked at themselves. (= he looked at himself / she looked at herself)

62.1	Finish the sentences with myself/yourself et	c.
	LIII2II file 2611fe11662 Mitii III A2611/ A0112611	

- 1 He looked at himself in the mirror.
- 2 I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with
- 3 Margaret had a nice time in London. She enjoyed
- 4 My friends had a nice time in London. They enjoyed
- 5 I picked up a very hot plate and burnt
- 6 He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about
- 8 Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look after! (two people)

62.2 Write sentences with by myself / by yourself etc.

- 1 I went on holiday alone.
- 2 When I saw him, he was alone.
- 3 Don't go out alone.
- 4 I went to the cinema alone.
- 5 My sister lives alone.
- 6 Many people live alone.
- I went on holiday by myself.

I

2.3 Write sentences with each other.



- 62.4 Complete the sentences. Use: each other or ourselves/yourselves/themselves or us/you/them.
 - 1 Paul and I live near each other
 - 2 Who are those people? Do you know them?

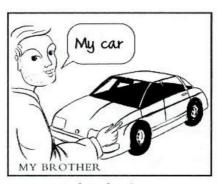
 - 4 There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help
 - 5 We didn't go to Ann's party. She didn't invite
 - 6 When we go on holiday, we always enjoy
 - 7 Mary and Jane were at school together but they never see now.
 - 8 Diane and I are very good friends. We've known for a long time.

 - 10 Many people talk to when they're alone.

-'s (Ann's camera / my brother's car etc.)



Ann's camera (her camera)



my brother's car (his car)



the manager's office (his or her office)

We normally use -'s for people:

- I stayed at my sister's house. (not 'the house of my sister')
- Have you met Mr Kelly's wife? (not 'the wife of Mr Kelly')
- Are you going to James's party?
- Paul is a man's name. Paula is a woman's name.

You can use -'s without a noun after it:

- Mary's hair is longer than **Ann's**. (= Ann's hair)
- 'Whose umbrella is this?' 'It's my mother's.' (= my mother's umbrella)
- 'Where were you last night?' 'I was at **Paul's**.' (= Paul's house)

friend's and friends'



my friend's house = one friend (= **his** house or **her** house)

We write -'s after

friend/student/mother etc. (singular):

my mother's car (one mother) my father's car (one father)

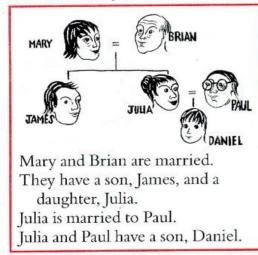


my friends' house = two or more friends (= their house)

We write -' after friends/students/parents etc. (plural): my parents' car (two parents)

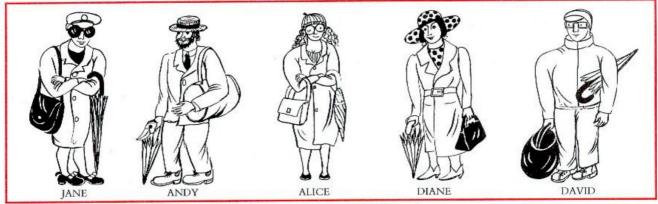
- We use of ... for things, places etc.:
 - Look at the roof of that building. (not 'that building's roof')
 - We didn't see the beginning of the film. (not 'the film's beginning')
 - What's the name of this village?
 - Do you know the cause of the problem?
 - You can sit in the back of the car.
 - Madrid is the capital of Spain.

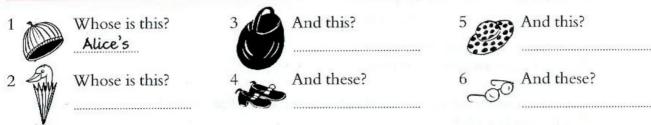
63.1 Look at the family tree. Write sentences about the people in the family.



1	(Brian/husband) Brian is Mary's husband.
2	(Julia/mother) Julia is Daniel's mother.
3	(Mary/wife) Mary is wife.
4	(James/brother) James
5	(James/uncle) uncle.
6	(Julia/wife) Julia
7	(Mary/grandmother)
8	(Julia/sister)
9	(Paul/husband)
10	(Paul/father)
11	(Daniel/nephew)

63.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.





Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1	I stayed at the house of my sister.	my sister's house
2	What is the name of this village?	OK
3	Do you like the colour of this coat?	
4	Do you know the phone number of Bill?	
5	The job of my brother is very interesting.	
6	Write your name at the top of the page.	
7	For me the morning is the best part of the day.	
8	The favourite colour of Paula is blue.	
9	When is the birthday of your mother?	1400
10	The house of my parents isn't very big.	
11	The walls of this house are very thin.	
12	The car stopped at the end of the street.	
13	Are you going to the party of Silvia next week?	
14	The manager of the hotel is on holiday at the moment.	



He's got a camera.



She's waiting for a taxi.



It's a beautiful day.

 $\mathbf{a} \dots =$ one thing or person:

- Alice works in a bank. (not 'in bank')
- Can I ask a question? (not 'ask question')
- I haven't got a car.
- There's a woman at the bus stop.

an (not 'a') before a/e/i/o/u:

- Do you want an apple or a banana?
- I'm going to buy a hat and an umbrella.
- There was an interesting programme on TV last night.

also an hour (h is not pronounced: an (h)our)

a university (pronounced yuniversity)

a European country (pronounced yuropean)

another (= an + other) is one word:

- Can I have another cup of tea?
- We use a/an ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:
 - The sun is a star.
 - Football is a game.
 - Dallas is a city in Texas.
 - A mouse is an animal. It's a small animal.
 - Joe is a very nice person.

We use a/an ... for jobs etc.:

- A: What's your job? B: I'm a dentist. (not 'I'm dentist.')
- 'He's an engineer.' 'What does Mark do?'
- Would you like to be a teacher?
- Beethoven was a composer.
- Picasso was a famous painter.
- Are you a student?



3horse	5ne 6or	ganisation	9	. economic prob	lem
What are these things'	? Choose from the lis	t.			
bird fruit flower game	mountain planet		sical instrum etable	ent	
3 Tennis is4 A hammer is		7 A	pear is ne Amazon i rose is	S	
What are their jobs? C	hoose from the list an	d finish the sent	ences.		
dentist electricia	n nurse photog	rapher priva	te detective	shop assistan	t tax
4 (13)	5			7 0	
1 She's a dentist		5			
2 He's		6			
3 She			and you? I'm	1	•••••
**	f D A D-				
Make sentences. Choo	se from Box A and Bo	X B. USe a/an W	Transcription 19	ry.	
A I want to ask yo		learn	part	nouse artist y questic kshop foreign bicycle	langua
Tom never wear I can't ride My brother is	I ms evening	1 111 8011 8 10	1		
I can't ride		a m going to			

flower(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)



$$\begin{array}{ccc} \textit{singular} \ (= \ one) & \rightarrow & \textit{plural} \ (= \ two \ or \ more) \\ & \text{a flower} & \rightarrow & \textbf{some} \ flowers \end{array}$$

a week → **two** week**s**

a nice place \rightarrow many nice places

this shop \rightarrow **these** shop**s**





Spelling (\Rightarrow Appendix 5):

-s / -sh / -ch / -x	\rightarrow	-es	$bus \rightarrow buses$ $dish \rightarrow dishes$ $church \rightarrow churches$ $box \rightarrow boxes$
		also	potato \rightarrow potato es tomato \rightarrow tomato es
-у	\rightarrow	-ies	$baby \rightarrow babies$ dictionary \rightarrow dictionaries party \rightarrow parties
but -ay / -ey / -oy	\rightarrow	-ys	$day \rightarrow days$ monkey \rightarrow monkeys $boy \rightarrow boys$
-f / -fe	\rightarrow	-ves	$shelf \rightarrow shelves$ $knife \rightarrow knives$ $wife \rightarrow wives$

B These things are plural in English:















- Do you wear glasses?
- Where are the scissors? I need them.

You can also say a pair of scissors / a pair of trousers / a pair of pyjamas etc.:

- I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans. (not 'a new jeans')
- Some plurals do not end in -s:

this $man \rightarrow$ these men a woman \rightarrow some women	one foot \rightarrow two feet a tooth \rightarrow all my teeth	that sheep \rightarrow those sheep a fish \rightarrow a lot of fish
a child → many children	a mouse → some mice	

also: a person → two people / some people / a lot of people etc.

• She's a nice person.

but • They are nice people. (not 'nice persons')

- People is plural (= they), so we say people are / people have etc.:
 - A lot of people speak English. (not 'speaks')
 I like the people here. They are very friendly.

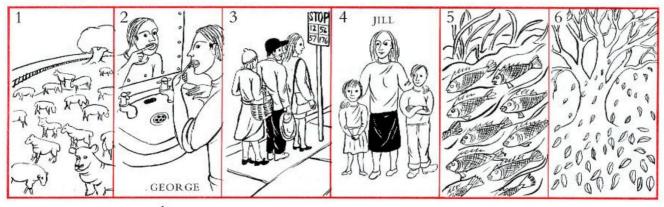
Police is plural:

- The police are here.
- 'Why? What do they want?'

65.1 Write the plural.

1	flower	flowers	5	umbrella	 9	family	
2	boat		6	address	 10	foot	
3	woman		7	knife	 11	holiday	
4	city	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	8	sandwich	 12	potato	

65.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 There are a lot of sheep in the field.
- 2 George is cleaning his
- 4 Jill has got two
- 5 There are a lot of in the river.
- 3 There are three _____ at the bus stop. 6 The ____ are falling from the tree.

65.3 Some of these sentences are right but most are wrong. Correct the sentences that are wrong.

- 1 I'm going to buy some flowers. OK
 2 I need a new jeans. I need a new pair of jeans. OR I need some new jeans.
- 3 It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.
- 4 There was a woman in the car with two mens.
- 5 Sheep eat grass.
- 6 David is married and has three childs.
- 7 Most of my friend are student.
- 8 He put on his pyjama and went to bed.
- 9 We went fishing but we didn't catch many fish.
- 10 Do you know many persons in this town?
- 11 I like your trouser. Where did you get it?
- 12 The town centre is usually full of tourist.
- 13 I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them.
- 14 This scissor isn't very sharp.

65.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

- 1 It's a nice place. Many people .90 there for a holiday.
- 2 Some people always late.
- 3 The president is not popular. The people like him.
- 4 A lot of people television every day.
- 5 Three people injured in the accident.
- 6 How many people in that house?
- 7 the police carry guns in your country?
- 8 The police looking for the stolen car.
- 9 I need my glasses but I can't find
- 10 I'm going to buy new jeans today.

(go or goes?)

(is or are?)

(don't or doesn't?)

(watch or watches?)

(was or were?)

(live or lives?)

(Do or Does?)

(is or are?)

(it or them?)

(a or some?)

a car / some money (countable/uncountable 1)

A noun can be countable or uncountable.

Countable nouns

For example: (a) car (a) man (a) key (a) house (a) flower (an) idea (an) accident

You can use **one/two/three** (etc.) + countable nouns (you can count them):









Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more):

singular: plural: a car cars

my car two cars the car etc. the cars

some cars

many cars etc.

- I've got a car.
- There aren't many cars in the car park.
- New cars are very expensive.

You cannot use the singular (car/house/key etc.) alone. You need $a/an \implies Unit 64$:

• We can't get in without a key. (not 'without key')

Uncountable nouns

For example: water air rice salt plastic tennis money music









music

You cannot say one/two/three (etc.) + these things: one water two musics

Uncountable nouns have only one form:

the money my money some money much money etc. money

- I've got some money.
- There isn't **much money** in the box.
- Money isn't everything.

You cannot use a/an + uncountable nouns: money music

But you can say a piece of ... / a glass of ... etc. + uncountable noun:

- a glass of water
- a can of oil
- a bar of chocolate

- a piece of cheese
- a bottle of milk
- a piece of music

- a bowl of rice
- a cup of coffee
- a game of tennis

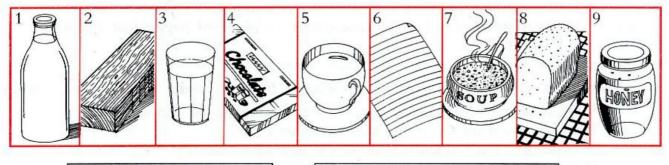
66.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary. The names of these things are:

bucket egg	envelope jug	milk money		spoon toothbrush	toothpas wallet	ste
It's salt.	lt's a spo	on. It's	J 4 Lt's	3	it's	6 It's
7 It's	8 It's	9 It's	10		it's	12 It's

- Some of these sentences are right, but some of them need a/an. Put in a/an where necessary.
 - 1 I haven't got (watch) a watch 2 Do you like cheese? OK 3 Ann never wears hat.

 - 4 Are you looking for job? 5 Mary doesn't eat meat.
 - 6 Mary eats apple every day.

 - 7 I'm going to party tonight.
 - 8 Music is wonderful thing.
- 9 Jamaica is island. 10 I don't need key.
- 11 Everybody needs food.
- 12 I've got good idea.
- 13 Can you drive car? 14 Do you want cup of coffee?
- 15 I don't like coffee without milk.
- 16 Don't go out without umbrella.
- 66.3What are the things in the pictures? Write a ... of ... for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.



bar	cup	loaf
bottle	glass	piece
bowl	jar	piece

bread	milk	tea
chocolate	paper	water
honey	soup	wood

1	a bottle of milk	4	 7	
2		5	 8	
3		6	 9	

a car / some money (countable/uncountable 2)

a/an and some

a/an + singular countable noun (car/apple/shoe etc.):

- I need a new car.
- Would you like an apple?

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):

- I need some new shoes.
- Would you like some apples?

some + *uncountable nouns* (water/money/music *etc.*):

- I need some money.
- Would you like some cheese?
- (or Would you like a piece of cheese?)



an apple



some apples

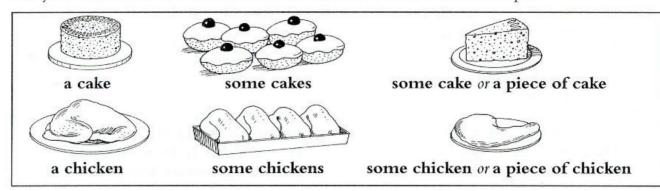


some cheese or

a piece of cheese

Compare a and some:

- Linda bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
- I read a newspaper, wrote some letters and listened to some music.
- Many nouns are *sometimes* countable and *sometimes* uncountable. For example:



Compare a paper (= a newspaper) and some paper:

- I want something to read. I'm going to buy a paper.
- I want to make a list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (not 'a paper')
- Be careful with these nouns they are usually uncountable:

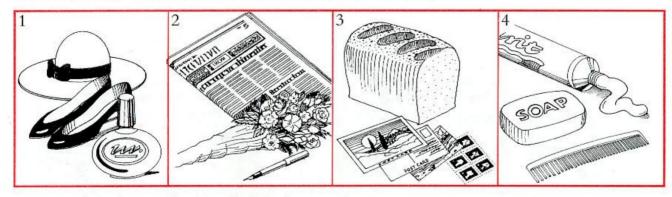
information advice weather bread hair furniture news work

- I need some information about hotels in London. (not 'informations')
- It's nice weather today. (not 'a nice weather')
- Listen! I've just had some good news. (not 'a good news')
- I'm going to buy some bread. (not 'a bread')
- Sue has got very long hair. (not 'hairs')
- They've got **some** very nice **furniture** in their house. (*not* 'furnitures')
- 'Do you like your job?' 'Yes, but it's hard work.' (not 'a hard work')

We say a job (but not 'a work'):

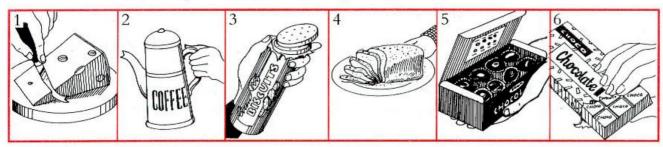
I've got a new job. (not 'a new work')

67.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to make sentences (I bought ...).



1	I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.
2	I bought
3	
4	

67.2 Write sentences with Would you like a ... ? or Would you like some ... ?



1	Would you like some cheese?		4	 ?
2	Would you like	?	5	 ?
3	Would	?	6	?

67.3 Put in a/an or some.

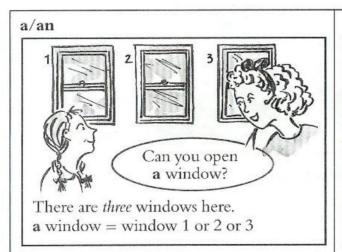
- 1 I read a book and listened to some music. 2 I need money. I want to buy food. 3 We met interesting people at the party. 4 I'm going to open window to get fresh air. 5 She didn't eat much for lunch – only apple and bread.
- 6 We live in big house. There's nice garden with beautiful trees.
- 7 I'm going to make a table. First I need wood.
- 8 Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give you advice.
- 9 I want to write a letter. I need paper and pen.

Which is right?

- 1 I'm going to buy some new shoe/shoes. shoes is right
- 2 Martin has got brown eye/eyes.
- 3 Paula has got short black hair/hairs.
- 4 The tourist guide gave us some information/informations about the town.
- 5 We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.
- 6 We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
- 7 It's difficult to get a work/job at the moment.
- 8 We had lovely weather / a lovely weather when we were on holiday.

a/an and the

A



- I've got a car. (there are many cars and I've got one)
- Can I ask a question? (there are many questions – can I ask one?)
- Is there a hotel near here? (there are many hotels - is there one near here?)
- Paris is an interesting city. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- Lisa is a student. (there are many students and Lisa is one)

the

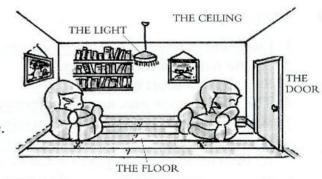


There is only *one* window here – **the** window.

- I'm going to clean the car tomorrow. (= my car)
- Can you repeat the question, please? (= the question that you asked)
- We enjoyed our holiday. The hotel was very nice. (= our hotel)
- Paris is the capital of France. (there is only one capital of France)
- Lisa is the youngest student in her class. (there is only one youngest student in her class)

Compare a and the:

- I bought a jacket and a shirt. The jacket was cheap but the shirt was expensive. (= the jacket and the shirt that I bought)
- В We say **the** ... when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example: the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light etc. (of a room) the roof / the garden / the kitchen / the bathroom etc. (of a house) the centre / the station / the airport / the town hall etc. (of a town)
 - 'Where's Tom?' 'In the kitchen.' (= the kitchen in this house or flat)
 - Turn off the light and close the door. (= the light and the door of the room)
 - Do you live far from the centre? (= the centre of your town)
 - I'd like to speak to the manager, please. (= the manager of this shop etc.)



68.1 Put in a/an or the.

- 1 We enjoyed our holiday. The hotel was very nice.
- 2 'Can I ask ... question?' 'Of course. What do you want to ask?'
- 3 You look very tired. You need holiday.
- 4 'Where's Tom?' 'He's in bathroom.'
- 5 Jane is interesting person. You must meet her.
- 6 A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to city centre?
 - B: Yes, go straight on and then takenext turning left.
- 7 A: Shall we go out for meal this evening?
 - B: Yes, that's good idea.
- 8 It's nice morning. Let's go for walk.
- 10 Peter and Mary have got two children, boy and girl. boy is seven years old and girl is three. Peter works in factory. Mary hasn't got job at the moment.

Complete the sentences. Use a or the + one of these words:

airport cup door floor picture radio



8.3 Put in a/an or the where necessary.

- 1 Don't forget to turn off light when you go out.
 2 Enjoy your holiday and don't forget to send me postcard.
 3 What is name of this village?
 4 Canada is very big country.
 5 What is largest city in Canada?
 6 I like this room but I don't like colour of carpet.
 7 'Are you OK?' 'No, I've got headache.'
- 8 We live in old house near station.
- 9 What is name of director of film we saw last night?

the ...

We use the when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- What is **the name** of this street? (this street has only one name)
- Who is the best player in your team?
- Can you tell me **the time**, please? (= the time *now*)
- My office is on the first floor. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget the:

- Do you live near the city centre? (not 'near city centre')
- Excuse me, where is the nearest bank? (not 'where is nearest ...')

В the same ...

- We live in the same street. (not 'in same street')
- 'Are these two books different?' 'No, they're the same.' (not 'they're same')

C We say:

the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the country:

- The sky is blue and the sun is shining.
- Do you live in a town or in the country?

the police / the fire brigade / the army (of a city, country etc.):

My brother is a soldier. He's in the army.



the top / the end / the middle / the left etc.:

- Write your name at the top of the page.
- My house is at the end of this street.
- The table is in the middle of the room.
- Do you drive on the right or on the left in your country?

the top the the left the right middle the bottom

(play) the piano / the guitar / the trumpet etc. (musical instruments):

Paula is learning to play the piano.



the radio:

I listen to the radio a lot.



D We do not use the with:

television:

- I watch television a lot.
- What's on television tonight?



breakfast / lunch / dinner:

- What did you have for breakfast? (not 'the breakfast')
- Dinner is ready!



- I'm not working **next week**. (not 'the next week')
- Did you have a holiday **last summer**? (not 'the last summer')





69.1	Put in the where necessary	. Write OK if the sentence is already correct.
------	----------------------------	--

1	What is	name	of this street?	the name
---	---------	------	-----------------	----------

- 2 What's on television tonight? OK
- 3 Our apartment is on second floor.
- 4 Would you like to go to moon?
- 5 Which is best hotel in this town?
- 6 What time is lunch?
- 7 How far is it to city centre?
- 8 We're going away at end of May.
- 10 I didn't like her first time I met her.

 11 I'm going out after dinner.
- 12 What's biggest city in world?
- 13 My sister got married last month.
- 14 My dictionary is on top shelf on right.
- 15 We live in country about five miles from nearest village.

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use: the same + age colour problem street time.

- 1 I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in the same street.
- 2 I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at
- 3 Jim is 25 and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are
- 4 My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are
- 5 I've got no money and you've got no money. We've got

69.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **the** if necessary.



- 1 The sun is shining.
- 2 She's playing
- 3 They're having
- 4 He's listening to
- 5 They're watching
- 6 They're swimming in

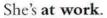
69.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

capital dinner police lunch middle name sky television

- 1 We had dinner at a restaurant last night.
- 2 We stayed at a very nice hotel but I don't remember
- 3 _____ is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
- 6 Tokyo is of Japan.
- 7 'What did you have for?' 'A salad.'
- 8 I woke up in of the night.

go to work go home go to the cinema







They're going to school.



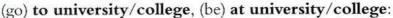
He's in bed.

We say:

- (go) to work, (be) at work, start work, finish work:
 - Goodbye! I'm going to work now. (not 'to the work')
 - I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.



- What did you learn at school today? (not 'at the school')
- Some children don't like school.



- Helen wants to go to university when she leaves school.
- What did you study at college?
- (go) to hospital, (be) in hospital:
 - Jack was in an accident. He had to go to hospital.
- (go) to prison, (be) in prison:
 - Why is he in prison? What did he do?
- (go) to church, (be) in/at church:
 - David usually goes to church on Sundays.
- (go) to bed, (be) in bed:
 - I'm tired. I'm **going to bed**. (not 'to the bed')
 - 'Where's Jill?' 'She's in bed.'
- (go) home, (be) at home etc.:
 - I'm tired. I'm going home. (not 'to home')
 - Are you going out tonight or are you staying at home?

B We say:

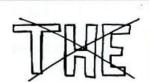
(go to) the cinema / the theatre / the bank / the post office:

- I never go to the theatre but I often go to the cinema.
- 'Are you going to the bank?' 'No, the post office.'

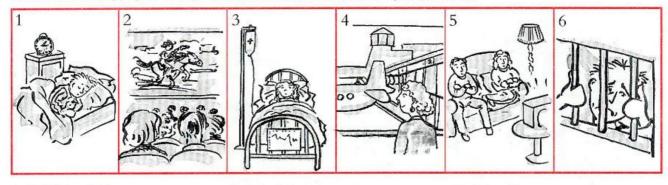
(go to) the doctor, the dentist:

- You're not well. Why don't you go to the doctor?
- I'm going to the dentist tomorrow.

also the station / the airport / the city centre (\Rightarrow Unit 68)



70.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.



- 1 He's in bed.
- 3 She's in
- 5 They're at

- 2 They're at
- 4 She's at
- 6 He's in
- **70.2** Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.

bank bed church home post office school station

- 1 I need some money. I must go to the bank.
- 2 David usually goes to church on Sundays.
- 3 In Britain, children go to from the age of five.
- 4 There were a lot of people at waiting for the train.
- 6 I'm going to now. Goodnight!
- 7 I'm going to _____ to get some stamps.
- **70.3** Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.
 - 1 If you want to catch a plane, you go to the airport.
 - 2 If you want to see a film, you go to
 - 3 If you are tired and you want to sleep, you
 - 4 If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you
 - 5 If you have a problem with your teeth, you
 - 6 If you want to study after you leave school, you
 - 7 If you are injured in an accident, you
- 70.4 Put in the where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is complete.
 - 1 We went to cinema last night. to the cinema
 - 2 I finish work at 5 o'clock every day. OK
 - 3 Mary wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor.
 - 4 I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed.
 - 5 Why is Angela always late for work?
 - 6 'Where are the children?' 'They're at school.'
 - 7 We've got no money in bank.
 - 8 When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.
 - 9 What time do you usually get home from work?
 - 10 Do you live far from city centre?
 - 11 'Where shall we meet?' 'At station.'
 - 12 Jim is ill. He's in hospital.
 - 13 Margaret takes her children to school every day.
 - 14 Would you like to go to university?
 - 15 Would you like to go to theatre this evening?

I like music I hate exams







Do not use **the** for *general ideas*:

- I like music, especially classical music. (not 'the music ... the classical music')
- We don't eat meat very often. (not 'the meat')
- Life is not possible without water. (not 'The life ... the water')
- I hate exams. (not 'the exams')
- Do you know a shop that sells foreign newspapers?
- I'm not very good at writing letters.

Do not use **the** for games and sports:

My favourite sports are tennis and skiing. (not 'the tennis ... the skiing')

Do not use the for languages or academic subjects (history/geography/physics/biology etc.):

- Do you think English is difficult? (not 'the English')
- Tom's brother is studying physics and chemistry.

flowers or the flowers?

Compare:

- Flowers are beautiful. (= flowers in general)
- I don't like cold weather. (= cold weather in general)
- We don't eat fish very often. (= fish in general)
- Are you interested in history? (= history in general)

- This is a lovely garden. The flowers are beautiful. (= the flowers in this garden)
- The weather isn't very good today. (= the weather today)
- We had a very nice meal , last night. The fish was very good. (= the fish we ate last night)
- Are you interested in the history of your country?



71.1 What do you think about these things?

museums tea basketball computer games loud music hard work	dogs museums	big cities tea	motor racing basketball	TV quiz shows computer games	exams loud music	parties hard work
--	-----------------	-------------------	----------------------------	------------------------------	---------------------	----------------------

Choose seven of these things and write sentences beginning:

I	ike	I don't like	I love	I hate	I don't mind (= it's OK)
1	I hate e	exams.			
2					
3					
4	***************************************				
5					
6					
7					
8					

71.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in I'm not interested in	I know a lot about I know a little about	I don't know much about I don't know anything about
	I know a fittle about	r don't know anything about

1	(history) I'm very interested in history.
2	(politics) I
3	(sport)
4	(art)
5	(astronomy)
6	(economics)

71.3 Which is right?

- 1 My favourite sport is <u>tennis</u> / <u>the tennis</u>. <u>tennis</u> is right
- 2 I like this hotel. Rooms / The rooms are very nice. The rooms is right
- 3 Everybody needs friends / the friends.
- 4 Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
- 5 I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.
- 6 'Where's milk / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'
- 7 I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
- 8 'Do you do any sports?' 'Yes, I play football / the football.'
- 9 These days a lot of people use computers / the computers.
- 10 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
- 11 I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
- 12 Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
- 13 I like this town. I like people / the people here.
- 14 Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
- 15 'Where are children / the children?' 'They're in the garden.'
- 16 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
- 17 I enjoy taking photographs / the photographs. It's my hobby.
- 18 I must show you photographs / the photographs that I took when I was on holiday.
- 19 English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
- 20 Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.

the ... (names of places)

A Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.)

In general we do not use the + names of places:

• France is a very large country. (not 'the France')

THE

Cairo is the capital of Egypt.

Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.

Peru is in South America.

But we use the in names with 'republic'/'states'/'kingdom':

the Republic of Ireland (or the Irish Republic)

the United States of America (the USA) the United Kingdom (the UK)

B the -s (plural names)

We use **the** + *plural* names of countries/islands/mountains:

THE the Netherlands the Canary Islands the Philippines the Andes

C Seas, rivers etc.

We use **the** + names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:

THE the Atlantic (Ocean) the Mediterranean (Sea) the Amazon the (River) Nile the Suez Canal the Black Sea

the (River) Nile the Suez Canal

Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** + names of streets, squares etc.:

Kevin lives in Newton Street.

THE • Where is Highfield Road, please?

• Times Square is in New York.

We do not use the + name of place (or person) + airport/station/university/castle etc.:

Kennedy Airport Victoria Station Cambridge University
Westminster Abbey Edinburgh Castle London Zoo

But usually we use **the** + names of hotels, restaurants, pubs, cinemas, theatres, museums:

the Hilton (Hotel) the Star of India (restaurant)
the Science Museum the Odeon (cinema)

the National Theatre the Tate Gallery (art gallery)

E the ... of ...

THE

We use **the** + names with ... **of** ... :

the Republic of Ireland the Bank of England the Great Wall of China the Tower of London

We say: the north / the south / the east / the west / the middle (of ...):

• I've been to the north of Italy but not to the south.

72.1 These are geography questions. Choose your answer from the box. Sometimes you need The.



1	Cairo	is the capital of Egypt.	Alps
2	The Atlantic	is between Africa and America.	Amazon
3	······	is a country in northern Europe.	Andes
4		is a river in South America.	Asia
5		is the largest continent in the world.	Atlantic
6		is the largest ocean.	Bahamas
7		is a river in Europe.	Cairo
8		is a country in East Africa.	Kenya
9		is between Canada and Mexico.	Malta
10		are mountains in South America.	Pacific
11		is the capital of Japan.	Red Sea
12		are mountains in central Europe.	Rhine
13	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.	Sweden
14		is an island in the Mediterranean.	Tokyo
15		are a group of islands near Florida.	United States

72.2 Put in **the** where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write *OK*.

1	Kevin lives in Newton Street. OK.	
2		
3	Have you ever been to China?	
4	Have you ever been to Philippines?	
5	Have you ever been to China? Have you ever been to Philippines? Have you ever been to south of France?	
6	Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is?	
7	Can you tell me where Merrion Street is?	
8	Can you tell me where Museum of Modern Art is?	
9	Europe is bigger than Australia.	
10	Belgium is smaller than Netherlands.	
11	Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile?	
12	Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London?	
13		
14	How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (in London)?	
15	How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (in London)? Rocky Mountains are in North America.	
16		
17	Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.	
18	I hope to go to United States next year.	
19	I hope to go to United States next year. Mary comes from a small town in west of Ireland.	
20	Alan studied physics at Manchester University.	

this/that/these/those

A these (plural) this (singular) Do you like These flowers this picture? are for you.



this these



this picture (= this picture here)

these flowers (= these flowers *here*)

that those

that picture (= that picture *there*) those people

(= those people *there*)

- B We use this/that/these/those with a noun (this picture / that girl etc.) or without a noun:
 - This hotel is expensive but it's very nice.
 - Who's that girl?' 'I don't know.'
 - Do you like these shoes? I bought them last week.
 - Those apples look nice. Can I have one?
 - This is a nice hotel but it's very expensive.
 - 'Excuse me, is this your bag?' 'Oh yes, thank you.'
 - Who's that? (= Who is that person?)
 - Which shoes do you like most? These or those?

with a noun

without a noun

- **that** = something that has happened:
 - 'I'm sorry I forgot to phone you.' 'That's all right.'
 - That was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

that = what somebody *has just said*:

- 'You're a teacher, aren't you?' 'Yes, that's right.'
- 'Martin has got a new job.' 'Has he? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, that's nice.'
- D We use **this is** ... and **is that** ... ? on the telephone:
 - Hello, this is David. (**this** = the speaker)
 - Is that Sarah? $(\mathbf{that} = \mathbf{the other person})$

We use **this is** ... to *introduce* people:

- A: Brian, this is Chris.
 - B: Hello, Chris pleased to meet you.
 - C: Hello.



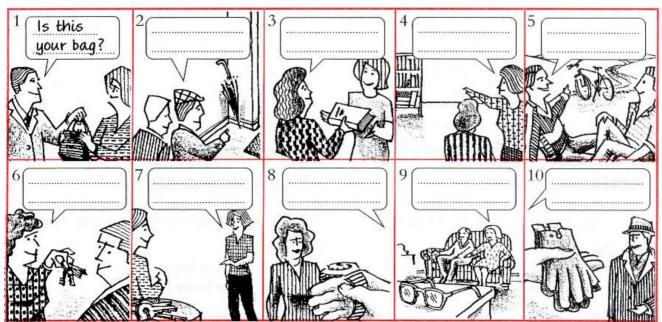


73.1 Complete the sentences. Use this/that/these/those + these words:

birds house plates postcards seat shoes



73.2 Write questions: Is this/that your ... ? or Are these/those your ... ?



- 73.3 Complete the sentences with this is or that's or that.
 - 1 A: I'm sorry I'm late.
 - B: That's all right.
 - 2 A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.
 - B: Oh, a pity. Why not?
 - 3 (on the telephone)
 - Sue: Hello, Ann. Sue.
 - Ann: Oh, hello, Sue. How are you?
 - 4 A: You're lazy.
 - B: not true!

- 5 A: Jill plays the piano very well.
 - B: Really? I didn't know
- 6 Mark meets Paul's sister (Ann):
 Paul: Mark, my sister, Ann.
 - Mark: Hello, Ann.
- 7 A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.
 - B:OK. Forget it!
- 8 A: You're a friend of John's, aren't you?
 - B: Yes,right.

one/ones

A one (= a ...)



- Would you like one ?

 = Would you like a chocolate ?

 one = a/an ... (a chocolate / an apple etc.)
- I need a pen. Have you got one? (one = a pen)
- A: Is there a bank near here?
 B: Yes, there's one at the end of this street. (one = a bank)

B one and ones

one (singular)



Which one? = Which hat?

one = hat/car/girl etc.

this one / that one

 Which car is yours? This one or that one? (= this car or that car)

the one ...

A: Which hotel did you stay at?
 B: The one opposite the station.

the ... one

- I don't like the black coat but I like the brown one.
- Don't buy that camera. Buy the other one.

a/an ... one

- This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
- That biscuit was nice. I'm going to have another one.

ones (plural)



Which ones? = Which flowers?

ones = flowers/cars/girls etc.

these/those (usually without 'ones'):

 Which flowers do you want? These or those? (not usually 'these ones/those ones')

the ones ...

A: Which keys are yours?
 B: The ones on the table.

the ... ones

- I don't like the red shoes but I like the green ones.
- Don't buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

some ... ones

- These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?
- My shoes are very old. I'm going to buy some new ones.

74.1	A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use one (not 'a/an') in	in
	the answers.	

there's a chemist in Mill Road	B has just had a cup of coffee B is going to buy a bicycle B hasn't got an umbrella
 1 A: Can you lend me a pen? 2 A: Would you like to have a car? 3 A: Have you got a bicycle? 4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella? 5 A: Would you like a cup of coffee? 6 A: Is there a chemist near here? 	B: I'm sorry, I haven't got one. B: No, I don't B: No, but B: I'm sorry but B: No, thank you. B: Yes,
Complete the sentences. Use a/an one. One. Use a/an one. Use a/an one. U	
4 I want today's newspaper. This is 5 This box is too small. I need	taurant? Let's go to
the coat is black the girl is tall with long hair the hotel is opposite the station the house has got a red door	took the photographs on the beach last week the shoes are green the pictures are on the wall the books are on the top shelf the man has got a moustache and glasses
1 A: We stayed at a hotel. B: Which one ? A: The one opposite the station.	6 A: Are those your books? B:
2 A: Those shoes are nice. B:	
3 A: That's a nice house. B:	
4 A: I like that coat. B:	9 A: Who's that man? B: A:
5 A: I like those pictures. B:	

some and any



Use **some** in *positive* sentences:

- I'm going to buy some clothes.
- There's some ice in the fridge.
- We did **some** exercises.



Use **any** in *negative* sentences:

- I'm not going to buy any clothes.
- There isn't any orange juice in the fridge.
- We didn't do any exercises.

any and some in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any**:

- Is there any ice in the fridge?
- Has he got any friends?
- Do you need any help?

We normally use **some** (not **any**) when we offer things (Would you like ...?):

A: Would you like some coffee?

B: Yes, please.

or when we ask for things (Can I have ...? etc.):

- A: Can I have some soup, please?
 - B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me some money?
 - B: Sure. How much do you need?





C some and any without a noun

- I didn't take any photographs but Ann took **some**. (= some photographs)
- You can have some coffee but I don't want any. (= any coffee)
- I've just made some coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- 'Where's your luggage?' 'I haven't got any.' (= any luggage)
- 'Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen.' (= some biscuits) 'Are there any biscuits?'

D

something / somebody (or someone)

- She said something.
- I saw somebody (or someone).
- Would you like something to eat?
- Quick! Somebody's coming.

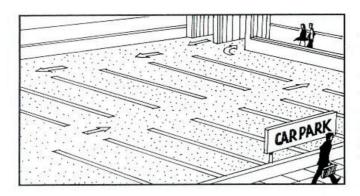
anything / anybody (or anyone)

- She didn't say anything.
- I didn't see anybody (or anyone).
- Are you doing anything this evening?
- Where's Ann? Has anybody seen her?

Put in **some** or **any**. 1 I bought some cheese but I didn't buy any bread. 2 I'm going to the post office. I need stamps. 3 There aren'tshops in this part of town. 4 George and Alice haven't gotchildren. 5 Have you got brothers or sisters? 6 There are beautiful flowers in the garden. 7 Do you know good hotels in London? 8 'Would you liketea?' 'Yes, please.' 9 When we were on holiday, we visitedvery interesting places. 10 Don't buy rice. We don't need 11 I went out to buy milk but they didn't have in the shop. 12 I'm thirsty. Can I have water, please? 75.2 Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any** + one of these words: air cheese help letters photographs batteries friends languages milk shampoo 1 I want to wash my hair. Is there any shampoo? 3 I haven't got my camera, so I can't take 4 Do you speak foreign? 5 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with ______ of mine. 6 Can I have ______ in my coffee, please? 7 The radio isn't working. There aren't in it. 8 It's hot in this office. I'm going out for _____ fresh _____. 9 'Would you like?' 'No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.' 10 I can do this job alone. I don't need 75.3 Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any**. 1 Ann didn't take any photographs but 1 took some . (I/take) 2 'Where's your luggage?' 'I haven't got any ! (I/not/have) Put in something/somebody/anything/anybody. 1 She said something to me but I didn't understand it. 2 'What's wrong?' 'There's in my eye.' 3 Do you know about politics? 4 I went to the shop but I didn't buy 5 has broken the window. I don't know who. 6 There isn't in the bag. It's empty. 7 I'm looking for my keys. Hasseen them? 8 Would you like to drink? 9 I didn't eat because I wasn't hungry.

not + any none no

A



The car park is empty.

There aren't any cars } in the car park. There are no cars

How many cars are there in the car park? None.

not (n't) + any

- There aren't any cars in the car park.
- Sally and Steve haven't got any children.
- You can have some coffee but I don't want any.

no + noun (no cars / no garden etc.)

 $no \dots = not + any or not + a$:

- There are **no cars** in the car park. (= there are**n't any** cars)
- We've got **no coffee**. (= we have**n't** got **any** coffee)
- It's a nice house but there's **no garden**. (= there is**n't a** garden)

We use **no** ... especially after **have** (**got**) and **there is/are**.

 $negative \ verb + any = positive \ verb + no$:

- They haven't got any children. or They've got no children. (not 'They haven't got no children')
- There isn't any sugar in your coffee. or There's no sugar in your coffee.
- B no and none

Use **no** + noun (**no money** / **no children** etc.):

- We've got no money.
- Everything was OK. There were no problems.

Use **none** alone (without a noun):

- 'How much money have you got?' 'None.' (= no money)
- 'Were there any problems?' 'No, **none**.' (= no problems)
- none and no-one

none = 0 (zero)

None is an answer for **How much?**/ **How many?** (things or people):

- 'How much money have you got?' 'None.' (= no money)
- 'How many people did you meet?' 'None.' (= no people)

 $no-one = nobody (\Rightarrow Unit 77)$

No-one is an answer for Who?:

• 'Who did you meet?' 'No-one.' (or Nobody.)

6.1	Write these sentences again with no .	
	1 We haven't got any money.	We've got no money.
	2 There aren't any shops near here.	There are
	3 Carol hasn't got any free time.	
	4 There isn't a light in this room.	
	Write these sentences again with any.	
	5 We've got no money.	We haven't got any money.
	6 There's no tea in the pot.	-
	7 There are no buses today.	
	8 Tom has got no brothers or sisters.	
6.2	Put in no or any .	
	1 There's mo sugar in your coffee.	
	2 My brother is married but he hasn't	got children.
	3 Sue doesn't speak foreign lan	
	4 I'm afraid there'scoffee. Wou	
	5 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Whe	
	6 'Do you know where Jane is?' 'No	
	Put in no , any or none .	
	7 There aren't pictures on th	ne wall
	8 The weather was cold but there was	
	9 I wanted to buy some oranges but the	
	10 Everything was correct. There were	
	11 'How much luggage have you got?'	
	12 'How much luggage have you got?'	'I haven't got'
10 0	Complete the sentences. Use any or no + on	
76.3	11.00	
	answer difference film photographs problems q	friends furniture heating money
	The state of the s	
	1 Everything was OK. There were	problems
		've got
	3 I'm not going to answer	
	4 He's always alone. He's got	between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
		ere was
	8 The house is cold because there isn't	
		. There's in the camera.
70.4	Write short answers (one or two words) to t	
76.4		
	1 How many letters did you write yeste	erday? Two. OR A lot. OR None.
	2 How many sisters have you got?	1 2
		erday?
		cen today?
	5 How many legs has a snake got?	

not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing

Α

not + anybody/anyone nobody/no-one



- There isn't in the room.
- There is in the room.
- A: Who is in the room? B: Nobody. / No-one.

anybody = anyonenobody = no-one(**-body** and **-one** are the same)

not + anything nothing (for things)



- There isn't anything in the bag.
- There is nothing in the bag.
- A: What's in the bag? B: Nothing.

B

not + anybody/anyone

I don't know anybody (or anyone) here.

nobody = not + anybodyno-one = not + anyone

- I'm lonely. I've got nobody to talk to. (= I haven't got anybody)
- The house is empty. There is no-one in it. (= There isn't anyone in it.)

not + anything

I can't remember anything.

nothing = not + anything

- She said nothing. (= She didn't say anything.)
- There's nothing to eat. (= There isn't anything to eat.)

C

You can use **nobody/no-one/nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

- The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there. (not 'Anybody lives there')
- 'Who did you speak to?' 'No-one.'
- Nothing happened. (not 'Anything happened')
- 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'

D negative verb + anybody/anyone/anything Remember: positive verb + nobody/no-one/nothing

- He doesn't know anything. (not 'He doesn't know nothing')
- Don't tell anybody. (not 'Don't tell nobody')
- There is nothing to do in this town. (not 'There isn't nothing')

.1	write these sentences again with nonday/no	o-one or nothing.
	1 There isn't anything in the bag.	There's nothing in the bag.
	2 There isn't anybody in the office.	There's
	3 I haven't got anything to do.	I
	4 There isn't anything on TV.	
	5 There wasn't anyone at home.	
	6 We didn't find anything.	
.2	Write these sentences again with anybody/a	anyone or anything.
	1 There's nothing in the bag.	There isn't anything in the bag.
	2 There was nobody on the bus.	There wasn't
	3 I've got nothing to read.	
	4 I've got no-one to help me.	
	5 She heard nothing.	
	6 We've got nothing for dinner.	
.3	Answer these questions with nobody/no-on	e or nothing.
	1a What did you say? Nothing.	5a Who knows the answer?
	2a Who saw you? Nobody.	6a What did you buy?
	3a What do you want?	
	4a Who did you meet?	
	Now answer the same questions with full se Use nobody/no-one/nothing or anybody/an	
	1b I didn't say anything.	5bthe answer
	2b Nobody saw me.	6b
	3b I don't	7b
	4b I	8b
.4	Complete the sentences. Use nobody/no-on	ne/nothing/anybody/anyone/anything.
	1 That house is empty. Nobody live	es there.
	2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't ren	nember anything .
	3 Be quiet! Don't say	
	4 I didn't know about the meeting.	told me.
	5 'What did you have to eat?' '	I wasn't hungry.'
	6 I didn't eat I w	vasn't hungry.
	7 Jenny was sitting alone. She wasn't v	
	8 I'm afraid I can't help you. There's	I can do.
	9 I don't knowab	oout car engines.
	10 The museum is free. It doesn't cost.	
		nen I opened it there was there.
	12 She spoke very fast. I didn't underst	
	13 'What are you doing this evening?'	' Why?'
		knows where she is. She didn't tell
	where she was g	going.

somebody/anything/nowhere etc.





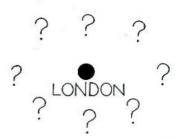
Somebody (or **someone**) has broken the window.

somebody/someone = a person but we don't know who



She has got **something** in her mouth.

something = a thing but we don't know what



Tom lives **somewhere** near London.

somewhere = in/to a place but we don't know where

B people (-body or -one)

somebody or someone anybody or anyone nobody or no-one

- There is **somebody** (or **someone**) in the garden.
- Is there anybody (or anyone) in the garden?
- There isn't anybody (or anyone) in the garden.
- There is **nobody** (or **no-one**) in the garden.

-body and -one are the same: somebody = someone, nobody = no-one etc.

things (-thing)

something

anything

nothing

- She said something but I didn't understand her.
- Are you doing anything at the weekend?
- I was angry but I didn't say anything.
- 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.'

places (-where)

somewhere

anywhere

nowhere

- They live **somewhere** in the south of England.
- Did you go anywhere interesting for your holidays?
- I'm staying here. I'm not going anywhere.
- I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

c something/anybody etc. + adjective (big/cheap/interesting etc.)

- Did you meet anybody interesting at the party?
- We always go to the same place. Let's go somewhere different.
- 'What's that letter?' 'It's nothing important.'

something/anybody etc. + to ...

- I'm hungry. I want **something to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- He hasn't got anybody to talk to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There is nowhere to go in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

She said something. I've lost They went I'm going to phone	What did she say? What have you lost? Where did they go?
They went I'm going to phone	
I'm going to phone	While the they go.
	Who are you going to phone?
t in nobody (or no-one) / nothing / nowhere .	
	1
What did you say? Nothir	19.
1971	
777	
Who are you looking for?	
w answer the same questions with full sentences	. Use not + anybody/anything/anywhere.
I didn't say anything.	3b
I'm not	4b
t in somebody/anything/nowhere etc.	
TOTAL (200) 1996	
It's dark. I can't see anything	
Tom lives somewhere near London.	
Do you knowal	
'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear	
'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting to	for
Please listen carefully. There's	I want to tell you.
'Didsee the acci	ident?' 'No,
We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat	
'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know.	knows.'
'Do you knowi	n London?' 'Yes, a few people.'
'What's in that cupboard?' '	It's empty.'
I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find then	
I don't like cold weather. I want to live	
Is there interesti	
Have you ever met	
mplete the sentences. Choose from Box A and Bo	ox B.
2 2	В Г
something anything nothing	do drink eat go
somewhere anywhere nowhere	play read sit stay
You can use these words more than once.	
We don't go out very much because there's	nowhere to go
There isn't any food in the house. We haven	't got
I'm bored. I've got	
'Why are you standing?' 'Because there is	
'Would you like	?' 'Yes, please – a glass of orange i

every and all

A

Every house in the street is the same.

every house in the street = all the houses in the street

We use **every** + singular noun (**every house** / **every country** etc.):

- Alice has been to every country in Europe.
- Every summer we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different every time I see her.

Use a singular verb after every ...:

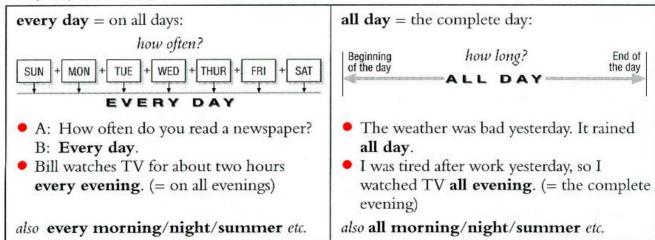
- Every house in the street is the same. (not 'are the same')
- Every country has a national flag. (not 'have')

Compare every and all:

- Every student in the class passed the exam.
- Every country has a national flag.
- All the students in the class passed the exam.
- All countries have a national flag.

B

every day and all day



ceverybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

everybody or everyone
(people)
everything
(things)
everywhere
(places)

- Everybody (or Everyone) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
- Have you got everything you need? (= all the things you need)
- I've lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it. (= I've looked in all places)

Use a singular verb after everybody/everyone/everything:

• Everybody has problems. (not 'Everybody have')

79.1	Complete the sentences. Use every + one of these words:
	day room student time word
	1 Every student in the class passed the exam.
	2 My job is very boring. is the same.
	3 Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins
	4in the hotel has a private bathroom.
	5 'Did you understand what she said?' 'Most of it but not
79.2	Complete the sentences with every day or all day.
	1 Yesterday it rained all day.
	2 I buy a newspaper but sometimes I don't read it.
	3 I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home
	4 I usually drink about four cups of coffee
	5 Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed
	6 Last year we went to the seaside for a week and it rained
	7 I'm tired now because I've been working hard
79.3	Put in every or all.
	1 Bill watches TV for about two hours every evening.
	2 Barbara gets up at 6.30 morning. 3 The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat in the garden
	4 I'm going away on Monday. I'll be away week. 5 'How often do you go skiing?' ' year. Usually in March.'
	6 A: Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday?
	B: Yes, I was at home morning. I went out after lunch.
	7 My sister likes cars. She buys a new one year.
	8 I saw Jack at the party. He wasn't very friendly. He didn't speak to me evening.
	9 We go away on holiday for two or three weeks summer.
79.4	Put in everybody/everything/everywhere.
	1 Everybody needs friends.
	2 Chris knowsabout computers.
	3 I like the people here. is very friendly.
	4 This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and is very clean.
	5 Kevin never uses his car. He goes by motor-bike.
	6 Let's have dinner is hungry.
	7 Sue's house is full of books. There are books
	8 You are right you say is true.
79.5	Put in a verb (one word).
	1 Everybody has problems.
	2 Are you ready yet? Everybody waiting for you.
	3 The house is empty. Everyone gone out.
	4 George is very popular. Everybodyhim.
	5 This town is completely different. Everything changed.
	6 I arrived home very late. I came in quietly because everyone asleep.
	7 Frankala priordend

all most some any no/none

A Compare:

children/money/books etc. (in general):

- Children like playing. (= children in general)
- Money isn't everything. (= money in general)
- I enjoy reading books.
- Everybody needs friends.

the children / the money / these books etc.:

• Where are **the children**? (= our children)

most of/some of etc. + the/this/my ... etc.

the ...

this/that ...

these/those ...

my/your ... etc.

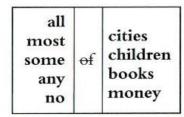
- I want to buy a car but I haven't got the money. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read these books?

(of)

I often go out with my friends.

B most/most of ..., some/some of ... etc.

most/some etc. + noun:





all

in general)



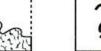
most

Most children like playing. (= children

Some books are better than others.

All cities have the same problems.







all

most

some

none

any



any

no / none / not + any

- Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.
- I don't want any of this money.
- Some of these books are very old.
- None of my friends live near me.

(= cities in general)

I don't want any money.

He's got no friends.

Do not use of in these sentences:
Most people drive too fast. (not 'Most of people')

• Some birds can't fly. (not 'Some of birds')

We say **all the** ... / **all my** ... etc. (usually without **of**):

- All the students in our class passed the exam.
- Silvia has lived in London all her life.

all of it / most of them / none of us etc.

all most some any none	of	it them us you
------------------------------------	----	-------------------------

- You can have some of this cake but not all of it.
- A: Do you know those people?
 B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- Some of us are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I've got a lot of books but I haven't read any of them.
- 'How many of these books have you read?' 'None of them.'

Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (**some/most** etc.). Sometimes you need **of** (**some of** / **most of** etc.).

Most children like playing. (most)

Some of this money is yours. (some)

method people never stop talking. (some)

the shops in the city centre close at 6.30. (most)

You can change your money in banks. (most)

I don't like the pictures in the living room. (any)

He's lost his money. (all)

my friends are married. (none)

Do you know the people in this photograph? (any)

birds can fly. (most)

I enjoyed the film but I didn't like the ending. (most)

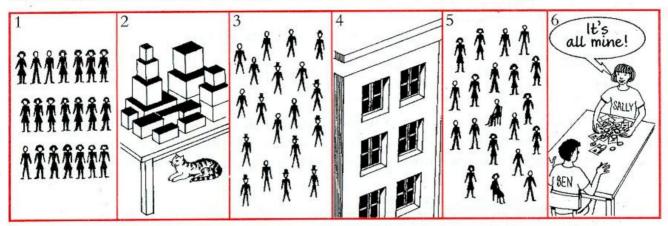
sports are very dangerous. (some)

We can't find anywhere to stay. the hotels are full. (all)

You must have this cheese. It's delicious. (some)

The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained the time. (most)

Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use all/most/some/none + of them / of it.



1 How many of the people are women?
2 How many of the boxes are on the table?
3 How many of the men are wearing hats?
4 How many of the windows are open?
5 How many of the people are standing?
6 How much of the money is Ben's?

Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write OK if the sentence is correct.

1 Most of children like playing. Most children
2 All the students failed the exam. OK
3 Some of people work too hard.
4 Some of questions in the exam were very easy.
5 I haven't seen any of those people before.
6 All of insects have six legs.
7 Have you read all these books?
8 Most of students in our class are very nice.
9 Most of my friends are going to the party.
10 I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night.

either neither both

We use **both/either/neither** to talk about *two* things or people:







both

Rosemary has two children. Both are married. (Both = the two children)

either

- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (= tea *or* coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre? B: **Neither**. I want to stay at home. (**Neither** = *not* the cinema *or* the theatre)

Compare either and neither:

'Would you like tea or coffee?'

'Either. I don't mind.' (= tea or coffee) 'I don't want either.' (not 'I don't want neither') 'Neither.' (= not tea or coffee)

both/either/neither + noun

both	+	plural:	both	windows/books/children etc.
either neither	+	singular:	either neither	} window/book/child etc.

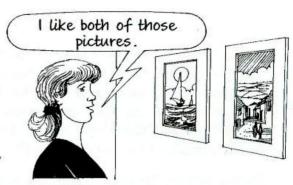
- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked **both cities** very much.
- First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. Neither job was very interesting.
- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go either way.

C both of ... / either of ... / neither of ...

both either	of	the these / those
neither		my / your / Ann's etc.

- Neither of my parents is English.
- I haven't read either of these books.

You can say both (of) the ... / both (of) those ... / **both** (of) **my** ... etc. (with or without **of**):



- I like both of those pictures. or I like both those pictures.
- Both of Ann's sisters are married. or Both Ann's sisters are married.

both of them / neither of us etc.

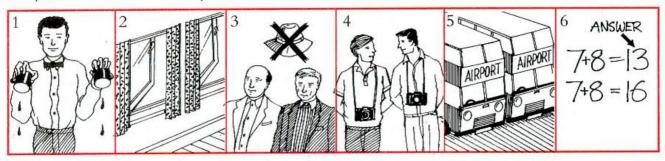
both		them
either	of	us
neither		you

- Ann has got two sisters. Both of them are married.
- Tom and I didn't eat anything. **Neither of us was** hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don't know either of them.

Put in both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.

- 1 Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
- 2 There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like either of them.
- 3 It was a good football match. teams played well.
- 4 It wasn't a good football match. team played well.
- 6 We went away for two days but the weather wasn't good. It rained on days.
- 8 I invited Diana and Mike to the party but them came.
- 10 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like them.'
- 12 Paula and I didn't know the time because us had a watch.
- 13 Ann has got two sisters and a brother. sisters are married.
- 14 Ann has got two sisters and a brother. I've met her brother but I haven't mether sisters.

81.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use Both ... and Neither



1	Both cups are empty.	4	cameras.
2	are open.	5	to the airport.
3	wearing a hat.	6	right.

A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with **Both/Neither of them ...**.

		(T)			
1	Are you married?	No	No →	-1	Neither of them is married.
2	How old are you?	21	21 -	-2	Both of them are 21.
3	Are you a student?	Yes	Yes -	-3	students.
4	Have you got a car?	No	No	4	a car.
5	Where do you live?	London	London	5	
6	Do you like cooking?	Yes	Yes	6	
7	Can you play the piano?	No	No	7	
8	Do you read newspapers?	Yes	Yes	8	
. 9	Are you interested in sport?	No	No	9	

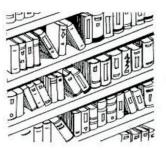
much a lot many



a lot of money



not much money



a lot of books



not many books

We use **much** + uncountable noun: much food / much money etc.:

- Did you buy much food?
- We haven't got much luggage.
- How much money do you want?
- A: Have you got any money?
 - B: I've got some but not much.

We use many + plural noun:

many books / many people etc.:

- Did you buy many books?
- We don't know many people.
- How many photographs did you take?
- A: Did you take any photographs? B: I took some but not many.

We use a lot of + all types of noun:

- We bought a lot of food.
- Paula hasn't got a lot of free time.

- There is a lot of food/money/water ... (singular verb)
- We bought a lot of books.
- Did they ask you a lot of questions?

Note that we say:

- There are a lot of trees/shops/people ... (plural verb)
- A lot of **people speak** English. (not 'speaks')
- В We use **much** in questions and negative sentences, but *not usually* in positive sentences:
 - Do you drink much coffee / a lot of coffee?
 - I don't drink much coffee / a lot of coffee.
 - I drink a lot of coffee. (not 'I drink much coffee.')
 - 'Do you drink much coffee?' 'Yes, a lot.' (not 'much')

We use many and a lot of in all types of sentences:

- Have you got many friends / a lot of friends?
- We haven't got many friends / a lot of friends.
- We've got many friends / a lot of friends.
- much and a lot without a noun
 - Diane spoke to me but she didn't say much.
 - 'Do you watch TV much?' 'No, not much.' (= not often)
 - We like films, so we go to the cinema a lot. (not 'much' See section B)
 - I don't like him very much.

	Put in much or many .	
	2 There aren't hotels in this town. 3 We haven't got petrol.	Did students fail the examination? Paula hasn't got money. I wasn't very hungry. I didn't eat
	Put in How much or How many .	
	people are coming milk do you want i bread did you buy? players are there in	in your coffee? a football team?
2	Complete the sentences. Use much or many with one of	
	books countries luggage people	
	I don't read very much. I haven't got	know? 'No, only this bag.'
3	Complete the sentences with a lot of + one of these:	
	accidents books fun interesting	things traffic
	 I like reading. I have a lot of books. We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw This road is very dangerous. There are We enjoyed our holiday. We had It took me a long time to drive here. There wa 	
4	In some of these sentences much is not natural. Chang	e the sentences or write <i>OK</i> .
	 Do you drink much coffee? I drink much tea. It was a cold winter. We had much snow. There wasn't much snow last winter. It costs much money to travel around the world. We had a cheap holiday. It didn't cost much. Do you know much about computers? 'Have you got any luggage?' 'Yes, much.' 	OK a lot of tea
5	Write sentences about these people. Use much and a l	ot.
	 Jim loves films. (go to the cinema) Linda thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis) Martin doesn't like driving. (use his car) Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out Sue has been all over the world. (travel) 	He goes to the cinema a lot. She doesn't watch TV much. She He

(a) little (a) few

A



a little water

- (a) little + uncountable noun:
- (a) little water
- (a) little money
- (a) little time
- (a) little soup



a few books

- (a) few + plural noun:
- (a) few books
- (a) few questions
- (a) few people
- (a) few days

B

a little = some but not much:

- She didn't eat anything but she drank a little water.
- I speak a little Spanish. (= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak Spanish? B: A little.

 $\mathbf{a} \ \mathbf{few} = \mathbf{some} \ \mathbf{but} \ \mathbf{not} \ \mathbf{many}$:

- Last night I wrote a few letters.
- We're going away for a few days.
- I speak a few words of Spanish.
- A: Are there any shops in the village? B: Yes, a few.

C

 \mathbf{a} **little** (without \mathbf{a}) = nearly no ... or nearly nothing:

There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say very little:

 Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (= nearly nothing)

a few (without a) = nearly no ...:

There were **few people** in the park. It was nearly empty.

You can say very few:

Your English is very correct. You make very few mistakes.

D

little and a little:

- a little is a positive idea:
- They have a little money, so they're not poor. (= they have some money)

X little is a negative idea:

They have **little** money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)

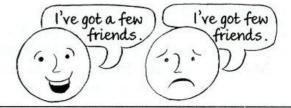


few and a few:

- a few is a positive idea:
- I've got a few friends, so I'm not lonely. (= I've got some friends)

few is a negative idea:

I'm sad and I'm lonely. I've got **few** friends. (= nearly no friends)



83

83.1	Answer the questions with a little or a few.
	1 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, a little .' 2 'Have you got any envelopes?' 'Yes,
83.2	Put in a little or a few + one of these words:
	air chairs days friends letters milk Russian times
	1 Last night I wrote a few letters to my family and friends. 2 Can I have
	6 'Have you ever been to Rome?' 'Yes,
83.3	Complete the sentences. Use very little or very few + one of these words:
00.0	coffee hotels mistakes people rain time work
	1 Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes 2 I drink, I don't like it. 3 The weather here is very dry in summer. There is 4 It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are 5 We must hurry. We've got 6 The town is very quiet at night go out. 7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do
83.4	Put in little / a little / few / a few.
	1 There was food in the fridge. It was nearly empty. 2 'When did Sarah go out?' minutes ago.' 3 I can't decide now. I need time to think about it. 4 There was traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected. 5 The bus service isn't very good at night – there are buses after 9 o'clock. 6 'Would you like some soup?' 'Yes,, please.' 7 I'd like to practise my English more but I have opportunity.
83.5	Right or wrong? Correct the sentences where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is correct.
	1 We're going away for few days next week. 2 Everybody needs little luck. 3 I can't talk to you now – I've got few things to do. 4 I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much. 5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? 6 There were little people on the bus – it was nearly empty.

old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)

adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes etc.)

adjective + noun

day today. It's a nice

Laura has got brown eyes.

bridge in this village. There's a very **old**

food? Do you like **Italian**

I don't speak any foreign languages.

flowers in the garden. There are some beautiful yellow

The adjective is *before* the noun:

- They live in a **modern house**. (not 'a house modern')
- Have you met any famous people? (not 'people famous')

The ending of an adjective is always the same:

different places (not 'differents') a different place

- be (am/is/was etc.) + adjective
 - The weather is nice today.
 - These flowers are very beautiful.
 - Are you cold? Shall I close the window?
 - I'm hungry. Can I have something to eat?
 - The film wasn't very good. It was boring.
 - Please be quiet. I'm reading.



look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective







- 'You look tired.' 'Yes, I feel tired.'
- George told me about his new job. It sounds very interesting.
- Don't cook that meat. It doesn't smell good.

Compare:

Не	is feels	tired.
	looks	

They	look	American.
,	sound	The second secon

	is	•
It	smells	good.
	tastes	

84.1	Put the	words i	in the	right	order.
------	---------	---------	--------	-------	--------

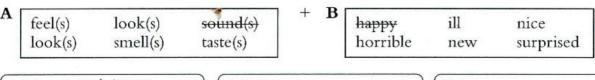
1	(new / live in / house / they / a) They live in a new house.
2	(like / jacket / I / that / green) I
3	(music / like / do / classical / you?) Do
4	(had / wonderful / a / I / holiday)
5	(went to / restaurant / a / Chinese / we)

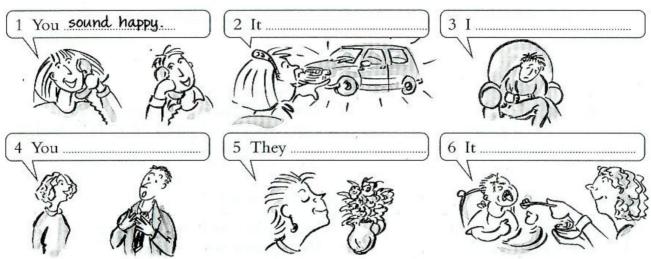
The words in the box are adjectives (**black/foreign** etc.) or nouns (**air/job** etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air	clouds	foreign	holiday	job	languages	sharp
black	dangerous	fresh	hot	knife	long	water

- 1 Do you speak any foreign languages ?
- 3 Sue works very hard and she's very tired. She needs a
- 4 I want to have a bath but there's no
- 5 Can you open the window? We need some
- 6 I need a to cut these onions.
- 7 Fire-fighting is a

84.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from Box A and Box B.



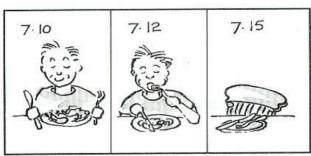


84.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use the word in brackets (...).

	A		В
1	You look tired.	Do I? I don't feel tired.	(feel)
2	This is a new coat.	Is it? It	(look)
3	I'm American.	Are you? You	(sound)
4	You look cold.	Do I? I	(feel)
5	These bags are heavy.	Are they? They	(look)
6	That soup looks good.	Does it? It	(taste)

quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)

A







Suddenly the shelf fell down.

Quickly and suddenly are adverbs.

 $adjective + -ly \rightarrow adverb$:

quick bad sudden careful heavy adjective heavily badly sudden**ly** carefully adverb quickly etc.

heavy → heavily *Spelling* (\Rightarrow Appendix 5): easy \rightarrow easily

- B Adverbs tell you how something happens or how somebody does something:
 - The train stopped suddenly.
 - I opened the door slowly.
 - Please listen carefully.
 - I understand you perfectly.



It's raining heavily.

Compare:

adjective (⇒ Unit 84)

- Sue is very quiet.
- Be careful!
- It was a bad game.
- I feel nervous. (= I am nervous)

adverb

- Sue speaks very quietly. (not 'speaks very quiet')
- Listen carefully! (not 'listen careful')
- Our team played badly. (not 'played bad')
- I waited nervously.
- C These words are adjectives and adverbs: hard fast late early
 - Sue's job is very hard.
 - Ben is a fast runner.
 - The bus was late/early.
- Sue works very hard. (not 'hardly')
- Ben can run fast.
- I went to bed late/early.
- D good (adjective) $\rightarrow well$ (adverb)
 - Your English is very good. It was a good game.
- You speak English very well. (not 'very good')
- Our team played well.

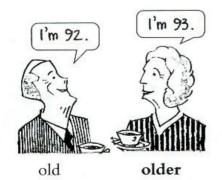
But **well** is also an *adjective* (= not ill, in good health):

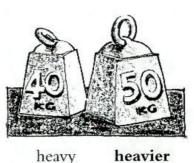
'How are you?' 'I'm very well, thank you. And you?'

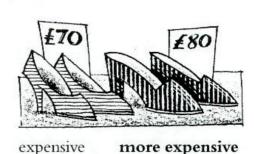
85.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with one of these adverbs:

angrily	badly	dangerously	fast	heavily	quietly		
		3	Cohang)	4	5	6	
2 He sing 3 They ca	me in	an adverb (Box B		4 She shoute 5 She can ru 6 He was dri	n very ving		
A come explai	know		1 +]	carefully carefully		hard quickly	well well
2 Ann! I r 3 They 4 I'm tire 5 You're a 6 7 I've met	d this morni much bette	u something verelp. ing. I didn't er tennis player t be times but I dor ry good. Somet	han me. Wefore you an	e end of the day Then we play, answer the ques	ny they're al last niş you always stion. ery	lways tired ght.	
2 Why at 3 Can you 4 Come 5 Bill is a 6 Jane is 7 'Where 8 Please 9 Some 6	eat so quick re you angrous speak slov on, Dave! Von very carefus studying have's Diane?' be quiet/que companies p	/quickly. It's no y/angrily? I have w/slowly, please Why are you alw il/carefully drive rd/hardly for he 'She was here b ietly. I'm studyi ay their workers	en't done a er ays so <u>slow</u> er. r examinat ut she left <u>e</u> ng. s very <u>bad</u> /	nything. /slowly? ions. sudden/sudde /badly.	<u>ckly</u> is right nly.'		
Put in good							
2 Jackie di3 The par4 Martin l5 How are	id veryty was very has a difficul your paren	good You sp in her exams. I enjoye t job but he doe ts? Are they holiday? Was	ed it very nes it?	nuch.			

expensive/more expensive old/older







Older / heavier / more expensive are comparative forms. The comparative is **-er** (**older**) or **more** ... (**more expensive**).

B -er (older/heavier etc.)

> Short words (1 syllable) \rightarrow -**er**: $slow \rightarrow slower$ $old \rightarrow older$ **cheap** → cheap**er** late → later big → bigger nice → nicer Spelling (\Rightarrow Appendix 5): big \rightarrow bigger $hot \rightarrow hotter$ thin → thinner Words ending in $-y \rightarrow -ier$: $early \rightarrow earlier$ $easy \rightarrow easier$ heavy \rightarrow heavier

- Rome is **old** but Athens is **older**. (not 'more old')
- Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (not 'more cheap')
- Helen wants a bigger car.
- This coat is OK but I think the other one is nicer.
- Don't write a letter. It's easier to phone. (not 'more easy')

far → further:

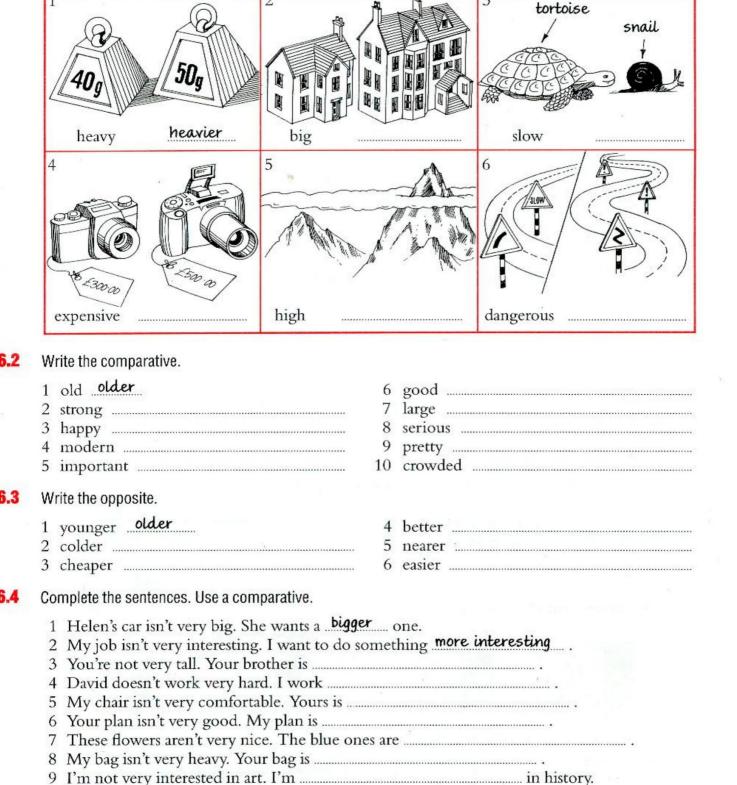
- 'How far is it to the station? A mile?' 'No, it's **further**. About two miles.'
- more ...

Long words $(2/3/4 \text{ syllables}) \rightarrow \mathbf{more} \dots$: careful → **more** careful polite → **more** polite interesting \rightarrow more interesting expensive \rightarrow more expensive

- You must be more careful.
- I don't like my job. I want to do something more interesting.
- Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?
- $bad \rightarrow worse$ good/well → better
 - The weather wasn't very good yesterday but it's better today.
 - Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel worse.'
 - Which is worse a headache or a toothache?

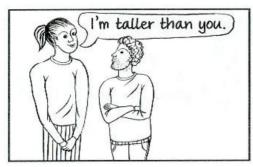
86.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older / more interesting etc.).

2

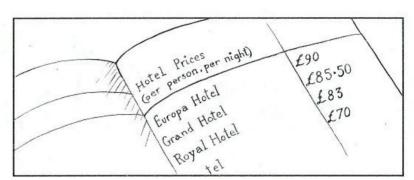


14 This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a ______ one? - 15 People today aren't very polite. In the past they were _____.

more expensive than ... older than ...



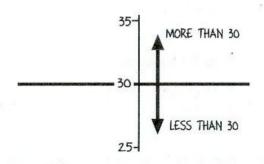
She's taller than him.



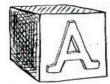
The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

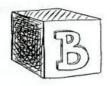
We use than after comparatives (older than ... / more expensive than ... etc.):

- Athens is older than Rome.
- Are oranges more expensive than bananas?
- It's easier to phone than to write a letter.
- 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. Better than yesterday.'
- The restaurant is more crowded than usual.
- B We say: than **me** / than **him** / than **her** / than **us** / than **them**. You can say:
 - I can run faster than him. or I can run faster than he can.
 - You are a better singer than me. or You are a better singer than I am.
 - I got up earlier than her. or I got up earlier than she did.
- more/less than ...
 - A: How much did your shoes cost? £30? B: No, more than that. (= more than f,30)
 - The film was very short **less than** an hour.
 - They've got more money than they need.
 - You go out more than me.



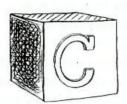
D a bit older / much older etc.





Box A is a bit bigger than Box B.

a bit much	bigger older better more difficult more expensive	than
---------------	---	------





Box C is **much bigger** than Box D.

- Canada is much bigger than France.
- Jill is a bit older than Gary she's 25 and he's 24%.
- The hotel was much more expensive than I expected.
- You go out much more than me.

87.2

87.3

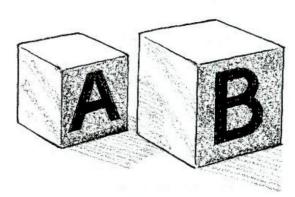
87.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.

1 I'm 26.	1 I'm 24.
2 I'm not a very good swimmer.	2 I'm a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.	3 I'm 1 metre 63 tall.
4 I start work at 8 o'clock.	4 I start work at 8.30.
5 I don't work very hard.	5 I work very hard.
6 I haven't got much money.	6 I've got a lot of money.
7 I'm a very good driver.	7 I'm not a very good driver.
8 I'm not very patient.	8 I'm very patient.
9 I'm not a very good dancer.	9 I'm a good dancer.
10 I'm very intelligent.	10 I'm not very intelligent.
11 I speak French very well.	11 I don't speak French very well.
12 I don't go to the cinema very much.	12 I go to the cinema a lot.
12 I don't go to the chienta very much.	12 1 go to the chiema a lot.
1 Liz is older than Ben. 7	Liz is a
2 Ben is a better swimmer than Liz. 8	
3 Liz is9	
	Liz
	Liz
	Ben
2 She isn't very old. You're 3 I don't work very hard. You work 4 He doesn't watch TV very much. You 5 I'm not a very good cook. You 6 We don't know many people. You 7 They haven't got much money. You 8 I can't run very fast. You can 9 She hasn't been here very long. You 10 They didn't get up very early. You 11 He wasn't very surprised. You	
Complete the sentences with a bit or much + a comparati	ve (older/better etc.).
1 Jill is 25. Gary is 24½. Jill is a bit older than Gary.	
2 Jack's mother is 54. His father is 69.	
Jack's mother	24 - 2
3 My camera cost £100. Yours cost £96.	
My camera	<u> </u>
4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.	
I feel	See STRee and Could be
5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it	was ten degrees
It's	
6 Ann is an excellent tennis player. I'm not very go	
Ann	
4 ALIH	***************************************

not as ... as

A not as ... as



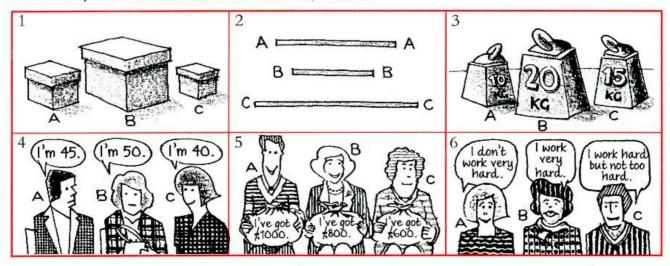


She's old but she's not as old as he is.

Box A isn't as big as Box B.

- Rome is not as old as Athens. (= Athens is older)
- The Grand Hotel isn't as expensive as the Europa. (= the Europa is more expensive)
- I don't play tennis as often as you. (= you play more often)
- The weather is better than it was yesterday. It isn't as cold. (= as cold as it was yesterday)
- B not as much as ... / not as many as ...
 - I haven't got as much money as you. (= you've got more money)
 - I don't know as many people as you. (= you know more people)
 - I don't go out as much as you. (= you go out more)
- Compare not as ... as and than:
 - Rome is **not** as **old** as Athens. Athens is **older than** Rome. (not 'older as Rome')
 - Tennis isn't as popular as football.
 Football is more popular than tennis.
 - I don't go out as much as you.
 You go out more than me.
- We say: as me / as him / as her etc. You can say:
 - She's not as old as him. or She's not as old as he is.
 - You don't work as hard as me. or You don't work as hard as I do.
- We say the same as ...:
 - The weather today is the same as yesterday.
 - My hair is the same colour as yours.
 - I arrived at the same time as Tim.

88.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.



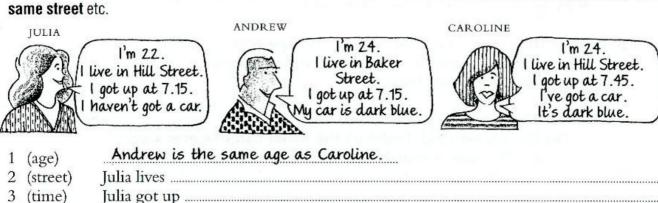
1	A is bigger than C but not as big as B.	
2	A is	. B but not
3	C is	. A but
4	A is	. but
5	B has got	
	C works	

88.2 Write sentences with as ... as

88.3 Put in as or than.

4 (colour)

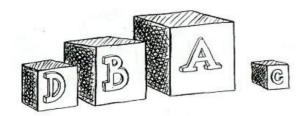
- 1 Athens is older than Rome. 5 Jim isn't as clever he thinks.
 2 I don't watch TV as much you. 6 Belgium is smaller Switzerland.
 3 You eat more me. 7 Brazil isn't as big Canada.
 4 I feel better I felt yesterday. 8 I can't wait longer an hour.
- Use the information to complete the sentences about Julia, Andrew and Caroline. Use the same age / the same street etc.



Andrew's

the oldest the most expensive

A



Box A is bigger than Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is the biggest box.

HOTEL PRICES (per person .per ni	IN KIIV I ight)	UN	
Europa Hotel	195	Grosvenor	160
Grand Hotel	£85.5	O Bennetts	£58
Royal	185	Carlton	£55
Astoria	£70	Star	£50
Palace	165	Station	145

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than all the other hotels in the town.

The Europa Hotel is the most expensive hotel in the town.

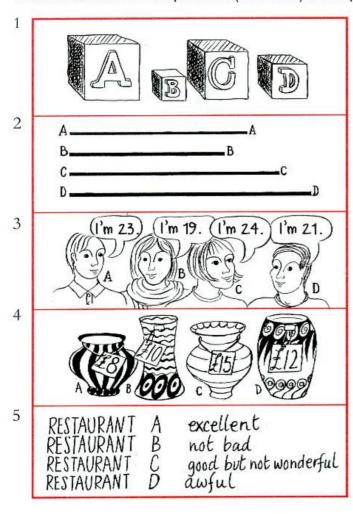
Bigger / older / more expensive etc. are comparative forms (\Rightarrow Unit 86). Biggest / oldest / most expensive etc. are superlative forms.

B The superlative form is **-est** (**oldest**) or **most** ... (**most expensive**):

Short words (old/cheap/nice etc.) \rightarrow the -est: old \rightarrow the oldest **cheap** → **the** cheap**est** nice → the nicest $good \rightarrow the best$ bad → the worst but $hot \rightarrow the hottest$ Spelling (\Rightarrow Appendix 5): big \rightarrow the biggest *Words ending in* -y (easy/heavy *etc.*) \rightarrow the -iest: heavy \rightarrow the heaviest easy \rightarrow the easiest pretty \rightarrow the prettiest Long words (careful/expensive/interesting etc.) \rightarrow the most ...: careful → the most careful interesting \rightarrow the most interesting

- C We say: **the** oldest ... / **the** most expensive ... etc. (with **the**):
 - The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town. (= it is older than all the other buildings)
 - What is the longest river in the world?
 - Money is important but it isn't the most important thing in life.
 - Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?
- n You can use the oldest / the best / the most expensive etc. without a noun:
 - Ken is a good player but he isn't the best in the team. (the best = the best player)
- E superlative + I've ever ... / you've ever ... etc.
 - The film was very bad. I think it's the worst film I've ever seen.
 - What is the most unusual thing you've ever done?

89.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older etc.) and superlatives (the oldest etc.).



(big/small)					
(A/D)	A is bigger than D.				
(A)	A is the biggest.				
(B)	B is the smallest.				
(2)					
(long/	short)				
(C/A)	C is				
(D)	D is				
(B)	В				
(young	g/old)				
(D/C)	D				
(B)					
(C)					
(expen	sive/cheap)				
(D/A)					
(C)					
(A)					
(good/	(bad)				
(A/C)					
(A)					
(D)					

- 89.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (the oldest etc.).
 - 1 This building is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.
 - 2 It was a very happy day. It was _____ of my life.
 - 3 It's a very good film. It's ______ I've ever seen.
 - 4 She's a very popular singer. She's in the country.

 - 7 It was a very cold day. It was of the year.
- **89.3** Write sentences with a superlative (the longest etc.).

Brazil
Jupiter
the Nile

large long high

planet
state
mountain

the USA	the solar system
Africa	South America
the world	Australia

L	
1	Sydney is the largest city in Australia.
2	Everest
3	
4	
5	
6	

enough



She can't buy a sandwich. She hasn't got enough money.



He can't reach the shelf. He isn't tall enough.

- В enough + noun (enough money / enough people etc.)
 - 'Is there enough sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
 - We wanted to play football but we didn't have **enough players**.
 - Why don't you buy a car? You've got **enough money**. (*not* 'money enough')

enough without a noun:

- I've got some money but not enough to buy a car. (= I need more money to buy a car)
- 'Would you like some more to eat?'
 'No, thanks. I've had enough.'
- You're always at home. You don't go out enough.
- adjective + enough (good enough / tall enough etc.)
 - 'Shall we sit outside?' 'No, it isn't warm enough.' (not 'enough warm')
 - Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
 - Don't buy that coat. It's nice but it isn't **long enough**. (= it's too short)

Remember:

enough + noun	but	adjective + enough
enough money		tall enough
enough time		good enough
enough people		old enough

We say:

enough for (somebody/something)	 This pullover isn't big enough for me. I haven't got enough money for a car.
enough to (do something)	 I haven't got enough money to buy a car. (not 'for buy a car') Is your English good enough to have a conversation? (not 'for have')
<pre>enough for (somebody/something) to (do something)</pre>	There aren't enough chairs for everybody to sit down.

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words:

wind chairs money paint TICKETS ve got but 1, need \$3 1 She hasn't got enough money. 3 She hasn't got 2 There aren't 4 There isn't Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use one of these adjectives + enough: big long strong tall 1 He isn't tall enough. 3 His legs aren't 2 The car 4 He Complete the sentences. Use enough with one of these words: fruit loud old practise time . tired 1 'Is there enough sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.' 2 Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?

3 He can leave school if he wants – he's 4 Did you have ______ to answer all the questions in the exam? 5 This house isn't _____ for a large family. 6 Tina is very thin. She doesn't

Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with the words in brackets (...).

1	We haven't got enough money to buy a car.		(money / buy)
2	This knife isn't	tomatoes.	(sharp / cut)
3	The water wasn't	a bath.	(warm / have)
4	Have we got	sandwiches?	(bread / make)
5	We played well but not	the game.	(well / win)
6	I don't have	newspapers.	(time / read)



His shoes are too big for him.



There is too much sugar in it.

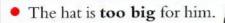
- too + adjective / adverb (too big / too hard etc.)
 - Can you turn the radio down? It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
 - I can't work. I'm too tired.
 - I think you work too hard.

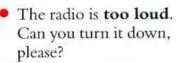


- too much / too many = more than you want, more than is good:
 - I don't like the weather here. There is too much rain. (= more rain than is good)
 - Let's go to another restaurant. There are too many people here.
 - Emily studies all the time. I think she studies too much.
 - Traffic is a problem in this town. There are too many cars.

too big

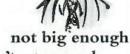
D Compare too and not enough:





- There's too much sugar in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)
- I don't feel very well. I ate too much.

- The hat isn't big enough for him. (= it's **too small**)
- The radio isn't loud enough. Can you turn it up, please?
- There's not enough sugar in my coffee. (= I need more sugar)



You're very thin. You don't eat enough.

We say:

too for (somebody/something)	 These shoes are too big for me. It's a small house – too small for a large family
too to (do something)	 I'm too tired to go out. (not 'for go out') It's too cold to sit outside.
too for (somebody/something) to (do something)	• She speaks too fast for me to understand.

91.3

6 (I didn't say anything / surprised)

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use too + one of these words:

crowded fast loud big heavy The radio is too loud. 4 She's driving The box is The ball is 6 The restaurant is The net is Put in too / too much / too many / enough. 1 You're always at home. You don't go out enough . 2 I don't like the weather here. There's too much rain. 3 I can't wait for them. I haven't got time. 4 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were ______people. 5 You're always tired. I think you work hard. 6 'Did you have to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.' 7 You drink coffee. It's not good for you. 8 You don't eat vegetables. You should eat more. 9 I don't like the weather here. It's cold. 10 Our team didn't play well. We made mistakes. Complete the sentences. Use **too** or **enough** with the words in brackets (...). 1 I couldn't work. I was too tired. (tired) 2 Can you turn the radio up, please? It isn't loud enough. (loud) 3 I don't want to walk home. It's (far) 4 Don't buy anything in that shop. It (expensive) 5 You can't put all your things in this bag. It (big) 6 I couldn't do the exercise. It (difficult) 7 Your work needs to be better. It (good) 8 I can't talk to you now. I (busy) 9 I thought the film was boring. It (long) Complete the sentences. Use **too** (+ adjective) + **to** (do something). It's too cold to go out. 1 (I'm not going out / cold) 2 (I'm not going to bed / early) It's 3 (they're not getting married / young) They're It's 4 (nobody goes out at night / dangerous) 5 (don't phone Ann now / late) It's

I was

He speaks English very well. (word order 1)

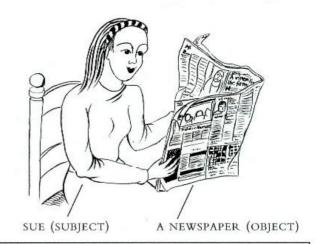
verb + object

Sue reads a newspaper every day. verb object subject

The verb (reads) and the object (a newspaper) are usually together. We say:

Sue reads a newspaper every day.

(not 'Sue reads every day a newspaper.')



verb + object

He speaks English very well. (not 'He speaks very well English.')

I like Italian food very much. (not 'I like very much ...')

Did you watch television all evening? (not 'Did you watch all evening ...?')

We invited a lot of people to the party. (not 'We invited to the party ... ')

Paul often wears a black hat. (not 'Paul wears often ... ')

I opened the door quietly.

Why do you always make the same mistake?

I'm going to **borrow some money** from the bank.

B

place and time

We went to a party last night. place

Place (to a party) is usually before time (last night). We say:

• We went to a party last night. (not 'We went last night to a party.')

place

time

(where?)

(when? how long? how often?)

Liz walks to work

every day. (not ' ... every day to work')

Will you be at home

this evening? (not '... this evening at home?')

I usually go to bed

early. (not ' ... early to bed')

We arrived at the airport

at 7 o'clock.

They've lived in the same house for 20 years.

Jim's father has been in hospital

since June.

2.1	Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wron	ng.
	1 Did you watch (all evening television?)	Did you watch television all evening?
	2 Sue reads a newspaper every day.	OK
	3 I like very much this picture.	
	4 Tom started last week his new job.	
	5 I want to speak English fluently.	
	6 Jane bought for her friend a present.	
	7 I drink every day three cups of coffee.	
	8 Don't eat your dinner too quickly!	
	9 I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds.	
2.2	Put the words in order.	
	1 (the door / opened / I / quietly)	I opened the door quietly.
	2 (two letters / I / this morning / wrote)	I
	3 (passed / Paul / easily / the exam)	<u></u>
	4 (Ann / very well / French / doesn't speak)	
	5 (a lot of work / did / I / yesterday)	
	6 (London / do you know / well?)	
	7 (we / enjoyed / very much / the party)	
	8 (the problem / carefully / I / explained)	
	9 (we / at the airport / some friends / met)	
	10 (did you buy / in England / that jacket?)	у
	11 (every day / do / the same thing / we)	
	12 (football / don't like / very much / I)	
2.3	Put the words in order.	
	1 (to work / every day / walks / Liz)	Liz walks to work every day.
	2 (at the hotel / I / early / arrived)	Ι
	3 (goes / every year / to Italy / Julia)	Julia
	4 (we / since 1988 / here / have lived)	We
	5 (in London / Sue / in 1960 / was born)	Sue
	6' (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work)	Paul
	7 (to the bank / yesterday afternoon / went /	/ Ann)
	Ann	had)
	8 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast /	nauj
	9 (in October / Barbara / to university / is g	oing)
	Barbara	
	10 (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the	
	11 (many times / have been / my parents / to My	the United States)
	12 (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the	
	13 (to the cinema / tomorrow evening / are y	
	14 (the children / I / took / this morning / to	
	I	

always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

A

always					already	all
usually	sometimes	never	seldom	just	still	both

These words (always/never etc.) are often with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- My brother never speaks to me.
- She's always late.
- Do you often go to restaurants?
- I sometimes eat too much. (or Sometimes I eat too much.)
- I don't want to go to the cinema. I've already seen the film.
- I've got three sisters. They're all married.
- B always/never etc. go before the verb:

verb
go
+ play
feel
etc.

- I always go to work by car. (not 'I go always')
- Ann often plays tennis. (not 'Ann plays often tennis')
- You sometimes look unhappy.
- They usually have dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We rarely (or seldom) watch television.
- Richard is a good footballer. He also plays tennis and volleyba (not 'He plays also tennis')
- I've got three sisters. They all live in London.

but always/never etc. go after am/is/are/was/were:

	17.0
am	
is	always
are	+ often
was	never
were	etc.

- I am never ill. (not 'I never am ill')
- They are usually at home in the evenings.
- It is often very cold here in winter.
- When I was a child, I was always late for school.
- 'Where's Linda?' 'She's still in bed.'
- I've got two brothers. They're both doctors.
- always/never etc. go between two verbs (have ... been / can ... find etc.):

verb 1		verb 2
will		go
can		find
do	always	remember
etc.	often never	etc.
have has	etc.	gone been
		etc.

- I will always remember you.
- It doesn't often rain here.
- Do you usually go to work by car?
- I can never find my keys.
- Have you ever been to Rome?
- A: Where's Linda?
 - B: She's just gone out. (she's = she has)
- A: Where are your friends?
 B: They've all gone to the cinema.

EVERGISES

1 2 3 4 5 6	Do you ever play tennis? Do you get up early? Are you ever late for work? Do you ever get angry? Do you ever go swimming? Are you at home in the evenings?	Yes, often. Yes, always. No, never. Sometimes. Yes, often. Yes, usually.	Paul often plays tennis. He He
\٨/	rite these sentences with the words in t	orackets ()	
22 33 42 55 66 77 88 99 10 11 12 13 14	I finish work at 5 o'clock. (usually Jill has started a new job. (just) J I go to bed before midnight. (rand The bus isn't late. (usually)	ly) Iely)ely)er)	never speaks to me.
1 2	Prite sentences with also . Use the words Do you play football? (tennis) Do you speak Italian? (French) Are you tired? (hungry) Have you been to England? (Ireland) Did you buy any clothes? (some be	Yes, a Yes, a Yes, a nd) Yes,). , and I also play tennis. and I



I live in London. I play football. I'm a student. I've got a car.



I live in London. I play football. I'm a student. I've got a car.

e in London.	Thei	
football	They	
students		
cars		

		n in England.
Ili	ve in New	York.
	$\overline{}$	
800		
====		F = 36
A GE		
They		marrie

still yet already

still



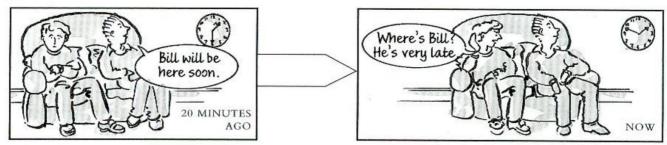
An hour ago it was raining.

It is still raining now.

still = something is the same as before:

- I had a lot to eat but I'm still hungry. (= I was hungry before and I'm hungry now)
- 'Did you sell your car?' 'No, I've still got it.'
- 'Do you still live in Barcelona?'
 'No, I live in Madrid now.'

yet



Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.

They are **still** waiting for Bill. Bill hasn't come yet.

yet = until now:

We use yet in negative sentences (He hasn't come yet.) and in questions (Has he come yet?). **Yet** is usually at the end of a sentence:

- A: Where's Diane?
 - B: She isn't here yet. (= she will be here but until now she hasn't come)
- A: What are you doing this evening?
 - B: I don't know yet. (= I will know later but I don't know at the moment)
- A: Are you ready to go yet?
 - B: **Not yet**. Wait a moment. (= I will be ready but I'm not ready at the moment)
- A: Have you finished with the newspaper **yet**?
 - B: No, I'm still reading it.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- She hasn't gone **yet**. = She's **still** here. (not 'She is yet here')
- I haven't finished eating yet. = I'm still eating.

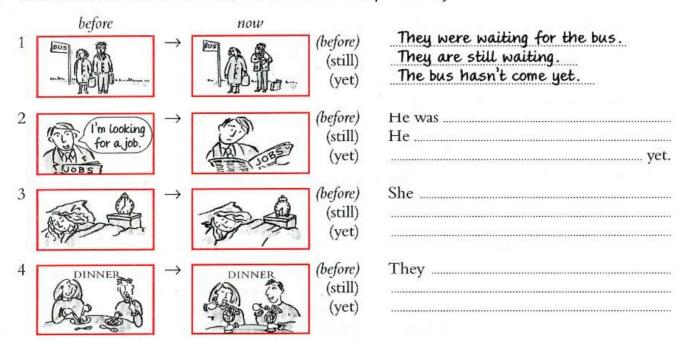
already = earlier than expected:

- 'What time is John arriving?' 'He's already here.' (= earlier than we expected)
- 'I'm going to tell you what happened.' 'That's not necessary. I already know.'
- Ann doesn't want to go to the cinema. She has already seen the film.

94.1 You meet Lisa. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with still.

LISA – TWO YEARS AGO	1 Do you still play the piano?
1 (1 play the piano.) 4 (1've got a motor-bike.	2 Do you
1 (I play the piano.) motor-bike.	3 Are
	4
2 I live in Clare 5 I go to the street.	5
Street. cinema a lot.	6
	100 200
3 (I'm a student.) 6 (I want to be a teach	er.)

94.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.



- 94.3 Write questions with yet.
 - 1 You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now. You ask her: Are you ready yet?
 - 2 You are waiting for Ann to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask somebody: Ann

 - 4 A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. You ask him:
- 94.4 Complete the sentences. Use already.

1	What time is John arriving?
2	Does Ann want to see the film?
3	I must see Julia before she goes.
4	Do you need a pen?
5	Shall I pay the bill?
6	Shall I tell Paul about the meeting?

He's already here.	
No, she has already	seen it.
It's too late. She	
No thanks. I	one.
No, it's OK. I	
No, he	I told him.

Give me that book! Give it to me!

give lend show pass send

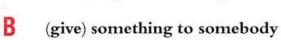
After these verbs (give/lend etc.), there are two possible structures:

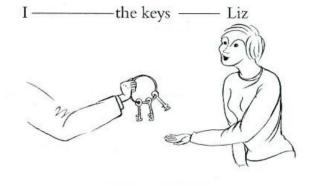
(give) something to somebody:

I gave the keys to Liz.

(give) somebody something:

I gave Liz the keys.





	something	to somebody
That's my book. Give	it	to me.
These are Sue's keys. Can you give	them	to her?
Can you give	these flowers	to your mother?
I lent	my car	to a friend of mine.
Did you send	a postcard	to Kate?
We've seen these photos. You show	ed them	to us.

C (give) somebody something

		somebody	something
-700345	Give	me	that book. It's mine.
Tom	gave	his mother	some flowers.
I	lent	John	some money.
How much money did you	lend	him?	
I	sent	you	a postcard. Did you receive it?
Linda	showed	us	her holiday photos.
Can you	pass	me	the salt, please?

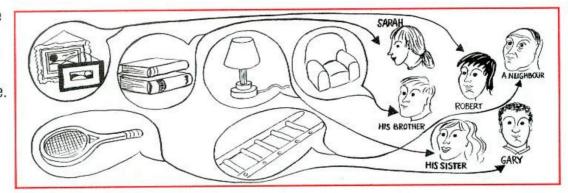
You can also say 'buy/get somebody something':

- I **bought** my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers **for** my mother.)
- Can you **get** me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper **for** me)
- D Compare:
 - I gave the keys to Liz. I gave Liz the keys. (but not 'I gave to Liz the keys.')
 - That's my book. Can you give it to me? Can you give me that book? (but not 'give to me that book')

We prefer the first structure (give something to somebody) when the thing is it or them:

- I gave it to her. (not 'I gave her it')
- Here are the keys. Give **them to your father**. (not 'Give your father them')

Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.



Write sentences	beginning	He	gave		
-----------------	-----------	----	------	--	--

1	What did Mark do with the armchair?	He gave it to his brother.
2	What did he do with the tennis racket?	He gave
3	What happened to the books?	He
4	What about the lamp?	
5	What did he do with the pictures?	
6	And the ladder?	

You wanted to give presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.

1 2 JOANNA JOANNA	RICHARD	DIANE DIANE	RACHEL RACHEL	6 KEVIN
1 I gave Paul a book. 2 I gave		5		

95.3 Write questions beginning Can you give me ...? / Can you pass me ...? etc.

1	(you want the salt)	(pass)	Can you pass me the salt?
2	(you need an umbrella)	(lend)	Can you
3	(you want my address)	(give)	Canyour
4	(you need ten pounds)	(lend)	
5	(you want some information)	(send)	
6	(you want to see the letter)	(show)	
7	(you want some stamps)	(get)	

95.4 Which is right?

- 1 I gave to Liz the keys. I gave Liz the keys. I gave Liz the keys is right
- 2 I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
- 3 Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
- 4 I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
- 5 Can you pass to me the sugar, please?/ Can you pass me the sugar, please?
- 6 This is Ann's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
- 7 I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.

at 8 o'clock on Monday in April

8 o'clock 10.30 at midnight etc.

I start work at 8 o'clock.

The shops close at 5.30.

Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc. 25 April / 6 June etc. on New Year's Day etc.

Goodbye! See you on Friday.

I don't work on Sundays.

The concert is on 22 November.

April/June etc. 1985/1750 etc. in summer/spring etc.

I'm going on holiday in October.

Emma left school in 1993.

The garden is lovely in spring.

We say:

at the weekend at night at Christmas / at Easter at the end of ... at the moment

- Are you going away at the weekend?
- I can't sleep at night.
- Where will you be at Christmas? (but on Christmas Day)
- I'm going on holiday at the end of October.
- Are you busy at the moment?
- C in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening
 - I always feel good in the morning.
 - Do you often go out in the evening?

but

on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night etc.:

- I'm meeting Jill on Monday morning.
- Are you doing anything on Saturday evening?
- D We do not use at/on/in before:

this ... (this morning / this week etc.) last ... (last August / last week etc.)

next ... (next Monday / next week etc.)

every ... (every day / every week etc.)

- Are you going out this evening?
- The garden was lovely last summer.
- I'm going on holiday next Monday. (not 'on next Monday')
- E in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.









- Hurry! The train leaves in five minutes. (= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Goodbye! I'll see you in a few days. (= a few days from now)

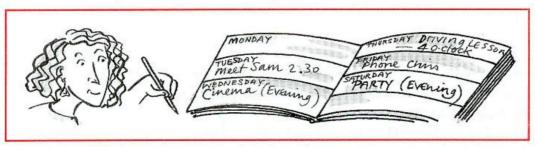
96.1 Write at/on/in.

1	on 6 June	7	24 September	13	Friday morning
	in the evening	8	Thursday	14	Saturday night
3	half past two	9	11.45	15	night
4	Wednesday	10	Christmas Day	16	the end of the day
5	1987	11	Christmas	17	the weekend
6	September	12	the morning	18	winter

96.2 Write at/on/in.

1	Goodbye! See you on Friday.	11	I often go away the weekend.
	Where were you 28 February?	12	I'm starting my new job 3 July.
3	I got up	13	We often go to the beach summer.
4	I like getting up early the morning.	14	George isn't here the moment.
5	My sister got married May.	15	Julia's birthday is January.
6	Diane and I first met 1979.		Do you work Saturdays?
7	Did you go out Tuesday?	17	The company started 1969.
8	Did you go out Tuesday evening?	18	I like to look at the starsnight.
	Do you often go out the evening?	19	I'll send you the money the end
	Let's meet		of the month.

96.3 Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.



1	Lisa is going to the cinema on Wednesday evening.
	She has to phone Chris
3	She isn't doing anything special
4	She's got a driving lesson
	She's going to a party
6	She's meeting Sam

96.4 Write sentences with in

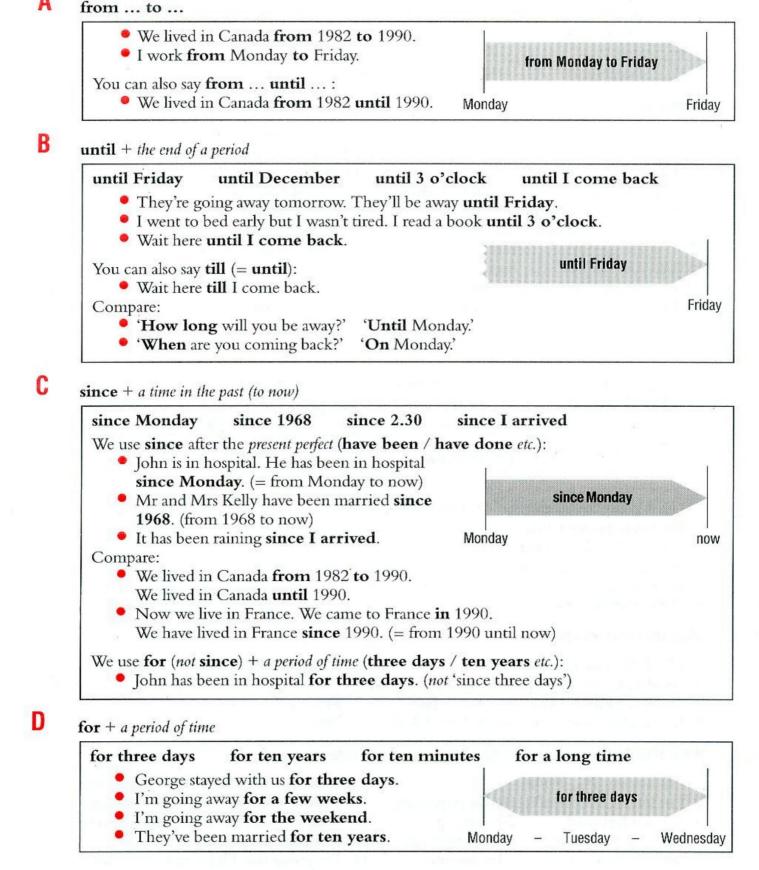
1	It's 17.25 now. The train leaves at 17.30.	The train leaves in five minutes.
2	It's Monday today. I'll phone you on Thursday.	I'll days.
3	Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June.	My
4	It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30.	Tom

96.5 Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.

1	I'm leaving on Friday.	7	What are you doing the weekend?
2	I'm leaving next Friday. (no preposition)	8	I phone Robert every Sunday.
	I always feel tired the evening.	9	Shall we play tennisnext Sunday?
4	Will you be at home this evening?	10	I can't go to the party Sunday.
	We went to France last summer.	11	I'm going out. I'll be back an hour.
6	Laura was born 1975.		I don't often go out night.

A

from ... to until since for



7.1 Read the information about these people and complete the sentences. Use from ... to / until / since.



I live in England now.

- I lived in Canada before.
- I came to England in 1990.



I live in Switzerland now.

- lived in France before.
- I came to Switzerland in 1991.



I work in a restaurant now.

- I worked in a hotel before.
- I started work in the restaurant in 1993.



I'm a salesman now.

- I was a teacher before.
- I started work as a salesman in 1989.

1	(Alex / Canada / 1982 – 1990)	Alex lived in Canada from 1982 to 1990.
2	(Alex / Canada / \rightarrow 1990)	Alex lived in Canada 1990.
3	$(Alex / England / 1990 \rightarrow)$	Alex has lived in England
4	(Alice / France / \rightarrow 1991)	Alice lived in
5	(Alice / Switzerland / 1991 \rightarrow)	Alice has lived in
6	(Carol / a hotel / 1990 –1993)	Carol worked
7	(Carol / a restaurant / 1993 \rightarrow)	Carol has worked
8	(Gerry / a teacher / 1983 – 1989)	Gerry was a
9	(Gerry / a salesman / 1989 →)	Gerry has been

Now write sentences with for.

10	(Alex / Canada)	Alex lived in Canada for eight years.
11	(Alex / England)	Alex has lived in England
12	(Alice / Switzerland)	Alice has
13	(Carol / a hotel)	Carol worked
14	(Carol / restaurant)	Carol
15	(Gerry / a teacher)	Gerry
16	(Gerry / a salesman)	Gerry

97.2 Put in until/since/for.

1	Mr and Mrs Kelly have been married since 1968.
2	I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed 10 o'clock.
3	We waited for Sue half an hour but she didn't come.
4	'Have you just arrived?' 'No, I've been here half past seven.'
5	'How long did you stay at the party last night?' ' midnight.'
6	David and I are good friends. We have known each other ten years.
7	I'm tired. I'm going to lie downa few minutes.
8	Don't open the door of the train the train stops.
9	This is my house. I've lived here I was seven years old.
10	Jack has gone away. He'll be away Wednesday.
11	Next week I'm going to Paristhree days.
12	I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I worksix.
13	'How long have you known Ann?' ' we were at school together.'
14	Where have you been? I've been waiting for you twenty minutes.

before after during while

A



before the film

during



during the film



after

after the film

- Everybody is nervous before exams.
- I went to sleep during the film.
- We were tired after our visit to the museum.

B

before

before we played

while

while we were playing



after we played

- Don't forget to close the window before you go out.
- I often go to sleep while I'm watching television.
- They went home after they did the shopping.

C during, while and for

We use during + noun (during the film). We use while + verb (while I'm watching):

- We didn't speak during the meal.
- We didn't speak while we were eating. (not 'during we were eating') but

Use for (not 'during') + a period of time (three days / two hours / a year etc.):

- We played tennis for two hours. (not 'during two hours')
- I lived in London for a year. (not 'during a year')
- You can use before/after + -ing (before going / after eating etc.):
 - I always have breakfast **before** going to work. (= before I go to work)
 - After doing the shopping, they went home. (= after they did)

Do not say 'before to go', 'after to do' etc.:

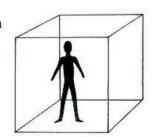
- Before eating the apple, I washed it carefully. (not 'before to eat')
- I started work **after** reading the newspaper. (not 'after to read')

8.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

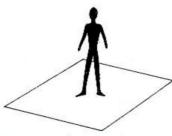
befor after	e during while	+	the concert the course the end	the exam lunch the night	they went to Australia you are waiting
 2 I usu 3 The 4 Ann 5 My 6 A: S B: I 7 Woo 	tally work four film was very be went to evening aunt and uncle Somebody brok No. I was asleepuld you like to s	hours in coring. I g classe lived in e a wind all the it down	We lefts to learn Germ Londondow time.	and another two	o hours lot
Put in c	during/while/for.				
1 We 2 We 3 Ge 4 I st 5 Sal 6 Th 7 I fe 8 Yes 9 I d	e didn't speak	f letters ed very I watch ch TV	the meal. you were o	ne was on holida the lesson. three hou e day.	rs.
Comple	te the sentences.	Use -in	g (doing etc.).		
 2 I fel 3 I'm 4 I fel 5 Afte 6 Befo 	t sick after going to ask yo t awful when I p	u a ques got up t my v	his morning. I f work, I left the o	chocolate. refully before felt better after . office and went	it. it. a shower. home. ea to learn a few words of the
Write se	entences with bet	ore + -ir	ng and after + -in	g.	
2 JohrJohr3 I reaBefo4 WeAfte	n left school. The worked	f my bo	. We were very	kshop for two y nt to sleep. tired.	
5 Let's	s have a cup of o	coffee.	Then we'll go o	ut.	

in on (places 1) at

in



in a room in a shop in a car in the water



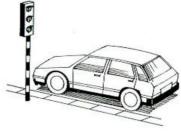
in a garden in a town in the city centre in France

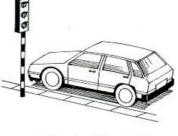
- 'Where's David?' 'In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.'
- What's in that box / in that bag / in that cupboard?
- Angela works in a shop / in a bank / in a factory.
- I had a swim in the river / in the sea.
- Milan is in the north of Italy.
- I live in a town but I want to live in the country.

B at









I'm at my desk.

at the bus stop

at the door

at the traffic lights

at her desk

- There's somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- The car is waiting at the traffic lights.
- Julia is working at her desk.

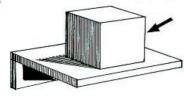
at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of ...):

- Write your name at the top of the page.
- My house is at the end of the street.

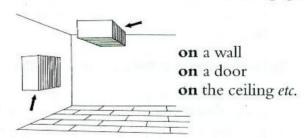
at the bottom (of the page)

at the top (of the page)

on



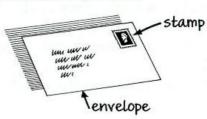
on a shelf on a plate on a balcony on the floor etc.



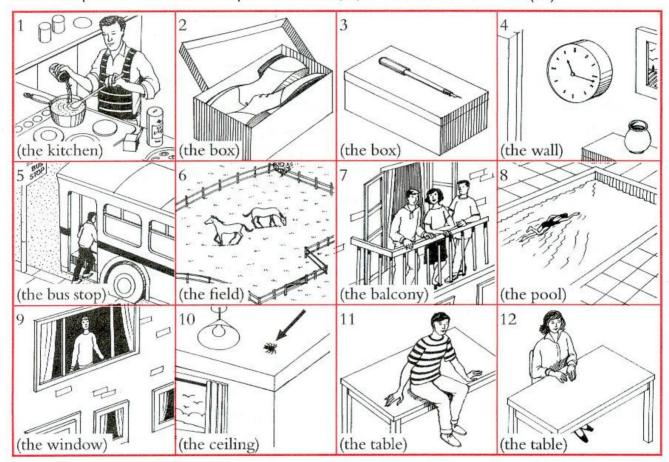
- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- There is a stamp on the envelope.

also on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motor-bike:

• Who is that man on the motor-bike?



99.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on + the words in brackets (...).



1	Where is he? In the kitchen.	7	Where are they standing?
2	Where are the shoes?	8	Where is she swimming?
3	Where is the pen?	9	Where is he standing?
4	Where is the clock?	10	Where is the spider?
5	Where is the bus?	11	Where is he sitting?
6	Where are the horses?		Where is she sitting?

99.2 Put in in/at/on.

1	Don't siton the grass. It's wet.
2	What have you gotyour bag?
3	Look! There's a man the roof. What's he doing?
4	There are a lot of fish this river.
5	Our house is number 45 – the number is the door.
6	'Is the cinema near here?' 'Yes, turn left the traffic lights.'
7	I usually do my shopping the city centre.
8	My sister lives Brussels.
9	There's a small park the top of the hill.
10	I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody the door.
11	Munich is a large city the south of Germany.
12	There are a few shops the end of the street.
13	It's difficult to carry a lot of things a bicycle.
14	I looked at the list of names. My name was the bottom of the list.
15	There is a mirror the wall the living room

in at on (places 2)

in

in bed

in hospital / in prison

in a street

in the sky

in the world

in a newspaper / in a book

in a photograph / in a picture

in a car / in a taxi

in the middle (of ...)

- 'Where's Kate?' 'She's in bed.'
- David's father is ill. He's in hospital.
- I live in a small street near the station.
- I like to look at the stars in the sky at night.
- What's the largest city in the world?
- I read about the accident in the newspaper.
- You look sad in this photograph.
- Did you come here in your car?
- There's a big tree in the middle of the garden.

at

at home

at work / at school

at university / at college

at the station / at the airport

- •Will you be at home this evening?
- 'Where's Kate?' 'She's at work.'
- Helen is studying law at university.
- Do you want me to meet you at the station?
- at Jane's (house) / at my sister's (house) / at the doctor's / at the hairdresser's etc.
 - Where were you yesterday?' 'At my sister's.'
 - I saw Tom at the doctor's.

at a concert / at a party / at a football match etc.

There weren't many people at the party.

Often it is possible to use **in** or **at** for buildings (hotels, restaurants *etc.*):

We stayed at a nice hotel. or We stayed in a nice hotel.





on a bus



on the first floor



on the way from A to B

on a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a ship

•Did you come here on the bus?

on the ground floor / **on** the first floor etc.

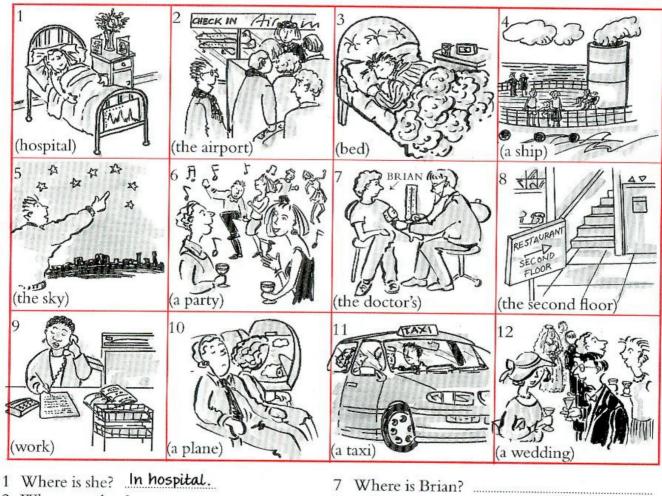
• The office is **on the first floor**. (*not* 'in the first floor')

on the way (to ...) / on the way home

• I met Ann **on the way** to work / **on the way** home.

100.1

Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on + the words in brackets (...).



- 2 Where are they?
- 3 Where is he?
- 4 Where are they?
- Where are the stars?
- 6 Where are they?
- Where is the restaurant?
- 9 Where is she?
- 10 Where are they?
- 11 Where are they?
- 12 Where are they?

00.2 Put in in/at/on.

- 1 Helen is studying law at university.
- 2 There was a big table the middle of the room.
- 3 What is the longest river the world?
- 4 Were there many people the concert last night?
- 5 Will you behome tomorrow afternoon?
- 6 Who is that manthis photograph? Do you know him?
- 7 Where are your children? Are theyschool?
- 8 George is coming by train. I'm going to meet him the station.
- 9 Charlie is hospital. He's going to have an operation tomorrow.
- 10 How many pages are there this book?
- 11 'Are you hungry after your journey?' 'No, I had a meal the train.'
- 12 I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down the way here.
- 13 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he'shis brother's.'
- 14 Don't believe everything you see the newspaper!
- 15 I walked to work but I came home the bus.

to in at (places 3)

A

to in/at (\Rightarrow Units 99–100)

go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...



- We're going to London next week.
- I want to go to Italy.
- We walked from my house to the city centre.
- What time do you go to bed?



- The bus is going to the airport.
- Sally didn't go to work yesterday.
- I went to a party last night.
- You must come to our house.

be/stay/do something (etc.) in ...



- Piccadilly Circus is in London.
- My brother lives in Italy.
- The main shops are in the city centre.
- I like reading in bed.

be/stay/do something (etc.) at ...



- The bus is at the airport.
- Ann wasn't at work yesterday.
- I met her at a party.
- Ann stayed at her brother's house.

B home

go/come/walk (etc.) home (without 'to'):

- I'm tired. I'm going home. (not 'to home')
- Did you walk home?

be/stay/do something (etc.) at home:

- I'm staying at home this evening.
- 'Where's Ann?' 'At home.'

C arrive and get

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy / arrive in Paris etc.):

- They arrived in England last week. (not 'arrived to England')
- arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):

• What time did you arrive at the hotel? (not 'arrive to the hotel')

get to (a place):

- What time did you get to the hotel?
- What time did you get to Paris?

get home / arrive home (no preposition):

• I was tired when I got home. or I was tired when I arrived home.

.1	Write to or in.						
	1 I like reading in bed. 2 We're going Italy next month. 3 Sue is on holiday Italy at the moment. 4 I must go the bank today. 5 I was tired, so I stayed bed late. 6 What time do you usually go bed? 7 Does this bus go the centre? 8 Would you like to live another country?						
.2	Write to or at if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.						
	Paula didn't go work yesterday. I'm tired. I'm going member home. (no preposition) Ann is not very well. She has gone member the doctor. Would you like to come member a party on Saturday? 'Is Liz member home?' 'No, she's gone work.' There were 20,000 people member the football match. Why did you go member home early last night? A boy jumped into the river and swam member the other side. There were a lot of people waiting member the bus stop. We had a good meal member a restaurant and then we went back member the hotel.						
.3	Write to, at or in if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.						
	1 I'm not going out this afternoon. I'm staying Athenome. 2 We're going						
.4	Write to, at or in if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.						
	1 What time do you usually get						
.5	Complete these sentences about yourself. Use to/in/at.						
	1 At three o'clock this morning I wasin bed. 2 Yesterday I went						

under behind opposite etc. (prepositions)

next to (or beside) / between / in front of / behind



A is next to B. or A is beside B.

B is between A and C.

D is in front of B.

E is behind B.

also

A is on the left.

C is on the right.

B is **in the middle** (of the group).

B opposite / in front of



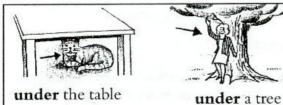
A is sitting in front of B. A is sitting **opposite** C. C is sitting **opposite** A.

C **by** (= next to / beside)



- Our house is **by the sea**. (= beside the sea)
- Who is that man by the window?
- 'Is there a public phone here?' 'Yes, by the door.'

D under



- The cat is under the table.
- The girl is standing under a tree.
- I'm wearing a jacket under my coat.

E above and below



A is above the line.

(= higher than the line)



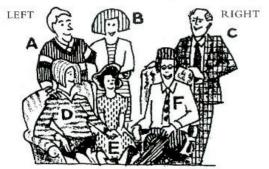
B is below the line. (= lower than the line)



The pictures are above the shelves.

The shelves are below the pictures.

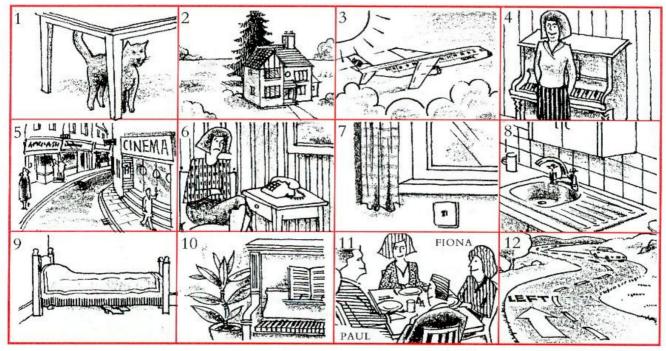
102.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.



A = Alan	B = Barbara	C = Colin
D = Donna	$\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}_{\mathbf{m}mn}$	E = Frank

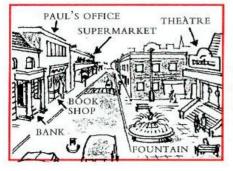
1	Colin is standing behind Frank.
2	Frank is sitting Emma.
3	Emma is sitting Barbara.
4	Emma is sitting
5	Donna is sitting Emma.
6	Frank is sittingColin.
7	Alan is standing Donna.
8	Alan is standingleft.
9	Barbara is standing middle.

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



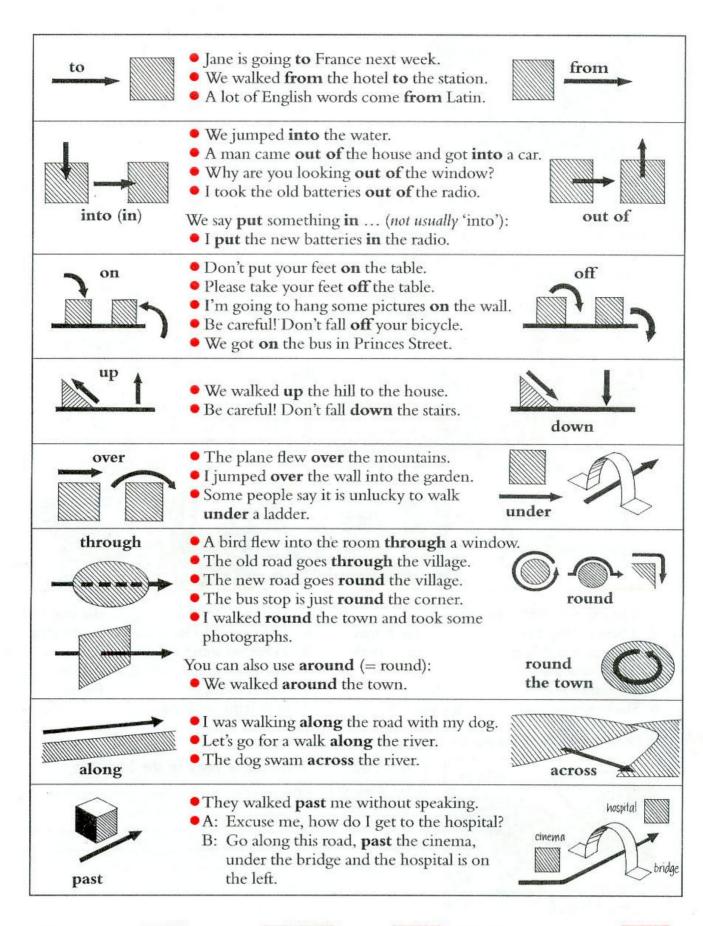
1	The cat is under the table.	7	The switch is the window.
2	There is a big tree the house.	8	The cupboard is the sink.
3	The plane is flying the clouds.	9	There are some shoes the bed.
	She is standing the piano.	10	The plant is the piano.
5	The cinema is the right.	11	Paul is sitting Fiona.
6	She's sitting the phone.	12	In Britain we drive the left.

Write sentences about the picture. Use the words in brackets (...).



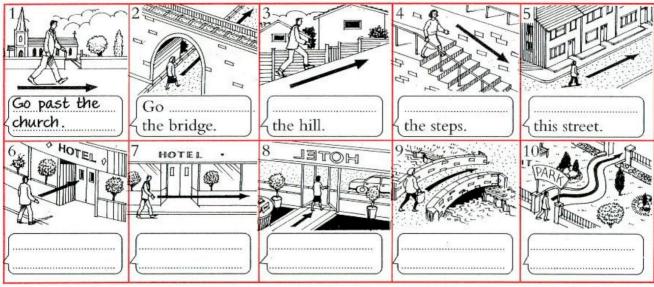
1	(next to)	The bank is next to the bookshop.
2	(in front of)	The
3.	(opposite)	
4	(next to)-	
5	(above)	
6	(between)	

through etc. (prepositions) up over

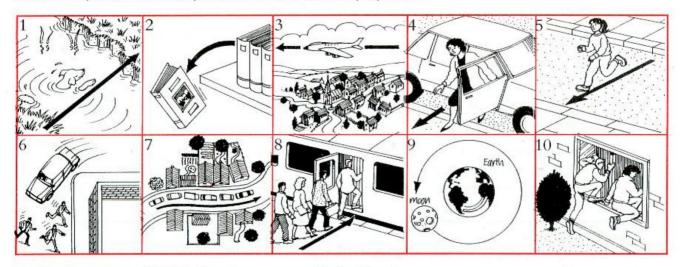


Somebody asks you the way to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning **Go**





103.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition.



- 1 The dog swam across the river.
- 2 A book fell the shelf.
- 3 A plane flew the village.
- 4 A woman got the car.
- 5 A girl ran the road.
- 6 Suddenly a car came the corner.
- 7 They drove the village.
- 8 They got the train.
- 9 The Moon travels the Earth.
- 10 They got the house a window.

103.3 Put in a preposition (over/from/into etc.).

- 1 I looked the window and watched the people in the street.
- 2 My house is very near here. It's just the corner.
- 3 Do you know how to put a film this camera?
- 4 How far is it here the airport?
- 5 We walked the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
- 6 You can put your coat the back of the chair.
- 7 In tennis, you have to hit the ball the net.
- 8 Silvia took a key her bag and opened the door.

with about at by (prepositions)

on holiday

on television

on the radio

on the phone

on fire

on time (= not late)

- Jane isn't at work this week. She's on holiday.
- We watched the news on television.
- We listened to the news on the radio.
- I spoke to Carol on the phone last night.
- The house is on fire! Call the fire brigade.
- 'Was the train late?' 'No, it was on time.'

B

at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometres an hour / at 100 degrees etc.:

- Lisa got married at 21. (or ... at the age of 21.)
- The car was travelling at 50 kilometres an hour when the accident happened.
- Water boils at 100 degrees celsius.

C

by car / by bus / by plane (or by air) / by bike etc.:

- Do you like travelling by train?
- Jane usually goes to work by bike.

but on foot:

She goes to work on foot. (= she walks)

a book by ... / a painting by ... / a piece of music by ... etc.:

• Have you read any books by Charles Dickens?

• Who is that painting by? Picasso?

by after the passive (\Rightarrow Unit 21):

I was bitten by a dog.





on foot





D

with/without:

- Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
- Wait for me. Please don't go without me.
- Do you like your coffee with or without milk?
- I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.

a man with a beard / a woman with glasses etc.:

- Do you know that man with the beard?
- I'd like to have a house with a big garden.



a man with

a beard



a woman with glasses

E

talk/speak/think/hear/know about ...:

- Some people talk about their work all the time.
- I don't know much about cars.

a book / a question / a programme (etc.) about ...:

Did you see the programme about computers on TV last night?

104.1 Complete the sentences. Use on + one of these:

h	oliday	the phone	the radio	television	time	
1	We liste	ned to the nev	vs on the radio.			
2	Please d	on't be late. T	ry to be here		***************************************	
			veek. I'm going			
4	'Did you	ı see Linda?'	'No, but I talked to	her		,
			this			

104.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (at/by etc.).



- 1 I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
- 2 She usually goes to work car.
- 3 Who is the womanshort hair?
- 4 They are talking the weather.
- 5 The car is fire.

- 6 She's listening to some music Mozart.
- 7 The plane is flying 600 miles an hour.
- 8 They're holiday.
- 9 Do you know the mansunglasses?

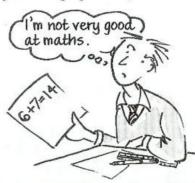
04.3 Complete the sentences with a preposition (at/by/with etc.).

- 1 In tennis, you hit the ball a racket.
- 2 It's cold today. Don't go out a coat.
- 3 Hamlet, Othello and Macbeth are plays William Shakespeare.
- 4 Do you know anythingcomputers?
- 5 My grandmother died the age of 98.
- 6 How long does it take from New York to Los Angelesplane?
- 7 I didn't go to the football match, but I watched it television.
- 8 My house is the one the red door on the right.
- 9 These trains are very fast. They can travelvery high speeds.
- 10 I don't use my car very often. I prefer to go bike.
- 11 Can you give me some information hotels in this town?
- 12 I was arrested two policemen and taken to the police station.
- 13 The buses here are very good. They're nearly always time.
- 14 What would you like to drink your meal?
- 15 We travelled from Paris to Moscow train.
- 16 One of the most famous paintings in the world is the Mona Lisa Leonardo da Vinci.

afraid of ... good at ... etc. preposition + -ing (good at -ing etc.)

afraid of ... / good at ... etc. (adjective + preposition)







afraid of ...

angry with somebody angry about something

different from ...

fed up with ...

full of ...

good at ... / bad at ...

interested in ...

married to ...

nice/kind of somebody to ... (be) nice/kind to (somebody)

sorry about (something) **sorry for** (doing something) Are you afraid of dogs?

- Why are you **angry with** me? What have I done?
- Are you angry about last night? (= something that happened last night)
- Ann is very different from her sister.
- I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
- The room was full of people.
- Are you good at maths?
- Tina is very bad at writing letters.
- I'm not interested in sport.
- Sue is married to a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
- It was **kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much.
- David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me.
- I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm sorry about that.
- I'm **sorry for** not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)

preposition + -ing

After a preposition (at/with/for etc.), a verb ends in -ing:

I'm not very good at telling

stories.

Are you fed up with doing I'm sorry **for** not phon**ing** you yesterday.

the same thing every day?

Mark is thinking of buying

a new car.

Tom left without saving

goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)

After doing

the shopping, they went home.

5.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (of/in etc.).



- 1 He's afraid of dogs.
- 2 She's interested science.
- 3 She's married a footballer.
- 4 She's very goodlanguages.
- 5 He's fed up the weather.
- 6 'Can I help you?' 'Oh, that's very kindyou.'

Put in the right preposition (of/in/with etc.).

- 1 I'm not interested in sport.
- 2 I'm not very goodsport.
- 3 I like Sarah. She's always very kind me.
- 4 I'm sorry your broken window. It was an accident.
- 5 He's very brave. He isn't afraid anything.
- 6 It was very nice Julia to let us stay in her flat.
- 7 Life today is very different life 50 years ago.
- 8 Are you interested politics?
- 9 Some people are afraidspiders.
- 10 Chris was angry what happened.
- 11 These boxes are very heavy. They are full books.
- 12 I'm sorry getting angry you yesterday.

05.3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm not very good at telling stories. (good / tell)
- 3 Sue isn't very up in the morning. (good / get)
- 5 I'm _____ you up in the middle of the night. (sorry / wake)

105.4 Complete the sentences. Use without -ing.

- 1 (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye)
- 2 (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak)
- 3 (Don't do anything / ask me first)
- 4 (I went out / I didn't lock the door)

Tom left without saying goodbye.

I

Write sentences about yourself. Use the words in brackets (...).

- 1 (interested)
 2 (afraid)
 I'm interested in sport.
 I'm
- 3 (not very good)
- 4 (not interested)
- 5 (fed up)

listen to ... look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)

A

ask (somebody) for ...

belong to ...

happen to ...

listen to ...

speak/talk to somebody about
something

thank somebody for ...

think about ... or think of ...

wait for ...

write to somebody
but (tele)phone somebody (no
 preposition)

- A man stopped me and asked me for money.
- Does this book **belong to** you? (= Is this your book?)
- I can't find my pen. What's happened to it?
- Listen to this music. It's beautiful.
- Did you talk to Paul about the problem?
- (on the phone) Can I speak to Chris, please?
- Thank you very much for your help.
- He never thinks about (or of) other people.
- Mark is thinking of (or about) buying a new car.
- Don't go yet. Wait for me.
- I never get letters. Nobody writes to me.
- I must phone my parents. (not 'phone to my parents')

B look at / look for / look after

look at ...



- She's looking at her watch.
- Look at these flowers! They're beautiful.
- Why are you looking at me like that?

look for ...

(= try to find)



• He's lost his key. He's looking for it.

I'm looking for Sarah. Have you seen her?

look after ...

(= take care of, keep safe)

- When Barbara is at work, a friend of hers looks after her children.
- Don't lose this book. Look after it. (= Keep it safe.)

C depend

We say depend on ...:

- A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
 - B: Sometimes. It depends on the restaurant. (not 'it depends of')

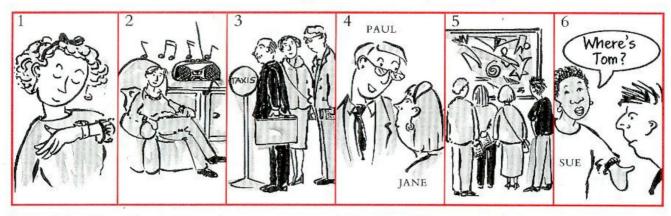
You can say it depends what/where/how (etc.) with or without on:

- A: Do you want to come out with us?
 - B: It depends where you're going. or It depends on where ...

For word order (It depends where you're going.), see Unit 48.

106

106.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for etc.).



- 1 She's looking at her watch.
- 2 He's listening the radio.
- 3 They're waiting a taxi.
- 4 Paul is talking Jane.
- 5 They're looking a picture.
- 6 Sue is looking Tom.
- 06.2 Complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for/about etc.) if necessary.
 - 1 Thank you very much for your help.
 - 2 This is not my umbrella. It belongs a friend of mine.
 - 3 (on the phone) Can I speak Mr Davis, please?
 - 4 (on the phone) Thank you phoning. Goodbye.
 - 5 What happened Mary last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
 - 6 We're thinking going to Australia next year.
 - 7 We asked the waitercoffee but he brought us tea.
 - 8 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends the book.'
 - 9 John was talking but nobody was listening what he was saying.
 - 10 We waited Karen until 2 o'clock but she didn't come.
 - 11 'Are you writing a letter?' 'Yes, I'm writing Diane.'
 - 12 Don't forget to phoneyour mother this evening.
 - 13 He's alone all day. He never talks anybody.
 - 14 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?' 'It depends the type of room.'
 - 15 Catherine is thinking changing her job.
- 06.3 Complete these sentences. Use at/for/after.
 - 1 I looked the newspaper but I didn't read it carefully.
 - 2 When you are ill, you need somebody to lookyou.
 - 3 Excuse me, I'm looking Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
 - 4 Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look yourself.
 - 5 I'm going to take a photograph of you. Please look the camera and smile.
 - 6 Barry is looking a job. He wants to work in a hotel.
- **06.4** Answer these questions with **It depends**

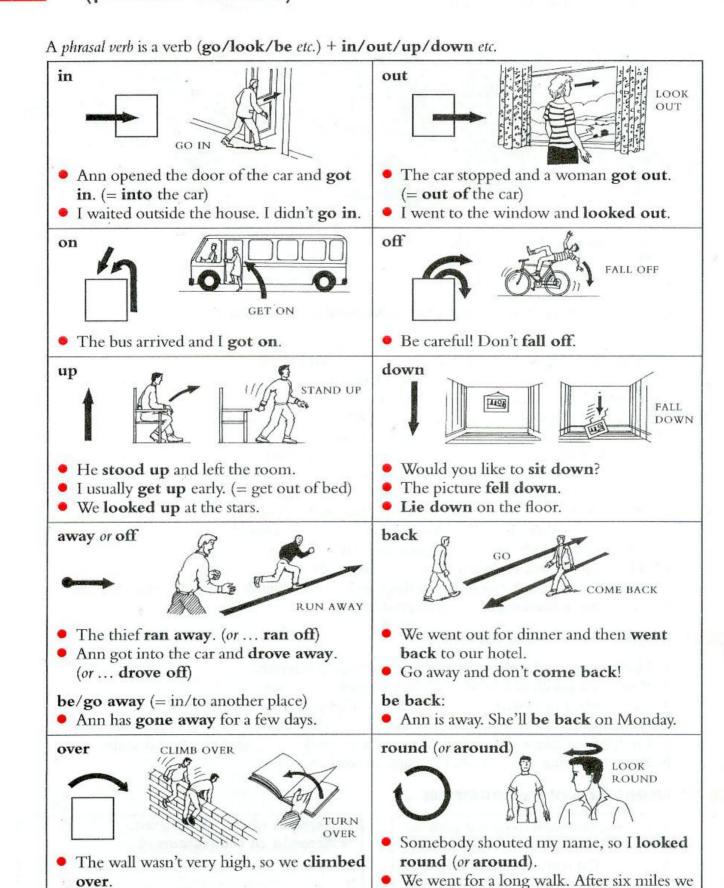
6

Do you want to go out with us?
Do you like eating in restaurants?
Do you enjoy watching TV?
Can you do something for me?
Are you going away this weekend?

Are you going away this weekend? Can you lend me some money?

It depend	ds where you're going.
	ds on the restaurant.
It depends	S
It	

go in fall off run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)



Turn over and look at the next page.

turned round (or around) and went back.

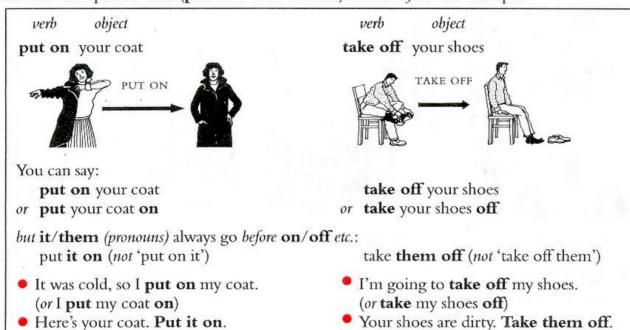
07.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the verbs in the list + in/out/up etc.

got	tne pictur got	es and comp looked	lete the sentenc looked	es. Use the rode	sat	turned	went	
5 (1)			Bus Stop	3 - 7 - 7 - 7 - 7 - 7 - 7 - 7 - 7 - 7 -			4 8 8	
2 The 3 He	e door wa heard a pl	s open, so v lane, so he	d looked out	6 7	The bu There v	s stopped an was a free sea	nd she at, so she	
1 'W 2 Ple 3 Sh 4 I'n 5 I'n 6 W 7 Jin 8 We 9 I w 10 An	hat happease don't e heard a going n feeling when you had is from the haven't go as very time is going	ened to the go	picture on the picture on the! Stay he d her, so she le now to do son m going to lie is page, turn lives in Londo the house, so tring. I couldn't next month.	wall?' 're with mooked	e. on t and rea t he wan et		side. 	to Canada. coming
	II these ph	give s	(wake up etc.) a low take peak wake	re in Apper	idix 6.	p/down/o		
2 'It's 3 Th 4 I li 5 Hc 6 It's 7 Th 8 Wl 9 I to	s time to go to train	but I'm always are exam? I to hear you. to very good stry to wall o stop but he	lock and woken work and work and work will you Can you	and the planen the planen	a mi	nute. I'm no opped. a man	ot ready ye? little? y times	et.'

put on your shoes (phrasal verbs 2)

put your shoes on

Sometimes a phrasal verb (put on / take off etc.) has an object. For example:

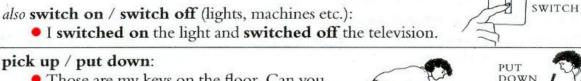


B Some more phrasal verbs + *object*:

turn on / turn off (lights, machines, taps etc.):

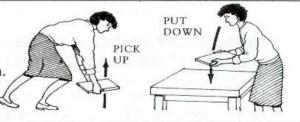
- It was dark, so I turned on the light. (or I turned the light on)
- I don't want to watch this programme. You can turn it off.

also switch on / switch off (lights, machines etc.):



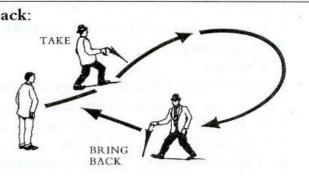
 Those are my keys on the floor. Can you pick them up for me?

 I stopped reading and put my book down. (or put down my book)

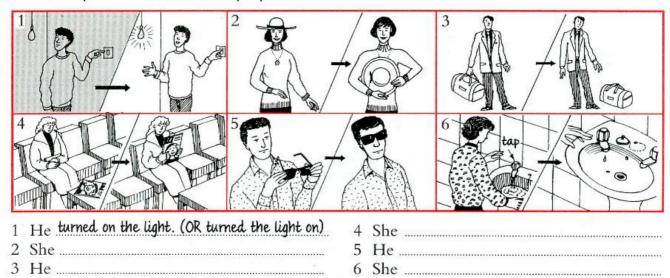


bring back / take back / give back / put back:

- You can take my umbrella but please bring it back.
- I took my new sweater back to the shop. It was too small for me.
- I've got Diane's keys. I must give them back to her.
- I read the letter and then put it back in the envelope.



108.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?



108.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

1	I turned on the radio.	I turned the radio on.	I turned it on.
2	He put on his jacket.	He	He
3	She	She took her glasses off.	
4	Put down your pens.		Serve Davier Color Color Color Factor Color Colo
5	They gave back the money.		
6	, ,	I turned the lights off.	

108.3 Complete the sentences. Use one of the verbs in the list + it/them.

bring pick switch take turn (+ on/off/up/back)

- 1 I wanted to watch something on television, so I turned it on .
- 2 I bought a lamp but it doesn't work. I'm going to to the shop.

- 108.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes. All these verbs are in Appendix 7.

your cigarette a pair of shoes	a glass ten houses	or	me / it / them	in out	up down	on over	away round
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------	----	----------------	-----------	-----------------------	------------	---------------

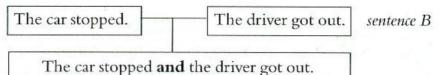
- 1 They knocked ten houses down (OR down ten houses) when they built the new road.
- 2 That music is very loud. Can you turn it down?
- 3 I knocked and broke it.
- 4 If you want to know what a word means, you can look in a dictionary.
- 6 Somebody gave me a form and told me to fill
- 7 I tried _____ in the shop but I didn't buy them.

and but or so because

and but because or SO

We use these words (conjunctions) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A



В and/but/or

sentence A		sentence B	
We stayed at home	and	(we)★ watched television.	
My sister is married	and	(she)* lives in London.	
He doesn't like her	and	she doesn't like him.	
I bought a newspaper	but	I didn't read it.	
It's a nice house	but	it hasn't got a garden.	
Do you want to go out	or	are you too tired?	

* It is not necessary to repeat 'we' and 'she'.

Study these sentences. We use **and** between the last two things:

• I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair and fell asleep.

Ann is at work, Sue has gone shopping and Chris is playing football.

so (the result of something)

sentence A		sentence B
It was very hot,	so	I opened the window.
The water wasn't clean,	so	we didn't go swimming.
They like films,	so	they often go to the cinema.

D because (the reason for something)

sentence A		sentence B
I opened the window	because	it was very hot.
We didn't go swimming	because	the water wasn't clean.
Lisa is hungry	because	she didn't have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning:

- Because the water wasn't clean, we didn't go swimming.
- E In these examples there is more than one conjunction:
 - It was late and I was tired, so I went to bed.
 - I always enjoy visiting London, but I wouldn't like to live there because it's too big.

Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use and/but/or.

I stayed at home.

I bought a newspaper.

I went to the window.

I wanted to phone you.

I jumped into the river.

I usually drive to work.

Do you want me to come with you?

I didn't have your number. Shall I wait here?

I didn't read it.

I went by bus this morning. I watched television.

I swam to the other side.

I looked out.

1 I stayed	at home and watched television.
2 I bought	a newspaper but I didn't read it.
3 I	
4	
5	
7	
Look at the pi	ctures and complete the sentences. Use and/but/so/because.
	Musseum 4 No, thank you.
5 ANN	Sorry I'm late. SUE
1 It was ver	y hot, so he opened the window.
	n't play tennis
	nt to the museum
5 Ann was	t hungry,ate
	ate
Write sentend	es about what you did yesterday. Use and/but etc.
1 (and)	In the evening I stayed at home and studied.
2 (because)	I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3 (but)	
4 (and)	
5 (so)	

When ...

A When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

part A
when I went out

part B
it was raining

You can begin with part A or part B:

When I went out, it was raining.
 It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if part A (When ...) is before part B:

- When you're tired, don't drive.
 Don't drive when you're tired.
- Ann was very happy **when** she passed her exam. **When** Ann passed her exam, she was very happy.

We do the same in sentences with before/while/after:

- Always look both ways before you cross the road.
 Before you cross the road, always look both ways.
- While I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain. It began to rain while I was waiting for the bus.
- He never played football again after he broke his leg.
 After he broke his leg, he never played football again.

B When I am ... / When I go ... etc.

Next week Jill is going to New York. She has a friend, Barbara, who lives in New York but Barbara is also going away – to Mexico. So they won't meet in New York.

Barbara will be in Mexico when Jill is in New York.

The time is *future* (**next week**) but we say: ... **when** Jill **is** in New York. (*not* 'when Jill will be')

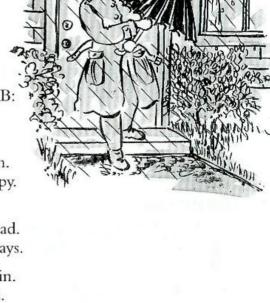


We use the present (I am / I go etc.) with a future meaning after when:

- When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
 (not 'When I will get home')
- I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when I have more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**:

- Please close the window **before** you **go** out. (not 'before you will go')
- Julia is going to live in our flat while we are away. (not 'while we will be')
- I'll stay here **until** you **come** back. (not 'until you will come back')



110.1 Make sentences beginning with when. Choose from the boxes.

When +	I went out I'm tired I phoned her I go on holiday the programme ended I arrived at the hotel	+	I switched off the I always go to the there were no ro- it was raining there was no answ I like to watch T	e same place oms wer	
2	went out, it was raining				
before th	ly broke into the house ey crossed the road at to live in New Zealand		e they came here they were away	when they hea they didn't bel	
2 They w 3 After th 4 The lett 5 Where 6 6 While the	oked both ways before the ere very surprised ey got married, er arrived did they live hey were asleep, told them the news,				?
1 <u>Istay</u> / J 2 I'm goin 3 We mus 4 Julia is g 5 Don't go 6 <u>We com</u> 7 When <u>I</u> 8 I'm goin	ht? Choose the correct form. I'll stay here until you come ng to bed when I finish / I' t do something before it's / going away soon. I'm / I'll to o out yet. Wait until the rai ne / We'll come and visit you come / I'll come to see you ng to Paris next week. I hop orget to give me your addre	Il finish it will be very n stops bu when u tomo pe to see	my work. be too late. sad when she leave / will stop. n we're / we'll be in rrow, I bring / I'll le e some friends of n	n England again. oring the photog nine while I'm /	graphs. I'll be there.
	vn ideas to complete these ser				
1 Can you 2 What ar 3 When I 4 I'll wait	re you going to do when have more time, for you while	you go	out ?		?
	start my new job,				

UNIT 111

If we go ... If you see ... etc.

A



If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If ..., ... (if at the beginning)

If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.

If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.

If you're hungry, have something to eat.

If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

... if ... (if in the middle)

It will be cheaper if we go by bus.

You'll miss the train if you don't hurry.

I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.

Do you mind **if** I use your phone? (= Is it OK if I use it?)

In conversation, we often use the if-part of the sentence alone:

• 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can get a ticket.'

B If you see Ann tomorrow ... etc.

After if, we use the present (not 'will'). We say: if you see ... (not 'if you will see'):

- If you see Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to phone me?
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (not 'if I will be')
- What shall we do if it rains? (not 'if it will rain')
- If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.

C if and when

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure:

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Perhaps. If I go out, I'll close the window.

When I go out = I'm going out (for sure):

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I'll close the window.
- When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower.
- If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (not 'When I'm late')
- We're going to play tennis if it doesn't rain. (not 'when it doesn't rain')



111

11.1 Make sentences beginning with if. Choose from the boxes.

you don't hurry
you pass the exam
you fail the exam
you don't want this magazine
you want those pictures
you're busy now
you're hungry
you need money

we can have lunch now you can have them I can lend you some you'll get a certificate you'll be late I'll throw it away we can talk later you can do it again

1	It you don't hurry, you'll be late.
2	If you pass
3	If
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
W	hich is right?
1	If I'm / I'll be late this evening, don't wait for me. I'm is right
2	The state of the s
3	
4	If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I phone / I'll phone you in the evening.
5	I'm / I'll be surprised if Martin and Julia get / will get married.
6	Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?
U	se your own ideas to complete these sentences.
1	I'm going to the concert if can get a ticket.
2	If you don't hurry you'll miss the train.
	I don't want to go swimming if
4	If you go to bed early tonight,
5	Turn the television off if
6	Tina won't pass her exams if
7	If I have time tomorrow,
Q	We can go to the beach tomorrow if
O	we can go to the beach tomorrow if
Pı	ut in if or when.
1	If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.
2	I'm going to do some shopping now I come back, we can have lunch.
	I'm thinking of going to see Tim. I go, will you come with me?
	Do you mind I close the window?
	John is still at schoolhe leaves school, he wants to go to university.
7	Shall we have a picnic tomorrowthe weather is good?
Q	We're going to Madrid next week. We haven't got anywhere to stay – we hope to find a hote
8	
	we arrive. I don't know what we'll do we don't find anywhere.

If I had ... If we went ... etc.

Dan likes fast cars but he doesn't have one. He doesn't have enough money.

If he had the money, he would buy a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is not past. If he had the money = if he had the money now (but he doesn't have it).



IF	I · you	had/knew/lived/went (etc.), didn't have/know/go (etc.),	I you	would(n't)	buy be
II	it they <i>etc</i> .	was/were, could,	it they etc.	could(n't)	have go etc.

You can say:

• If he had the money, he would buy a car. (If ... at the beginning) He would buy a car **if he had** the money. (... **if** ... in the middle)

I'd / she'd / they'd etc. = I would / she would / they would etc.:

- I don't know the answer. If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.
- It's raining, so we're not going out. We'd get wet if we went out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She wouldn't be happy if she lived in the country.
- If you didn't have a job, what would you do? (but you have a job)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. I'd help you if I could. (but I can't)
- If we had a car, we could travel more. (but we haven't got a car, so we can't travel much)
- В If (I) was/were ...

You can say: if (I/he/she/it) was or were ...:

- It's cold. If I were you, I'd put your coat on. (or If I was you ...)
- It's not a very nice place. I wouldn't go there if I was you. (or ... if I were you)
- It would be nice if the weather were (or was) better.



C Compare:

if I have / if it is etc.

- I must go and see Ann. If I have time, I will go today. (= perhaps I'll have time, so perhaps I'll go)
- I like that jacket. I'll buy it if it isn't too expensive. (= perhaps it will not be too expensive)
- I'll help you if I can. (= perhaps I can help)

if I had / if it was etc.

- I must go and see Ann. If I had time, I would go today. (= I don't have time today so I will not go)
- I like that jacket but it's very expensive. I'd buy it if it wasn't so expensive. (= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)
- I'd help you if I could but I can't.

2.1 Complete the sentence	es
---------------------------	----

Complete the contenies.		
1 I don't know the answer. If I knew	the answer, I'd tell you.	
2 I have a car. I couldn't travel very mu		
3 I don't want to go out. If I		
4 We haven't got a key. If we		
5 I'm not hungry. I would have someth		
6 Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't d		
7 You can't drive. If you	drive, I would	l lend you my car.
8 He speaks too fast. I could understan		
9 I have a lot to do today. If I	so much	to do, we could go out.
Put the verb in the correct form.		
1 If he had the money, he would bu	y a fast car (he/have)	
2 Jane likes living in a city. She would	n't be happy if she lived in	the country (she/not/be)
3 If I wanted to learn Italian,		
4 I haven't told Ann what happened. S		
5 If		
6 What would you do if		
7 It's not a very good hotel.		
8 Ifne:		
9 It's a pity you have to go now		[2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2]
10 I'm not going to take the job. I'd tak		
11 I don't know anything about cars. If		
what to do. (I/not/know)		
12 If you could change one thing in the	world what	? (you/change)
12 If you could change one amig in the	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	(car essuage)
Complete the sentences. Choose from the bo	ox and put the verb in the corr	ect form.
we (have) a bigger house	I (watch) it	it (be) a bit cheaper
7 30	1 4 1	, ,
we (buy) a bigger house we (have) some pictures on the wall	the air (be) cleaner	I (be) boled
we (have) some pictures on the wan	the air (be) cleaner	
1 I'd buy that jacket if it was a bit cl	neaper.	
2 If there was a good film on TV tonigl	nt,	
3 This room would be nicer if	*	
4 If there wasn't so much traffic,		
5 Life would be boring if		
6 If I had nothing to do,		
7 We could invite all our friends to stay	if	
8 If we had more money,		
Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas		
1 I'd go to the dentist if I had a toot		
2 If I could go anywhere in the world,		
3 I wouldn't be very happy if		
4 I'd buy a house if		

5 If I saw an accident in the street,
6 The world would be a better place if

a person who ... a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)



I met a woman. **She** can speak six languages. ----- 2 sentences ------

she $\xrightarrow{1}$ who

-- 1 sentence -----

I met a woman who can speak six languages.



Jim was wearing a hat. It was too big for him. ---- 2 sentences ---

it \rightarrow that or which

----- 1 sentence -----

Jim was wearing a hat that was too big for him.

Jim was wearing a hat which was too big for him.

B **who** is for people (not things):

> A thief is a person Do you know anybody The man The people

who steals things. who can play the piano? who phoned who work in the office

didn't give his name. are very friendly.

C that is for things or people:

> An aeroplane is a machine Emma lives in a house The people

that flies.

that is 500 years old. that work in the office

are very friendly.

You can use that for people, but who is more usual.

D **which** is for things (*not* people):

> An aeroplane is a machine Emma lives in a house

which flies. (not 'a machine who ...') which is 500 years old.

Do not use **which** for people:

• Do you remember the woman who was playing the piano at the party? (not 'the woman which ...')

	a thief a dentist	doesn't tell the tr		is ill in hospital	
	a butcher a fool	looks after your t		steals things	
	a musician a genius	is very intelligen		is very stupid	
	a patient a liar	plays a musical in	strument	sells meat	
	A Hair Cir. a namena color	charle Hairas			
1	A thief is a person who				
3	A butcher is a person A musician				
1	A musician				
5	*		***************************************		
6			•••••		
7					
8					
	*				
M	lake one sentence from two.				
1	(A man phoned. He didn't The man who phoned di	give his name.)			
2			ellow dress		
4	The woman				llow di
3	(Some students took the ex				
	그런 경영화 : 2010년 124 전 - 전화 사람들은 124 전 12 대한 시간 12	[2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2]	Sec. 2011 (1971)	3 3 4 3	
	Most of the students				
4					
4				7	
	(A policeman stopped our o			- 4	
Pı	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie		- 1	
Pı	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.)		
Pt 1 2	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.)		
Pt 1 2 3	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.) s next doors		
Pt 1 2 3	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.) s next doors hrough the n the wall?		
Pt 1 2 3 4 4	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.) s next doors hrough the n the wall? y a car? t to answer.	town?	
Pt 1 2 3 4 5 5	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.) s next doors hrough the n the wall? y a car? t to answer. ing cars.	town?	
Pt 1 2 3 4 5 5	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.) s next doors hrough the hathe wall? y a car? t to answer. ing cars. enjoyed it	town?	
Pt 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.) s next doors hrough the hathe wall? y a car? t to answer. ing cars. enjoyed it	town?	
Pt 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.) s next doors hrough the hathe wall? y a car? t to answer. ing cars. enjoyed it	town?	
Pt 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.) s next doors hrough the n the wall? y a car? t to answer. ing cars. enjoyed it e too small	town?	
Pt 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.) s next doors hrough the n the wall? y a car? t to answer. ing cars. enjoyed it	town? very much. for him?	
Pt 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 Ri 1	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.) s next doors hrough the n the wall? y a car? t to answer. ing cars. enjoyed it e too small	town? very much. for him?	
Pt 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 Ri 1 2	(A policeman stopped our of The	car. He wasn't very frie	endly.) s next doors hrough the n the wall? y a car? t to answer. ing cars. enjoyed it e too small	town? very much. for him?	

6 I know somebody that can help you.
7 I know somebody who works in that shop.
8 Correct the sentences who are wrong.

the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

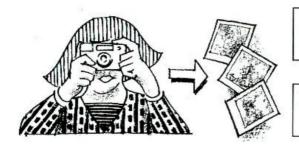
A



The man is carrying a bag. It's very heavy.

2 sentences

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy.



Ann took some photographs. Have you seen them?

2 sentences

Have you seen the photographs (that) Ann took?

You can say:

- The bag that he is carrying ... or The bag he is carrying ... (with or without that)
- ... the photographs that Ann took? or ... the photographs Ann took?

You do not need that/who/which when it is the object:

subject	verb	object	
The man	was carrying	a bag	→ the bag (that) the man was carrying
Ann	took	some photographs	→ the photographs (that) Ann took
You	wanted	the book	→ the book (that) you wanted
We	met	some people	→ the people (who) we met

- Did you find the book you wanted? (or ... the book that you wanted?)
- The people we met were very nice. (or The people who we met ...)
- Everything I said was true. (or Everything that I said ...)

Note that we say:

- The film we saw was very good. (not 'The film we saw it was ...')
- B Sometimes there is a preposition (to/in/at etc.) after the verb:

Jill is talking to a man. → Do you know the man Jill is talking to?

We stayed at a hotel. \rightarrow The hotel we stayed at was near the station.

I told you about some books.

These are the books I told you about.

Note that we say:

... the books I told you about (not 'the books I told you about them')

You can say: (a place) where ...:

- The hotel where we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at ...)
- You must use who/that/which when it is the subject (⇒ Unit 113):
 - I met a woman who can speak six languages. (who is the subject)
 - Jim was wearing a hat that was too big for him. (that is the subject)

4.1

Make one sentence from two.	
1 (Ann took some photographs. Have you seen them?) Have you seen the photographs Ann took?	
2 (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.) I've lost the	2
3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.) I like the	
4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?) Where are the	
5 (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)	
6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?) How	
Make one sentence from two.	
1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.) The bag I was carrying was very heavy.	
2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.) The	
3 (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.) The shoes	
4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come. The)
Complete the sentences. Use the information in the box.	
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel I looked at a map Linda is dancing with a man	you were looking for some keys you spoke to some people
I looked at a map they live in a house I was sitting on a chair we were waiting for a bus	
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel What's the name of the hotel you stayed at? Who are the people they live in a house we were waiting for a bus Linda is dancing with a man.	you spoke to some people
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ? Who are the people Did you find the	you spoke to some people
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ? Who are the people Did you find the The	you spoke to some people ??
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ? Who are the people Did you find the The The	you spoke to some people ?
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ? Who are the people Did you find the The I fell off	you spoke to some people ?
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ? Who are the people Did you find the The The	you spoke to some people ?
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ? Who are the people Did you find the The I fell off I looked at a map I they live in a house we were waiting for a bus Linda is dancing with a man The I fell off	you spoke to some people ?
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ? Who are the people Did you find the The I fell off Who is Read the situations and complete the questions. Use where	you spoke to some people ?
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ? Who are the people Did you find the The I fell off Who is Read the situations and complete the questions. Use where	you spoke to some people ?
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ? Who are the people Did you find the The I fell off Who is Read the situations and complete the questions. Use where John stayed at a hotel. You ask him: Did you like the hotel where you stayed? Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her: What's the name of the restaurant	you spoke to some people ?
I looked at a map I was sitting on a chair you stayed at a hotel What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ? Who are the people Did you find the The I fell off Who is Read the situations and complete the questions. Use where John stayed at a hotel. You ask him: Did you like the hotel where you stayed? Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:	you spoke to some people ?

Appendix 1 Active and passive

1.1 Present and past:

active	passive
--------	---------

present	We make butter from milk.	Butter is made from milk.
simple	Somebody cleans these rooms every day.	These rooms are cleaned every day.
	People never invite me to parties.	I am never invited to parties.
	How do they make butter?	How is butter made?
past	Somebody stole my car last week.	My car was stolen last week.
simple	Somebody stole my keys yesterday.	My keys were stolen yesterday.
	They didn't invite me to the party.	I wasn't invited to the party.
	When did they build these houses?	When were these houses built?

*	They are building a new airport at the moment. (= it isn't finished) They are building some new houses near the river.	A new airport is being built at the moment. Some new houses are being built near the river.
past continuous	When I was here a few years ago, they were building a new airport. (= it wasn't finished at that time)	When I was here a few years ago, a new airport was being built.

present	Look! They have painted the door.	Look! The door has been painted.
perfect	These shirts are clean. Somebody has washed them.	These shirts are clean. They have been washed.
	Somebody has stolen my car.	My car has been stolen.
past perfect	Ann said that somebody had stolen her car.	Ann said that her car had been stolen.

1.2 Will / can / must / have to etc.

active passive

Somebody will clean the office tomorrow.	The office will be cleaned tomorrow.
Somebody must clean the office.	The office must be cleaned.
I think they'll invite you to the party.	I think you'll be invited to the party.
They can't repair my watch.	My watch can't be repaired.
You should wash this sweater by hand.	This sweater should be washed by hand.
They are going to build a new airport.	A new airport is going to be built.
Somebody has to wash these clothes.	These clothes have to be washed.
They had to take the injured man to hospital.	The injured man had to be taken to hospital.

Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs $(\Rightarrow Unit 24)$

infinitive	past simple	past participle
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent

infinitive	past simple	nact narticinla
		past participle
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /ri:d/*	read /red/*	read /red/*
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	woken
win		101111111111111111111111111111111111111
write	won	won
write	wrote	written

 \star pronunciation

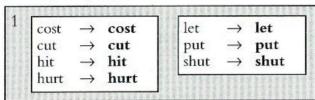
The following verbs can be regular (-ed) or irregular (-t):

past simple / past participle	
burned or burnt	
dreamed or dreamt	
	burned or burnt

infinitive	past simple / past participle
learn	learned or learnt
smell	smelled or smelt

Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups

past simple / past participle are the same:



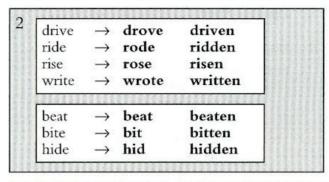
```
lose
                                          lost
lend
              lent
                                     \rightarrow
        \rightarrow
send
              sent
                             shoot \rightarrow
                                           shot
spend \rightarrow
              spent
                             get
                                           got
build \rightarrow
             built
                             light
                                           lit
                                     \rightarrow
                             sit
                                           sat
burn
              burnt
                             keep
                                           kept
              learnt
learn
                                     \rightarrow
                             sleep
                                           slept
              smelt
smell \rightarrow
             felt
feel
             left
leave \rightarrow
              met
meet \rightarrow
dream → dreamt /dremt/*
mean → meant /ment/*
```

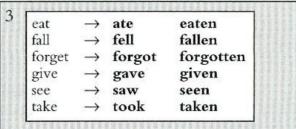
```
3 bring → brought /brɔːt/*
buy → bought /bɔːt/*
fight → fought /fɔːt/*
think → thought /θɔːt/*
catch → caught /kɔːt/*
teach → taught /tɔːt/*
```

```
sell
            sold
       \rightarrow
            told
tell
            found
find
            had
have
            heard
hear
            held
hold
      → read /red/*
read
       → said /sed/*
say
       \rightarrow paid
pay
            made
make \rightarrow
              \rightarrow stood
understand -> understood
```

past simple / past participle are different:

```
break
            broke
                      broken
            chose
choose →
                      chosen
            spoke
speak
       \rightarrow
                      spoken
                      stolen
steal
            stole
wake
            woke
                      woken
```





```
blow
           blew
                    blown
grow
           grew
                    grown
know
           knew
                    known
throw
           threw
                    thrown
fly
           flew
                    flown
draw
           drew
                    drawn
           showed shown
show
       \rightarrow
```

```
begin
              began
                          begun
drink
         \rightarrow
              drank
                          drunk
swim
              swam
                          swum
ring
         \rightarrow
              rang
                          rung
sing
              sang
                          sung
         \rightarrow
              ran
run
                          run
```

```
6 come → came come become → became become
```

^{*} pronunciation

Appendix 4 Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce 'I am' as one word. The short form (I'm) is a way of writing this:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} I \ am & \rightarrow \ I'm \\ & \text{it is} & \rightarrow \ \text{it's} \\ \text{they have} & \rightarrow \ \text{they've} \end{array}$$

• I'm feeling tired this morning.

• 'Do you like this jacket?' 'Yes, it's very nice.'

• 'Where are your friends?' 'They've gone home.'

etc.

When we write short forms, we use ' (an apostrophe):

$$I \not M m \rightarrow I'm$$

he
$$\slash$$
s \rightarrow he's

she will → she'll

4.2 We use these forms with I/he/she etc.:

$am \rightarrow$	'n	ľm						
is \rightarrow	's		he's	she's	it's			
are \rightarrow	're					we're	you're	they're
have \rightarrow	've	I've				we've	you've	they've
has \rightarrow	's		he's	she's	it's			
had \rightarrow	'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd
will \rightarrow	'11	1'11	he'll	she'll		we'll	you'll	they'll
vould \rightarrow	'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd

- I've got some new shoes.
- We'll probably go out this evening.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

s = is or has:

- She's going out this evening. (she's going = she is going)
- She's gone out. (she's gone = she has gone)

'd = would or had:

- A: What would you like to eat?
 B: I'd like a salad, please. (I'd like = I would like)
- I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (I'd lost = I had lost)

Do not use 'm/'s/'d etc. at the end of a sentence (\Rightarrow Unit 39):

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.' (not 'Yes, I'm.')
- **4.3** We use short forms with **I/you/he/she** etc. but you can use short forms (especially 's) with other words too:
 - Who's your favourite singer? (= who is)
 - What's the time? (= what is)
 - There's a big tree in the garden. (= there is)
 - My sister's working in London. (= my sister is working)
 - Paul's gone out. (= Paul has gone out)
 - What colour's your car? (= What colour is your car?)

4.4 Negative short forms (⇒ Unit 42):

aren't wasn't weren't hasn't	(= is not) (= are not) (= was not) (= were not) (= has not)	doesn't	(= do not) (= does not) (= did not)	couldn't won't wouldn't shouldn't	(= cannot) (= could not) (= will not) (= would not) (= should not)
haven't	(= have not) (= had not)			mustn't	(= should not) (= must not) (= need not)

- We went to her house but she wasn't at home.
- 'Where's David?' 'I don't know. I haven't seen him.'
- You work all the time. You shouldn't work so hard.
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 's (apostrophe + s)

's can mean different things:

- (1) $s = is \text{ or has } (\Rightarrow section 4.2 \text{ of this appendix})$
- (2) **let's** = let **us** (\Rightarrow Unit 52)
 - The weather is nice. **Let's** go out. (= Let **us** go out.)
- (3) Ann's camera (= her camera) / my brother's car (= his car) / the manager's office (= his/her office) etc. (⇒ Unit 63)

Compare:

- Ann's camera was very expensive. (Ann's camera = her camera)
- Ann's a very good photographer. (Ann's = Ann is)
- Ann's got a new camera. (Ann's got = Ann has got)

Appendix 5 Spelling

5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches etc.)

```
    noun + s (plural) (\Rightarrow Unit 65)

    bird \rightarrow birds
    mistake \rightarrow mistakes
    hotel \rightarrow hotels

    verb + s (he/she/it -s) (\Rightarrow Unit 5)

    think \rightarrow thinks
    live \rightarrow lives
    remember \rightarrow remembers
```

but

```
+ es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x:
   bus \rightarrow buses
                                                           address → addresses
                              pass \rightarrow passes
                                                           finish → finishes
   dish \rightarrow dishes
                              wash \rightarrow washes
    watch → watches
                              teach → teaches
                                                           sandwich → sandwiches
   box \rightarrow boxes
also
    potato → potatoes
                              tomato → tomatoes
    do \rightarrow does
                              go \rightarrow goes
```

```
-f / -fe \rightarrow -ves:
shelf \rightarrow shelves \qquad knife \rightarrow knives \qquad but roof \rightarrow roofs
```

5.2 Words ending in -y (baby \rightarrow babies / study \rightarrow studied etc.)

```
-y \rightarrow -ies:
                                                                   family \rightarrow families (not 'familys')
    study \rightarrow studies (not 'studys')
    story \rightarrow stories
                                   city \rightarrow cities
                                                                   baby \rightarrow babies
                                                                   fly \rightarrow flies
    try \rightarrow tries
                                   marry \rightarrow marries
-y \rightarrow -ied (\Rightarrow Unit 11):
    study → studied (not 'studyed')
                                   marry \rightarrow married
    try \rightarrow tried
                                                                   copy \rightarrow copied
-y \rightarrow -ier/-iest (\Rightarrow Units 86 and 89):
    easy → easier/easiest (not 'easyer/easyest')
                                                                   lucky → luckier/luckiest
    happy → happier/happiest
    heavy → heavier/heaviest
                                                                   funny → funnier/funniest
-y \rightarrow -ily (\Rightarrow Unit 85):
    easy \rightarrow easily (not 'easyly')
    happy \rightarrow happily
                                   lucky \rightarrow luckily
                                                                   heavy \rightarrow heavily
```

```
y does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy:
holiday → holidays (not 'holidaies')
enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed stay → stays/stayed buy → buys key → keys
but
say → said pay → paid (irregular verbs)
```

5.3 -ing

```
Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive etc.) → -eing:
make → making write → writing come → coming dance → dancing

Verbs that end in -ie → -ying:
lie → lying die → dying tie → tying
```

5.4 stop \rightarrow stopped, big \rightarrow bigger etc.

Vowels and consonants:

Vowel letters: a e i o u

Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a vowel + a consonant. For example: stop, big, get.

Before -ing/-ed/-er/-est, the consonant at the end (-p/-g/-t) etc.) is 'doubled' (-pp-/-gg-/-tt-etc.). For example:

	V-	-C				
stop	ST O	\mathbf{P}		→ pp	stopping	stopped
run	RU		n -	\rightarrow nn	ru nn ing	7
get	$G \mathbf{E}$	\mathbf{T}	t -	\rightarrow tt	ge tt ing	
swim	SW I	M	m -	→ mm	swi mm ing	
big	BI	G	g -	$\rightarrow gg$	bi gg er	biggest
hot	HO	T	t -	\rightarrow tt	hotter	hottest
thin	THI	N	n -	\rightarrow nn	thi nn er	thinnest

V = vowelC = consonant

This does not happen

(1) if the word ends in *two* consonant letters (C + C):

	C+0		
help	HE L I	P helping	helped
work	WORI	K working	worked
fast	FA S	Γ fa st er	fa st est

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

```
V+V+C

need N E E D needing needed

wait W A I T waiting waited

cheap CH E A P cheaper cheapest
```

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is not stressed:

```
stress
   happen
                 HAP-pen → happening/happened (not 'happenned')
      visit
                             → visiting/visited
                  VIS-it
remember
             re-MEM-ber
                             → remembering/remembered
    prefer
             pre-FER
                         (stress at the end) → preferring/preferred
but
     begin
             be-GIN
                         (stress at the end) \rightarrow beginning
```

(4) if the word ends in -y or -w. (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.) enjoy → enjoying/enjoyed snow/snowing/snowed few/fewer/fewest

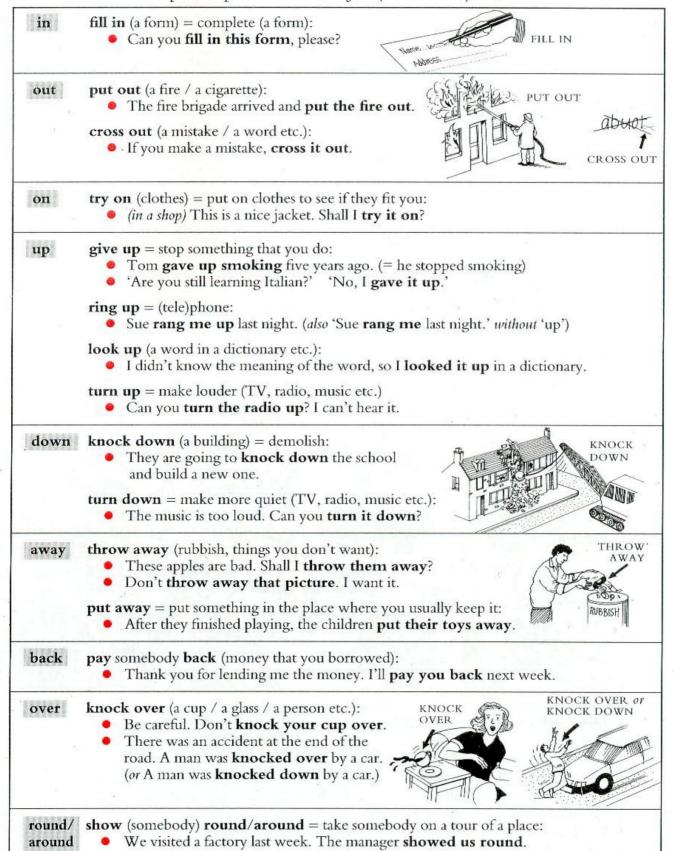
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (look out / take off etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (\Rightarrow Unit 107).

out **look out / watch out** = be careful: Look out! There's a car coming! on **come on** = be quick / hurry: (Hold on a minute Come on! Everybody is waiting for you. **hold on** = wait: Can you hold on a minute? (= can you wait?) carry on = continue: Don't stop working. Carry on. (= continue working) A: Excuse me, where is the station, please? B: Carry on along this road and turn right at the lights. (= Continue along ...) also go on / walk on / drive on etc. = continue going etc.: Don't stop here. Drive on. **get on** = manage (in a job, at school, in an exam etc.): • How are you getting on in your new job? (= are you doing OK?) off **take off** = leave the ground (for planes): The plane took off 20 minutes late but landed on time. wake up = stop sleeping: up I often wake up in the middle of the night. **speak up** = speak more loudly: I can't hear you. Can you speak up a bit? **hurry up** = do something more quickly: Hurry up! We haven't got much time. **wash up** = wash the plates etc. after a meal: Do you want me to wash up? (or ... to do the washing-up?) **grow up** = become an adult: • What does your son want to do when he grows up? **give up** = stop trying: I know it's difficult but don't give up. (= don't stop trying) **down slow down** = go more slowly: BREAK DOWN You're driving too fast. Slow down. **break down** = stop working (for cars/machines etc.): Sue was very late because her car broke down. over **fall over** = lose your balance: FALL OVER I fell over because my shoes were too big for me.

Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (fill in a form / put out a fire etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (⇒ Unit 108).



Additional exercises

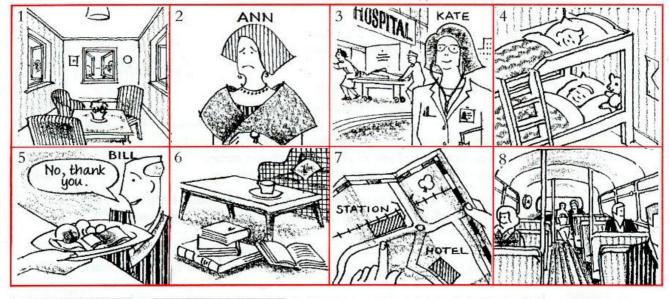
List of exercises:

1-2	am/is/are	units 1-2
3	present continuous	UNITS 3-4
4	present simple	UNITS 5-7
5-7	present simple, am/is/are and have (got)	UNITS 1-2, 5-7, 9
8-9	present continuous and present simple	UNITS 3-8
10-13	was/were and past simple	UNITS 10-12
14	past simple and past continuous	UNITS 11-14
15	present and past	UNITS 3-14
16-18	present perfect	UNITS 15-19
19-22	present perfect and past simple	UNITS 18-20
23	present, past and present perfect	UNITS 3-20
24-27	passive	UNITS 21-22
28	future	UNITS 26-29
29	past, present and future	UNITS 3-20, 26-29
30	-ing and infinitive	UNITS 50-54, 98, 105
31-32	a and the	UNITS 64, 68-72
33	prepositions	UNITS 96-101, 104

am/is/are

units 1-2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + is/isn't/are/aren't.



The windows
Ann
Kate
The children
Bill
The books
The hotel
The bus

on the table hungry asleep open full near the station a doctor happy

1 The windows are open.
2 Ann isn't happy.
3 Kate
4
5
6
7

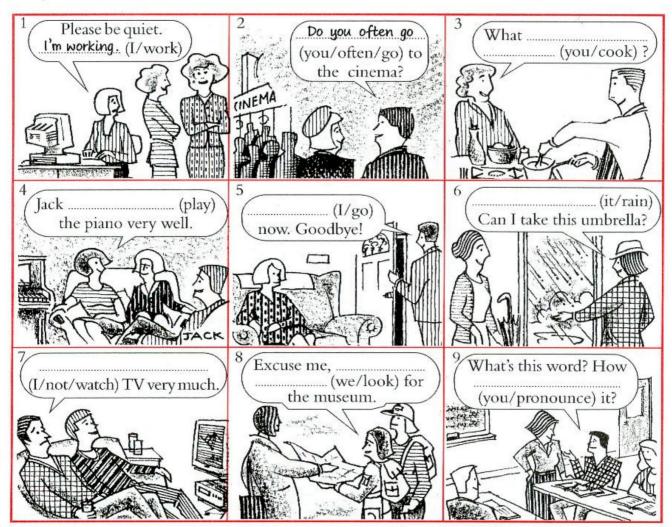
-	l 'Are you hungry?' 'No, but'm thirsty.'
2	'How are your parents?' 'They're very well.'
3	3 'Is Linda at home?' 'No, at work.'
4	
5	
6	
	7 'Are you a teacher?' 'No,
	3 'your umbrella?' 'Green.'
	Where's your car? in the car park?
10) ' tired?' 'No, I'm fine.'
	' these oranges?' 'Thirty pence each.'
Us 1 2 3 4 5 6	resent continuous (I'm working / are you working? etc.) se the words in brackets to write sentences. A: Where are your parents? B: They're watching TV. (they/watch/TV) A: Paula is going out. B: Where's she going? (where/she/go?) A: Where's David? B: (he/have/a bath) A: (the children/play?) B: No, they're asleep. A: (it/rain?) B: No, not at the moment. A: Where are Sue and Steve? B: (they/come/now)
7	A:? (why/you/stand/here?)
	B: (I/wait/for somebody)
	A: ? (why/you/stand/here?) B: ? (why/you/stand/here?) (I/wait/for somebody) resent simple (I work / she doesn't work / do you work? etc.)
	omplete the sentences. Use the present simple.
	Sue always arrives at work early. (Sue/always/arrive)
1 2	Sue always arrives at work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watch TV very often. (we/not/watch)
1 2	Sue always arrives at work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watch TV very often. (we/not/watch) How often do you wash your hair? (you/wash)
1 2 3 4	Sue always arrives at work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watch TV very often. (we/not/watch) How often do you wash your hair? (you/wash) I want to go to the cinema but to go. (Chris/not/w
1 2	Sue always arrives at work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watch TV very often. (we/not/watch) How often do you wash your hair? (you/wash) I want to go to the cinema but to go out this evening? (you/want)
1 2 3 4 5 6	Sue always arrivesat work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watchTV very often. (we/not/watch) How often do you washyour hair? (you/wash) I want to go to the cinema butto go. (Chris/not/wash) to go out this evening? (you/want) near here? (Ann/live)
1 2 3 4 5	Sue always arrivesat work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watchTV very often. (we/not/watch) How often do you washyour hair? (you/wash) I want to go to the cinema butto go. (Chris/not/wash) to go out this evening? (you/want) near here? (Ann/live) a lot of people. (Sarah/know)
1 2 3 4 5 6	Sue always arrivesat work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watchTV very often. (we/not/watch) How often _do _you washyour hair? (you/wash) I want to go to the cinema butto go. (Chris/not/wash) to go out this evening? (you/want) near here? (Ann/live) a lot of people. (Sarah/know) I enjoy travelling butvery much. (I/not/travel)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Sue always arrives at work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watch TV very often. (we/not/watch) How often do you wash your hair? (you/wash) I want to go to the cinema but to go. (Chris/not/wash) to go out this evening? (you/want) near here? (Ann/live) a lot of people. (Sarah/know) I enjoy travelling but very much. (I/not/travel) What time in the morning? (you/usually/get u
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Sue always arrivesat work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watchTV very often. (we/not/watch) How often _do _you washyour hair? (you/wash) I want to go to the cinema butto go. (Chris/not/wash) to go out this evening? (you/want) near here? (Ann/live) a lot of people. (Sarah/know) I enjoy travelling butvery much. (I/not/travel)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Sue always arrives at work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watch TV very often. (we/not/watch) How often do you wash your hair? (you/wash) I want to go to the cinema but to go. (Chris/not/wash) to go out this evening? (you/want) near here? (Ann/live) a lot of people. (Sarah/know) I enjoy travelling but very much. (I/not/travel) What time in the morning? (you/usually/get u
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Sue always arrives at work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watch TV very often. (we/not/watch) How often do you wash your hair? (you/wash) I want to go to the cinema but to go. (Chris/not/wash) to go out this evening? (you/want) near here? (Ann/live) a lot of people. (Sarah/know) I enjoy travelling but very much. (I/not/travel) What time in the morning? (you/usually/get usually/get usual
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Sue always arrives at work early. (Sue/always/arrive) We don't watch TV very often. (we/not/watch) How often do you wash your hair? (you/wash) I want to go to the cinema but to go. (Chris/not/wash) to go out this evening? (you/want) near here? (Ann/live) a lot of people. (Sarah/know) I enjoy travelling but very much. (I/not/travel) What time in the morning? (you/usually/get upon My parents are usually at home in the evening. very often. (they/not/go out)

pr	esent simple, am/is/are and	nave (got) units 1–2, 5-						
Re	ad the questions and Claire's answers	s. Then write sentences about Claire.						
1	Are you married?	[No.] 1 She isn't married.						
2	Do you live in London?	Yes. 2 She lives in London.						
3	Are you a student?	Yes. 3						
4	Have you got a car?	No. 4						
5	Do you go out a lot?	Yes. (1) 5						
6	Have you got a lot of friends?	Yes. 6						
7	Do you like London?	No. 17 7						
8	Do you like dancing?	Yes. 8						
9	Are you interested in sport?	No. \(\)						
Co	emplete the questions.							
1	What's your na	me? Brian.						
3535	marr	ried? Yes, I am.						
	Where	(% 3./5 b)						
	any children? Yes, a daughter.							
	How	She's three.						
		48						
2		? I'm 29.						
		? I work in a supermarket.						
		11.						
	to v	vork by car? No, I usually go by bus.						
2	W/ha is t	this man? That's my brothe						
3	W IIO IS C							
		He's a travel ager						
	in	London? No, in Manchest						
MAG	ake sentences from these words.							
IVI								
1	Sarah often / tennis	Sarah often plays tennis.						
2		I've got a new car.						
3		My shoes are dirty.						
4	Sonia / 32 years old	Sonia						
5	I / two sisters							
6	we often / TV in the evening							
7								
8	a bicycle / two wheels							
0	these flowers / beautiful							
9								

present continuous (I'm working) and present simple (I work)

UNITS 3-8

8 Complete the sentences.



9 Which is right?

- 1 'Are you speaking / Do you speak English?' 'Yes, a little.' Do you speak is right
- 2 Sometimes we're going / we go away at weekends.3 It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
- 4 (You meet Ann in the street.) Hello, Ann. Where are you going / do you go?
- 5 How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
- 6 Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes books for children.
- 7 I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
- 8 'Where are Michael and Jane?' 'They're watching / They watch TV in the living room.'
- 9 Helen is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
- What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?

 11 John isn't at home at the moment. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
- 12 'Would you like some tea?' 'No, thank you. I'm not drinking / I don't drink tea.'

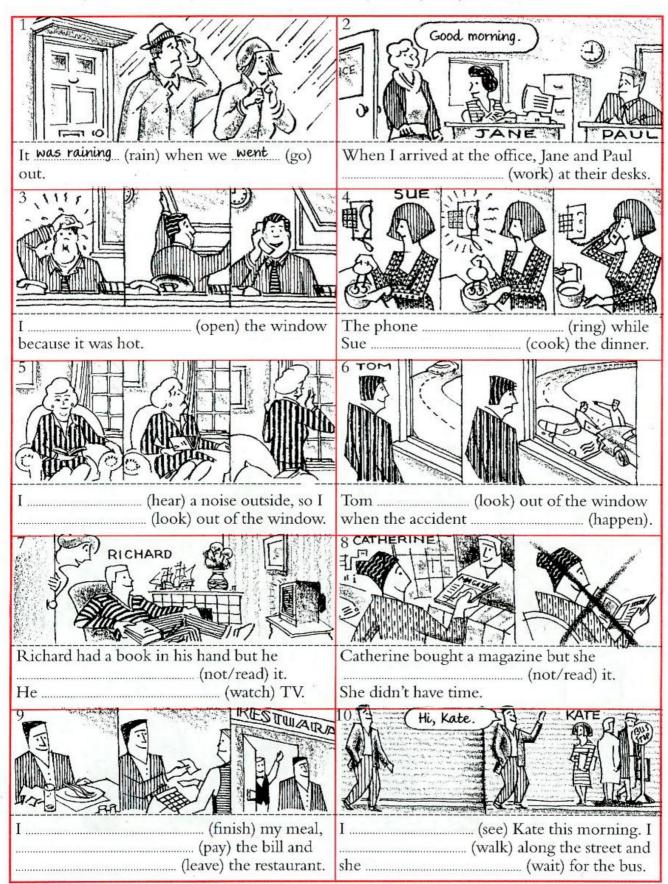
was/were and past simple (I worked / did you work? etc.)

10	Complete the sentences. Use one word only.								
	1 I got up early and had a shower.								
	2 Tom was tired last night, so he to bed early.								
	3 I this pen on the floor. Is it yours? 4 Kate got married when she								
	6 'I've got a new job.' 'Yes, I know. David me.'								
	7 'Where did you buy that book?' 'It was a present. Ann it to me.'								
	8 We								
	10 'Did Mary come to your party?' 'No, we								
44	Lead at the succitions and Versia's ensures								
11	Look at the questions and Kevin's answers.								
	Write sentences about Kevin when he was a child.								
	The state of the s								
	When you were a child								
	Were you tall? No. 1 He wasn't tall.								
	2 Did you like school? Yes. 2 He liked school.								
	3 Were you good at sport? Yes. 3 He								
	4 Did you play football? Yes. 4								
	5 Did you work hard at school? No. 5								
	6 Did you have a lot of friends? Yes. 6								
	7 Did you have a bicycle? No. 7								
	0 177 1.112 N. 0								
	8 Were you a quiet child? No. 8								
12	Complete the questions.								
-	Complete the questions.								
	1 Did you have a nice holiday? Yes, it was great, thanks.								
	2 Where did you go ? To Amsterdam. 3 there? Five days.								
	4								
	5 I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them								
	6good? Yes, it was warm and sunny.								
	7 back? Yesterday.								
13	Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question).								
	1 It was a good party. lenjoyed it. (I/enjoy)								
	2 'Did you do the shopping?' (you/do) 'No, I didn't have time.' (I/have)								
	3 'Did you phone Alan?' 'No, I'm afraid								
	4 I like your new watch. Whereit? (you/get)								
	5 I saw Lucy at the party but to her. (I/speak)								
	6 A:a nice weekend? (you/have)								
	B: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.								
	7 Paul wasn't well yesterday, soto work. (he/go)								
	8 'Is Mary here?' 'Yes, five minutes ago.' (she/arrive)								
	9 Where								
	10 The restaurant wasn't expensive very much. (the meal/cos								

past simple (I worked) and past continuous (I was working)

UNITS 11-14

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.



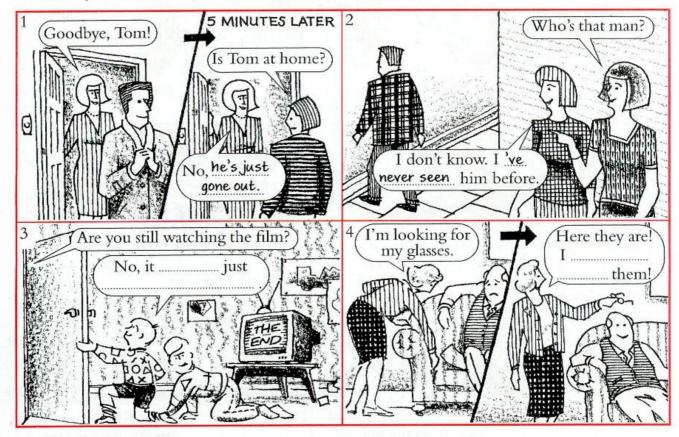
present and past

Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms: 15 the present continuous (I am working etc.) the present simple (I work etc.) the past continuous (I was working etc.) the past simple (I worked etc.) 1 You can turn off the television. I'm not watching (not/watch) it. 2 Last night Jenny fell (fall) asleep while she was reading (read). 4 'Have you got my key?' 'No, I (give) it back to you.' 5 David is very lazy. He (not/like) hard work . 7 I ______ (see) Diane yesterday. She _____ (drive) her new car. 8 A: (you/watch) television very often? B: No, I haven't got a television set. B: I was in bed asleep. 11 I (try) to find a job at the moment. It's very difficult. 12 I'm tired this morning. I (not/sleep) very well last night.

present perfect (I have done / she has been etc.)

UNITS 15-19

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.





1	omplete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words). Mark and Liz are married. They have been married for five years.	
2	David has been watching TV since 5 o'clock.	
3	Martin is at work. He at work since 8.30.	
4	'Have you just arrived in London?' 'No, I've been here	five day
5	I've known Ann we were at school together.	Hve day
6	'My brother lives in Los Angeles.' 'Really? How long	there
7	George has had the same job	
8	Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They	
	here since Monday.	
Co	emplete the sentences. Write about yourself.	
	I've never ridden a horse.	
2	I've been to London many times.	
	I've just	
	I've	
	(once / twice / a few times / many times)	
5	I haven't yet.	
6	I've never	
	I've since	
8	I've for	
Pre	esent perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).	
	A: Do you like London?	
	The second secon	
1	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there.	
1	A: Do you like London?	
1	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.	
1	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?	
2	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week.	
2	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning?	
1 2 3 4	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night.	
2	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it?	
1 2 3 4 5	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it.	
1 2 3 4 5	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it. A: Are you enjoying your new job?	
1 2 3 4 5 6	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it. A: Are you enjoying your new job? B: I yet. My first day is next Monday.	
1 2 3 4 5	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it. A: Are you enjoying your new job? B: I yet. My first day is next Monday. A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?	
1 2 3 4 5 6	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it. A: Are you enjoying your new job? B: I yet. My first day is next Monday. A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it? B: No, but it very nice yesterday.	
1 2 3 4 5 6	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it. A: Are you enjoying your new job? B: I yet. My first day is next Monday. A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it? B: No, but it very nice yesterday. A: Was Linda at the party on Saturday?	
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it. A: Are you enjoying your new job? B: I yet. My first day is next Monday. A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it? B: No, but it very nice yesterday. A: Was Linda at the party on Saturday? B: I don't think so. I her there.	
1 2 3 4 5 6	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it. A: Are you enjoying your new job? B: I yet. My first day is next Monday. A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it? B: No, but it very nice today, is it? B: No, but it very nice yesterday. A: Was Linda at the party on Saturday? B: I don't think so. I her there. A: Is your son still at school?	
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it. A: Are you enjoying your new job? B: I yet. My first day is next Monday. A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it? B: No, but it very nice today, is it? B: No, but it very nice yesterday. A: Was Linda at the party on Saturday? B: I don't think so. I her there. A: Is your son still at school? B: No, he school two years ago.	
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I 5ab her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it. A: Are you enjoying your new job? B: I yet. My first day is next Monday. A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it? B: No, but it very nice today? B: I don't think so. I her there. A: Is your son still at school? B: No, he school two years ago. A: Is Sylvia married?	
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it. A: Are you enjoying your new job? B: I yet. My first day is next Monday. A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it? B: No, but it very nice today, is it? B: No, but it very nice yesterday. A: Was Linda at the party on Saturday? B: I don't think so. I her there. A: Is your son still at school? B: No, he school two years ago. A: Is Sylvia married? B: Yes, she married for five years.	
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I haven't been there. A: Have you seen Ann? B: Yes, I 5ab her five minutes ago. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new? B: Yes, I it last week. A: Are you tired this morning? B: Yes, I to bed late last night. A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it? B: You can have it. I it. A: Are you enjoying your new job? B: I yet. My first day is next Monday. A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it? B: No, but it very nice today? B: I don't think so. I her there. A: Is your son still at school? B: No, he school two years ago. A: Is Sylvia married?	

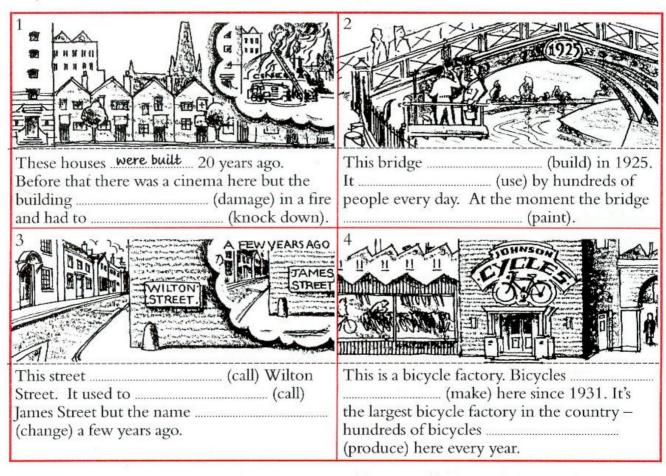
Ma	ake sentences from the words in brackets (). Use the present perfect or past simple.
1	A: Have you been to Scotland? B: Yes, I went there last year. (I / go / there / last year)
	A: Do you like London? B: I don't know. I've never been there. (I / never / there)
3	A: What time is Paul going out? B:(he / already / go)
	A: Has Catherine gone home? B: Yes, (she / go / at 4 o'clock)
5	A: New York is my favourite city. B: Is it? ? (how many times / you / there?)
5	A: What are you doing this weekend? B: I don't know. (I / not / decide / yet)
	A: I can't find my address book. Have you seen it? B: (it / on the table / last night)
3	A: Are you hungry? B: No,
)	A: Paula and Sue are here. B: Are they?? (what time / they / arrive?)
Pr	esent perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences.
	1 A: Have you been to France? B: Yes, many times. A: When the last time? B: Two years ago. 2 A: Is this your car?
	B: Yes, it is. A: How long it? B: It's new. I it yesterday.
	A: Where do you live? B: In Harold Street. A: How long there? B: Five years. Before that in Mill Road. A: How long in Mill Road?
	B: About three years.

B: I a taxi driver.

1	(yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning. (last night)
3	(yesterday afternoon)
	(days ago) (last week)
	(last year)
_	
pre	esent, past and present perfect
Wh	nich is right?
1	' Is Sue working ?' 'No, she's on holiday.' A Does Sue work B Is working Sue C Is Sue working D Does work
2	'Where?' 'In a village near London.' A lives your uncle B does your uncle live C your uncle lives D does live your uncle
3	I speak Italian but
4	'Where's Tom?' 'a shower at the moment.' A He's having B He have C He has D He has had
5	Whyangry with me yesterday? A were you B was you C you were D have you been
	My favourite film is Cleo's Dream. it four times. A I'm seeing B I see C I saw D I've seen
7	I
	Liz is from Edinburgh. She there all her life. A is living B has lived C lives D lived
9	My friend for me when I arrived. A waited B has waited C was waiting D has been waiting
10	'How long English?' 'Six months.' A do you learn B are you learning C you are learning D have you been learning
11	Martin is English but he lives in France. He has been there A for three years B since three years C three years ago D during three
12	'What time?' 'About an hour ago.' A has Ann phoned B Ann has phoned C did Ann phone D is Ann pho
13	What
14	'Can you drive?' 'No, a car but I want to learn.' A I never drove B I'm never driving C I've never driven D I was never driving
15	I saw Lisa at the station when I was going to work this morning but she

passive

24 Complete the sentences.



25 Complete the sentences.

1 We were invited (invite) to the party but we didn't go.
2 The museum is very popular. Every year it (visit) by thousands of people.
3 Many buildings (damage) in the storm last week.
4 A new road is going to (build) next year.
5 'Where's your jacket?' 'It (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.'
6 She's famous now, but in a few years her name will (forget).
7 'Shall I do the washing-up?' 'No, it (already/do).'
8 Milk should (keep) in a fridge.
9 (you/ever/bite) by a snake?
10 My bag (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

Write a new sentence with the same meaning

N	vrite a new sentence with the same meaning.					
1	Somebody has stolen my keys.	My keys have been stolen.				
2	Somebody stole my car last week.	My car				
3	Somebody wants you on the phone.	You				
1	Somebody has eaten the bananas.	The				
5	Somebody will repair the machine.	The				
5	Somebody is watching us.	We				
7	Somebody has to buy the food.	The				

ACI	ve or passive? Complete the sentences.
1	They are building (build) a new airport at the moment.
2	These shirts are clean now. They have been washed (wash).
	'How did you fall?' 'Somebody
4	'How did you fall?' 'I
	I can't find my bag. Somebody
	My watch is broken. It
	Who
8	When (the camera/invent)?
	The letter was for me, so why (they/send) it to you?
10	The information will (send) to you as soon as possible.
<u> </u>	
tut	ure units 26–29
Wh	ch is the best alternative?
1	We're having a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
	A We have B We're having C We'll have
2	Service Production Control Con
2	Do you know about Sally? her job. She told me last week A She leaves B She's going to leave C She'll leave
3	There's a programme on television that I want to watch
	minutes.
	A It starts B It's starting C It will start
4	The weather is nice now but I thinklater.
Т	A it rains B it's raining C it will rain
_	A Marie Control of the Control of th
5	'Whatnext weekend?' 'Nothing special. Why?'
	A do you do B are you doing C will you do
6	'When you see Ann, can you ask her to phone me?' 'OK,her
	A I ask B I'm going to ask C I'll ask
7	'What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?' 'tea, please
	A I have B I'm going to have C I'll have
0	
0.	Don't take that newspaper awayit.
	A I read B I'm going to read C I'll read
9	Rachel is ill, so to the party tomorrow night.
	A she doesn't come B she isn't coming C she won't come
10	I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time?
- 0	A does her train arrive B is her train going to arrive C is her train arriving
1.1	
11	'Will you be at home tomorrow evening?' 'No
	A I go out B I'm going out C I'll go out
12	'you tomorrow?' 'Yes, OK.' A Do I phone B Am I going to phone C Shall I phone

past, present and future

29 Complete the sentences.

U	mp	iete the sentences.	
1	Α.	Did you go (you/go) out la	st night?
1			
	Б.	No,	(1/stay) at nome.
		What	
	B:		(I/watch) television.
	A:		(you/go) out tomorrow night?
	B:	Yes,	(I/go) to the cinema.
	A:	Which film	(vou/see)?
			not/know)(I/not/decide) yet.
	D.	(1)	(17 Hot/ decide) yet.
		₽	
2	A:	Are you on holiday here?	Are you
	B:	Yes, we are.	- (on holiday)-
	A:	How long	(you/be) here? here?
	B.		(we/arrive) vesterday
	A.	And how long	(yourstay): A AS MY LIST
		Until the end of next week.	
	A:	And	(you/like) it here?
	B:	Yes,	(we/have)
		a wonderful time.	
3	Α.	Oh	(I/just/remember) –
2	11.	(Jill/phone) while you were	
	T		
	B:		(she/always/phone) when I'm not here.
			(she/leave) a message?
	A:	No, but	(she/want) you to phone her back as soon as possible.
	B:	OK,	(I/phone) her now.
			(vou/know) her number?
	A:	It's in my address book.	(I/get) it for you.
			(- 8 -) ,
4	A:		(I/go) out with Chris and Steve this evening.
			(you/want) to come with us?
	B:	Yes, where	
			North Street. (you/ever/eat) there?
			e) there two or three times. In fact I(go)
	ъ.		
		there last night but I'd love to	o go agam:
5	A:		(I/lose) my glasses again.
		3	
	D.		
		TV7 11	
	A:	well,	(I/not/wear) them now,
		so where are they?	
	B:		(you/look) in the kitchen? 以间 磁型的
		No,	

UNITS 50-54, 98, 105

$\textbf{-ing} \ \text{and infinitive} \\$

30 Which is correct?

1	Don't forget to switch off the light before you go out. A switch B. to switch C switching
2	It's late. I must
3	I'm sorry but I haven't got time to you now. A for talking B to talk C talking
4	Bill is always in the kitchen. He enjoys
5	We've decided
6	You're making too much noise. Can you please stop? A shout B to shout C shouting
7	Would you like to dinner on Sunday? A come B to come C coming
8	That bag is too heavy for you. Let me
9	There's a swimming pool near my house. I go
10	Did you use a dictionary the letter? A to translate B for translating C for translate
11	I'd love
12	Could you me with this bag, please? A help B to help C helping
13	I don't mind
14	Do you wantyou? A that I help B me to help C me helping
15	I always read the newspaper before work. A start B to start C starting
16	I wasn't feeling very well but the medicine made me better. A feel B to feel C feeling
17	Shall I phone the restaurant
18	Tom looked at me without

a and **the**

31 Complete the sentences.



Pu	t in a/an or the where necessary. If a/an/the are not necessary, leave an empty space (–).
1	Who is the best player in your team?
	I don't watch television very often.
3	'Is therea. bank near here?' 'Yes, at .the end of this street.'
4	I can't ride horse.
5	sky is very clear tonight.
6	Do you live here or are youtourist?
7	What did you have forlunch?
8	Who was first President of United States?
9	'What time is it?' 'I don't know. I haven't got watch.'
10	I'm sorry but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember names.
	What time isnext train to London?
12	Kate never writesletters. She prefers to phone people.
13	'Where's Sue?' 'She's ingarden.'
14	Excuse me, I'm looking for Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15	Gary was ill last week, so he didn't go to work.
16	Everest is highest mountain in world.
17	I usually listen toradio while I'm having breakfast.
18	I like sport. My favourite sport is basketball.
19	Julia is doctor. Her husband is art teacher.
20	My apartment is onsecond floor. Turn left attop ofstairs, and it's
	right.
21	
22	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France.
22 pr	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. epositions
pre-	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. Epositions in a preposition (in/for/by etc.).
property of the property of th	After
property 1	After
22 pr Put 1 2 3	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. POSITIONS In a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening?
pro Put 1 2 3 4	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. POSITIONS In a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law tuniversity. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight.
pro Put 1 2 3 4 5 5	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. POSITIONS In a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law tuniversity. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived
22 pro Put 1 2 3 4 5 6	After
pr Put 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. POSITIONS Lin a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying lawat university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight. 'Where's Mike?' 'He's holiday.' Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still bed. Linda is away. She's been away Monday.
22 pro Put 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. POSITIONS In a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight. 'Where's Mike?' 'He's holiday.' Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still bed. Linda is away. She's been away Monday. The next meeting is 15 April.
22 pro Put 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. POSITIONS Lin a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law tuniversity. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight. 'Where's Mike?' 'He's holiday.' Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still bed. Linda is away. She's been away Monday. The next meeting is 15 April. I usually go to work car.
22 pro Put 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Afterdinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. POSITIONS Lin a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law tuniversity. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight. 'Where's Mike?' 'He's holiday.' Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still bed. Linda is away. She's been away Monday. The next meeting is 15 April. I usually go to work car. There's too much sugar my coffee.
22 pro Put 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. POSITIONS Lin a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight. 'Where's Mike?' 'He's holiday.' Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still bed. Linda is away. She's been away Monday. The next meeting is 15 April. I usually go to work car. There's too much sugar my coffee. Kevin lived in London six months. He didn't like it very much.
22 pro Put 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. POSITIONS In a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying lawat university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight. 'Where's Mike?' 'He's holiday.' Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still bed. Linda is away. She's been away Monday. The next meeting is 15 April. I usually go to work car. There's too much sugar my coffee. Kevin lived in London six months. He didn't like it very much. Were there a lot of people the party?
pre Put 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13	After dinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. POSITIONS In a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight. 'Where's Mike?' 'He's holiday.' Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still bed. Linda is away. She's been away Monday. The next meeting is 15 April. I usually go to work my coffee. Kevin lived in London six months. He didn't like it very much. Were there a lot of people the moment? Are you working?
22 pre Put 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14	After
22 pro Put 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15	After
22 prepared 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16	After
22 pre Put 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17	Afterdinner, we watched television. Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France. POSITIONS Lin a preposition (in/for/by etc.). Helen is studying law university. What is the longest river Europe? Is there anything television this evening? We arrived the hotel after midnight. 'Where's Mike?' 'He's holiday.' Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still bed. Linda is away. She's been away Monday. The next meeting is 15 April. I usually go to work car. There's too much sugar my coffee. Kevin lived in London six months. He didn't like it very much. Were there a lot of people the party? What are you doing the moment? Are you working? I don't know any of the people this photograph. The train was very slow. It stopped every station. I like this room. I like the pictures the walls. 'Did you buy that picture?' 'No, it was given to me a friend of mine.'
22 pro Put 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18	After

Key to Exercises

- 2 they're
- 3 it's not / it isn't
- 4 that's
- 5 I'm not
- 6 you're not / you aren't

- 2 'm/am
- 6 are

8 'm/am ... is

- 3 is
- 7 is ... are
- 4 are 5 's/is

- 2 My brother is a teacher.
- 3 This house isn't / is not very
- 4 The shops aren't / are not open today.
- 5 My keys are in my bag.
- 6 Jenny is 18 years old.
- 7 You aren't / are not very tall.

1.4

Example answers:

- 1 My name is Robert.
- 2 I'm from Australia.
- 3 I'm 25.
- 4 I'm a computer programmer.
- 5 I'm married.
- 6 My favourite colours are black and white.
- 7 I'm interested in machines.

- 2 They're/They are cold.
- 3 He's/He is hot.
- 4 He's/He is afraid.
- 5 They're/They are hungry.
- 6 She's/She is angry

- 2 I'm / I am hungry. or I'm not / I am not hungry.
- 3 It's / It is warm today. or It isn't / It's not warm today.
- 4 I'm / I am afraid of dogs. or I'm not / I am not afraid of dogs.

- 5 My hands are cold. or My hands aren't / are not
- 6 Canada is a very big country.
- 7 Diamonds aren't / are not cheap.
- 8 I'm / I am interested in football, or

I'm not / I am not interested in football.

9 Rome isn't / is not in Spain.

UNIT 2

- 2 F 6 E
- 3 H
- 7 B 8 I 4 C
- 9 D 5 A

2.2

- 3 Is your job interesting?
- 4 Are the shops open today?
- 5 Are you interested in sport?
- 6 Is the post office near here?
- Are your children at school?
- 8 Why are you late?

2.3

- 2 Where is
- 3 How old are
- 4 How much are
- 5 What is
- 6 Who is
- What colour are

2.4

- 2 Are you married or single?
- 3 Are you American?
- 4 How old are you?
- 5 Are you a teacher?
- 6 Is your wife a lawyer?
- Where's/Where is she from?
- 8 What's/What is her name?
- 9 How old is she?

2.5

- 2 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 3 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't. / No, it's not.

- 4 Yes, they are. or No, they aren't. / No, they're
- 5 Yes, it is, or

No, it isn't. / No, it's not.

6 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

UNIT 3

- 2 's/is waiting
- 3 're/are playing
- 4 He's/He is lying
- 5 They're/They are having
- 6 She's/She is sitting

- 2 's/is cooking
- 3 're/are standing
- 4 is swimming
- 5 're/are staying
- 6 's/is having
- 7 're/are building
- 8 'm/am going

- 3 She's/She is sitting on the floor.
- 4 She's not/She isn't reading a
- 5 She's not/She isn't playing the
- 6 She's/She is laughing.
- 7 She's/She is wearing a hat.
- 8 She's not/She isn't writing a letter.

- 3 I'm sitting on a chair. or I'm not sitting on a chair.
- 4 I'm eating. or I'm not eating.
- 5 It's raining. or It isn't raining. / It's not raining.
- 6 I'm learning English.
- I'm listening to music. or I'm not listening to music.
- 8 The sun is shining, or The sun isn't shining.
- 9 I'm wearing shoes. or I'm not wearing shoes.
- 10 I'm not reading a newspaper.

UNIT 4

4.1

- 2 Are you going now?
- 3 Is it raining?
- 4 Are you enjoying the film?
- 5 Is that clock working?
- 6 Are you writing a letter?

4.2

- 2 Where is she going?
- 3 What are you eating?
- 4 Why are you crying?
- 5 What are they looking at?
- 6 Why is he laughing?

4.3

- ·3 Are you listening to me?
- 4 Where are your friends going?
- 5 Are your parents watching television?
- 6 What is Ann cooking?
- 7 Why are you looking at me?
- 8 Is the bus coming?

4.4

- 2 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 3 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
- 5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 6 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

HNIT 5

5.1

- 2 thinks
- 5 has
- 3 flies
- 6 finishes
- 4 dances

5.2

- 2 live
- 5 They go
- 3 She eats
- 6 He sleeps
- 4 They play

5.3

- 2 open
- 7 costs
- 3 closes.
- 8 cost
- 4 teaches
- 9 boils
- 5 meet
- 10 like ... likes
- 6 washes

5.4

- 2 I often play basketball.
- 3 Margaret usually works hard.
- 4 Jenny always wears nice clothes.

- 5 We always have dinner at 7.30.
- 6 Tim never watches television.
- 7 Children usually like chocolate.
- 8 Julia always enjoys parties.

5.5

Example answers:

- 2 I usually read in bed.
- 3 I often get up before 7 o'clock.
- 4 I never go to work by bus.
- 5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

UNIT 6

6.1

- 2 Jane doesn't play the piano very well.
- 3 They don't know my phone number.
- 4 We don't work very hard.
- 5 He doesn't have a bath every day.
- 6 You don't do the same thing every day.

6.2

- 2 Carol doesn't like classical music. I like (or I don't like) classical music.
- 3 Bill and Rose don't like boxing. Carol likes boxing. I like (or I don't like) boxing.
- 4 Bill and Rose like horror films. Carol doesn't like horror films. I like (or I don't like) horror films.

6.3

- 2-5 You can use:
 - I never... (go/ride etc.) or
 - I often... or
 - I don't...very often.

6.4

- 2 doesn't use
- 3 don't go
- 4 doesn't wear
- 5 don't know
- 6 doesn't cost
- 7 don't see

6.5

- 3 don't know
- 4 doesn't talk
- 5 drinks

- 6 don't believe
- 7 like
- 8 doesn't eat

UNIT 7

7.1

- 2 Do you play tennis?
- 3 Does Ann play tennis?
- 4 Do your friends live near here?
- 5 Does your brother speak English?
- 6 Do you do exercises every morning?
- 7 Does Paul often go away?
- 8 Do you want to be famous?
- 9 Does Linda work hard?

7.2

- 3 How often do you watch TV?
- 4 What do you want for dinner?
- 5 Do you like football?
- 6 Does your brother like football?
- 7 What do you do in the evenings?
- 8 Where does your sister work?
- 9 Do you often go to the cinema?
- 10 What does this word mean?
- 11 Does it often snow here?
- 12 What time do you usually go to bed?
- 13 How much does it cost to phone New York?
- 14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3

- 2 Do you enjoy / Do you like
- 3 do you start
- 4 Do you work
- 5 do you go
- 6 does he do
- 7 does he teach
- 8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

- 2 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 3 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 4 Yes, it does. or No, it doesn't.
- 5 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.

8.1

- 2 No, she isn't. Yes, she does. She's playing the piano.
- 3 Yes, he does.Yes, he is.He's cleaning a window.
- 4 No, they aren't. Yes, they do. They teach.

8.2

- 2 don't
- 6 do
- 3 are
- 7 does
- 4 does
- 8 doesn't
- 5 's/is ... don't

8.3

- 4 is singing
- 5 She wants
- 6 do you read
- 7 you're/you are sitting
- 8 I don't understand
- 9 I'm going ... Are you coming
- 10 does your father
- 11 I'm not listening
- 12 He's / He is cooking
- 13 doesn't usually drive ... usually walks
- 14 doesn't like ... She prefers

UNIT 9

9.1

- 2 he's got
- 5 it's got
- 3 they've got 6 I haven't got
- 4 she hasn't got

9.2

- 2 Have you got a passport? or Do you have ...?
- 3 Has your father got a car? or Does your father have ...?
- 4 Has Carol got many friends? or Does Carol have ...?
- 5 Have you got any brothers or sisters? or Do you have ...?
- 6 How much money have we got? or ... do we have?
- 7 What kind of car has Julia got? or ... does Julia have?

9.3

- 2 Tina hasn't got a bicycle. / Tina doesn't have a bicycle.
 - I've got a bicycle. / I have a bicycle. or I haven't got a bicycle. / I don't have a bicycle.
- 3 Tina has got long hair. / Tina has long hair.
 - I've got long hair. / I have long hair. or I haven't got long hair. / I don't have long hair.
- 4 Tina has got two sisters and two brothers. / Tina has two.... (example answer) I've got two brothers and one sister.

9.4

- 3 's got / has got
- 4 haven't got
- 5 've got / have got
- 6 haven't got
- 7 hasn't got

9.5

- 3 have got four wheels (or have four wheels)
- 4 's got / has got a lot of friends (or has a lot of friends)
- 5 've got / have got a toothache. (or have a toothache)
- 6 hasn't got a key (or doesn't have a key)
- 7 has got six legs (or has six legs)
- 8 haven't got much time (or don't have much time)

UNIT 10

10.1

- 2 Carol and Jack were at/in the cinema.
- 3 Sue was at the station.
- 4 Mr and Mrs Hall were in/at a restaurant.
- 5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach / at the seaside.
- 6 (example answer) I was at work.

10.2

- 2 is ... was 6 are
- 3 am
- 7 Was
- 4 was
- 8 was
- 5 were
- 9 are ... were

10.3

- 2 wasn't ... was
- 3 was ... were
- 4 Were ... was ... wasn't
- 5 were
- 6 weren't ... were

10.4

- 2 Was your exam difficult?
- 3 Where were Ann and Chris last week?
- 4 How much was your new camera?
- 5 Why were you angry yesterday?
- 6 Was the weather nice last week?

UNIT 11

11.

- 2 opened
- 3 started ... finished
- 4 wanted
- 5 happened
- 6 rained
- 7 enjoyed ... stayed
- 8 died

11.2

- 2 saw 8 thought 3 played 9 copied
- 4 paid
- 10 knew
- 5 visited 6 bought
- 11 put 12 spoke
- 7 went

11.3

- 2 got 9 had
- 3 had
- 10 went
- 4 left 5 drove
- 11 waited 12 departed
- 6 arrived
- 13 arrived 14 took
- 7 parked
- 8 went

- 2 lost her keys
- 3 met her friends
- 4 bought two newspapers
- 5 went to the cinema
- 6 went to the c.
- 6 ate an orange
- 7 had a shower
- 8 came (to see us)

11.5

Example answers:

- 2 I got up late yesterday.
- 3 I met some friends at lunchtime.
- 4 I played tennis.
- 5 I wrote a letter.
- 6 I lost my keys.

UNIT 12

12.1

- 2 didn't work
- 4 didn't have
- 3 didn't go
- 5 didn't do

12.2

- 2 Did you enjoy the party?
- 3 Did you have a good holiday?
- 4 Did you finish work early?
- 5 Did you sleep well last night?

12.3

- 2 I got up before 7 o'clock. or I didn't get up before 7 o'clock.
- 3 I had a shower. or I didn't have a shower.
- 4 I bought a magazine. *or* I didn't buy a magazine.
- 5 I ate meat. or I didn't eat meat.
- 6 I went to bed before 10.30. or I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

12.4

- 2 did you arrive
- 3 Did you win
- 4 did you go
- 5 did it cost
- 6 Did you go to bed late
- 7 Did you have a nice time
- 8 did it happen / did that happen

12.5

- 2 bought
- 5 opened
- 3 Did it rain
- 6 didn't have
- 4 didn't stay
- 7 did you do

UNIT 13

13.1

- 2 Carol and Jack were at/in the cinema. They were watching a film.
- 3 Tom was in his car. He was driving.

- 4 Catherine was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
- 5 Mr and Mrs Hall were in the park. They were walking.
- 6 I was in a café. I was having a drink with some friends.

13.2

- 2 she was swimming /she was having a swim.
- 3 she was reading a/the newspaper.
- 4 she was cooking (lunch).
- 5 she was having breakfast.
- 6 she was listening to music/... listening to the radio.

13.3

- 2 What were you doing
- 3 Was it raining
- 4 Why was Ann driving so fast
- 5 Was Tim wearing a suit

13.4

- 2 He was carrying a bag.
- 3 He wasn't going to the dentist.
- 4 He was eating an ice-cream.
- 5 He wasn't carrying an umbrella.
- 6 He wasn't going home.
- 7 He was wearing a hat.
- 8 He wasn't riding a bicycle.

UNIT 14

14.1

- 1 happened ... was painting ... fell
- 2 arrived ... got ... were waiting
- 3 was walking ... met ... was going ... was carrying... stopped

14.2

- 2 was studying
- 3 did the post arrive ... came ... was having
- 4 didn't go
- 5 were you driving ... stopped ... wasn't driving
- 6 Did your team win ... didn't play
- 7 did you break the window ... were playing ... kicked ... hit
- 8 Did you see ... was wearing
- 9 were you doing
- 10 lost ... did you get ... climbed

UNIT 15

15.1

- 2 She has closed the door.
- 3 They have gone to bed.
- 4 It has stopped raining.
- 5 He has had a bath.
- 6 The picture has fallen down.

15.2

- 2 've bought / have bought
- 3 's gone / has gone
- 4 Have you seen
- 5 has broken
- 6 've told / have told
- 7 has taken
- 8 has she gone
- 9 've forgotten / have forgotten
- 10 's invited / has invited
- 11 Have you decided
- 12 haven't seen

UNIT 16

16.1

- 2 He's/He has just got up.
- 3 They've/They have just bought a car.
- 4 The race has just started.

16.2

- 2 they've/they have already seen it.
- 3 I've/I have already phoned
- 4 He's/He has already gone (away).
- 5 I've/I have already read it.
- 6 She's/She has already started (it).

16.3

- 2 The bus has just gone.
- 3 The bus hasn't gone yet.
- 4 He hasn't opened it yet.
- 5 They've/They have just finished their dinner.
- 6 It hasn't stopped raining yet.

- 2 Have you met your new neighbours yet?
- 3 Have you written the letter yet?
- 4 Has he/Tom sold his car yet?

17.1

- 3 Have you ever been to Australia?
- 4 Have you ever lost your passport?
- 5 Have you ever flown in a helicopter?
- 6 Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
- 7 Have you ever been to New York?
- 8 Have you ever driven a bus?
- 9 Have you ever broken your leg?

17.2

Helen:

- Helen has never been to Australia.
- 3 Helen/She has eaten Chinese food a few times.
- 4 Helen/She has never driven a bus.

You (example answers):

- 5 I've / I have never been to New York.
- 6 I've / I have played tennis many times.
- 7 I've / I have never flown in a helicopter.
- 8 I've / I have been late for work a few times.

17.3

2-6

- She has done a lot of interesting things.
- She has travelled all over the world. *or* She has been all over the world.
- She has been married three times.

She has written ten books.

She has met a lot of interesting people.

17.4

- 2 gone
- 3 been ... been
- 4 been
- 5 gone
- 6 been
- 7 been
- 8 gone

UNIT 18

18.1

- 3 have been
- 4 has been
- 5 have lived / have been living
- 6 has worked / has been working
- 7 has had
- 8 have been learning

18.2

- 2 How long have they been there / in Brazil?
- 3 How long have you known her?
- 4 How long has she been learning Italian?
- 5 How long has he lived in Canada? / How long has he been living ...?
- 6 How long have you been a teacher?
- 7 How long has it been raining?

18.3

- 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.
- 3 They have been on holiday since Sunday.
- 4 The sun has been shining all day.
- 5 She has been waiting for ten minutes.
- 6 He has had a beard since he was 20.

18.4

- 2 know
- 3 have known
- 4 have you been
- 5 works
- 6 has been
- 7 have you lived
- 8 I've had
- 9 is ... has been

UNIT 19

19.1

- 3 for 6 for
- 4 since 7 for
- 5 since 8 for ... since

19.2

Example answers:

- 2 A year ago.
- 3 A few days ago.
- 4 Two hours ago.
- 5 Six months ago.

19.3

- 3 for 20 years
- 4 20 years ago
- 5 ten minutes ago
- 6 an hour ago
- 7 for six months
- 8 for a long time
- 9 a few days ago

19.4

- 2 been here since Tuesday.
- 3 raining for an hour.
- 4 known Sue for two years.
- 5 had my/a camera since 1989.
- 6 been married for six months.
- 7 been studying medicine (at university) for three years.
- 8 played / been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

19.5

Example answers:

- 1 I've lived in ... all my life.
- 2 I've been in the same job for ten years.
- 3 I've been learning English for six months.
- 4 I've known Chris for a long
- 5 I've had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 20

20.1

- 2 I started (it) last week.
- 3 they arrived at 5 o'clock.
- 4 she went (away) on Friday.
- 5 I wore them yesterday.

20.2

- 3 WRONG I finished
- 4 RIGHT
- 5 WRONG did you finish
- 6 RIGHT
- 7 WRONG Jim's grandmother died
- 8 WRONG Where were you

- 3 played
- 4 did you go
- 5 Have you ever met
- 6 wasn't
- 7 've/have just washed

- 8 washed
- 9 's/has visited
- 10 hasn't come

20.4

- 1 Did you have was
- 2 Have you seen went haven't seen
- 3 has worked / has been working was worked didn't enjoy
- 4 've/have seen 've/have never spoken Have you ever spoken met

UNIT 21

21.1

- 3 Glass is made from sand.
- 4 Stamps are sold in a post office.
- 5 This room isn't used very often.
- 6 Are we allowed to park here?
- 7 How is this word pronounced?
- 9 The house was painted last month.
- 10 Three people were injured in the accident.
- 11 My bicycle was stolen a few days ago.
- 12 When was this bridge built?
- 13 Were you invited to the party last week?
- 14 How were these windows broken?
- 15 I wasn't woken up by the noise.

21.2

- 2 Football is played in most ...
- 3 Why was the letter sent to ...?
- 4 ... where cars are repaired.
- 5 Where were you born?
- 6 How many languages are spoken ...
- 7 ... but nothing was stolen.
- 8 When was the bicycle invented?

21.3

- 3 is made
- 4 were damaged

- 5 was given
- 6 are shown
- 7 were invited
- 8 was made
- 9 was stolen ... was found

21.4

- 2 Sally was born in Birmingham.
- 3 Her parents were born in Ireland.
- 4 I was born in ...
- 5 My mother was born in ...

UNIT 22

22.1

- 2 A bridge is being built.
- 3 The windows are being cleaned.
- 4 The grass is being cut.

22.2

- 3 The window has been broken.
- 4 The roof is being repaired.
- 5 The car has been damaged.
- 6 The houses **are being** knocked down.
- 7 The trees have been cut down.
- 8 They have been invited to a party.

22.3

- 3 has been repaired
- 4 was repaired
- 5 are made
- 6 were they built
- 7 Is the computer being used (*or* Is anybody using the computer)
- 8 are they called
- 9 were blown
- 10 was damaged ... hasn't been repaired

UNIT 23

23.1

3 are 7 do 4 Does 8 Is 5 Do 9 does 6 Is 10 Are

23.2

- 2 don't 6 doesn't
 3 'm/am not 7 'm/am not
 4 isn't 8 aren't
- 5 don't

23.3

-			
2	Did	7	were
3	were	8	Has
4	was	9	did
5	Has	10	have
6	did		

23.4

2	was	6	've/hav
3	Have	7	is
4	are	8	was
5	were	9	has

23.5

-	010		
3	eaten	8	understand
4	enjoying	9	listening
5	damaged	10	pronounced
6	use	11	open
7	gone away		

UNIT 24

24.1

3	got	10	happened
4	brought		heard
5	paid	12	put
6	enjoyed	13	caught
7	bought	14	watched
8	sat	15	understood

24.2

9 left

2	began	begun
	ate e	
4	drank	drunk
5	drove	driven
6	ran r	un
7	spoke	spoken
8	wrote	written
		come
10	knew	known
11	took	taken
12	went	gone

24 3

3	slept
4	saw
5	rained
6	lost seen
7	stolen
8	went
9	finished
0	built

13 gave given

14 threw thrown

15 forgot forgotten

- 11 learnt/learned
- 12 ridden
- 13 known
- 14 fell ... hurt

24.4

- 2 told
- 8 spoken
- 3 won
- 9 cost
- 4 met
- 10 driven
- 5 woken up
- 11 sold
- 6 swam
- 12 flew
- 7 thought

UNIT 25

25.1

- 2 He used to play football.
- 3 She used to be a taxi driver.
- 4 They used to live in the country.
- 5 He used to wear glasses.
- 6 This building used to be a hotel.

25.2

2-6

- She used to play volleyball.
- She used to go out most
 - evenings. / She used to go out in the evenings.
- She used to play the guitar.
- She used to read a lot. / She used to like reading.
- She used to go away two or three times a year. / She used to travel a lot.

25.3

- 3 used to have
- 4 used to be
- 5 go
- 6 used to eat
- 7 watches
- 8 used to live
- 9 get
- 10 did you use to play

UNIT 26

26.1

- 2 Richard is going to the cinema.
- 3 Barbara is meeting Dave.
- 4 Denise is having lunch with Ken.
- 5 Tom and Sue are going to a party.

26.2

- 2 Are you working next week?
- 3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?
- 4 What time are your friends arriving?
- 5 When is Liz going on holiday?

26.3

Example answers:

- 3 I'm going away at the weekend.
- 4 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.
- 5 I'm meeting a friend this evening.
- 6 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.

26.4

- 3 She's getting
- 4 are going ... are they going
- 5 finishes
- 6 I'm not going
- 7 I'm going ... We're meeting
- 8 are you getting ... leaves
- 9 does the film begin
- 10 are you doing ... I'm working

UNIT 27

27.1

- 2 I'm going to buy a newspaper.
- 3 We're going to play football.
- 4 I'm going to have a bath.

27.2

- 3 'm/am going to walk
- 4 's/is going to stay
- 5 'm/am going to eat
- 6 're/are going to give
- 7 's/is going to lie down
- 8 Are you going to watch
- o Are you going to wate
- 9 is Rachel going to do

27.3

- 2 The shelf is going to fall (down).
- 3 The car is going to turn (left).
- 4 He's/He is going to kick the ball.

27.4

Example answers:

- 1 I'm going to phone Ann this evening.
- 2 I'm going to get up early tomorrow.
- 3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.

UNIT 28

28.1

- 2 she'll be 5 she's
- 3 she was 6 she was
- 4 she'll be 7 she'll be

28.2

Example answers:

- 2 I'll be at home.
- 3 I'll probably be in bed.
- 4 I'll be at work.
- 5 I don't know where I'll be.

28.3

- 2 'll/will 5 'll/will
- 3 won't 6 'll/will
- 4 won't 7 won't

28.4

- 3 I think we'll win the game.
- 4 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.
- 5 I think Sue will like her present.
- 6 I don't think they'll get married.
- 7 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.

28.5

- 2 are you doing
- 3 They're going
- 4 she'll lend
- 5 I'm going
- 6 will phone 7 He's working
- 8 Will

UNIT 29

29.1

- 2 I'll send 5 I'll do 3 I'll eat 6 I'll stay
- 4 I'll sit 7 I'll show

29.2

- 2 I think I'll have
- 3 I don't think I'll play
- 4 I don't think I'll buy

- 2 I'll do
- 3 I watch
- 4 I'll go
- 5 is going to buy
- 6 I'll give
- 7 Are you doing ... I'm going

29.4

- 2 Shall I turn off the television?
- 3 Shall I make some sandwiches?
- 4 Shall I turn on the light?

29.5

- 2 where shall we go?
- 3 what shall we buy?
- 4 who shall we invite?

UNIT 30

30.1

- 2 I might see you tomorrow.
- 3 Ann might forget to phone.
- 4 It might snow today.
- 5 I might be late tonight.
- 6 Mary might not be here.
- 7 I might not have time to meet

30.2

- 2 I might go away.
- 3 I might see her on Monday.
- 4 I might have fish.
- 5 I might get/take a taxi. or ... go by taxi.
- 6 I might buy a new car.

- 3 He might get up early.
- 4 He isn't / He's not working tomorrow.
- 5 He might be at home tomorrow morning.
- 6 He might watch television.
- 7 He's going out in the afternoon.
- 8 He might go shopping.

30.4

Example answers:

- 1 I might read a newspaper.
- 2 I might go for a drink with some friends.
- 3 I might have an egg for breakfast.

UNIT 31

31.1

- 2 Can you ski?
- 3 Can you play chess?
- 4 Can you run ten kilometres?
- 5 Can you drive?
- 6 Can you ride a horse?

- 7 I can/can't swim.
- 8 I can/can't ski.
- 9 I can/can't play chess.
- 10 I can/can't run ten kilometres.
- 11 I can/can't drive.
- 12 I can/can't ride a horse.

31.2

- 2 can see
- 4 can't find
- 3 can't hear
- 5 can speak

31.3

- 2 couldn't eat
- 3 can't decide
- 4 couldn't find
- 5 can't go
- 6 couldn't go

31.4

- 2 Can/Could you pass the salt, (please)?
- 3 Can/Could you turn off the radio, (please)?
- 4 Can/Could I have tomato soup, (please)?
- 5 Can/Could you give me your phone number, (please)?
- 6 Can/Could I borrow your pen, (please)? or Can/Could you lend me...?

32.1

- 2 must meet
- 3 must wash
- 4 must learn
- 5 must go
- 6 must win
- 7 must be

32.2

- 2 I must
- 5 I had to
- 3 I had to
- 6 I had to
- 4 I must

- 7 I must

32.3

- 2 needn't hurry
- 3 mustn't lose
- 4 needn't wait
- 5 mustn't forget
- 6 needn't write

32.4

- 2 C 4 E
- 3 A
- 5 B

32.5

- 3 needn't
- 7 must
- 4 had to
- 8 had to
- 5 must
- 9 needn't
- 6 mustn't

UNIT 33

33.1

- 2 You should go
- 3 You should clean
- 4 you should visit
- 5 you should wear
- 6 You should take

33.2

- 2 He shouldn't eat so much.
- 3 She shouldn't work so hard.
- 4 He shouldn't drive so fast.

33.3

- 2 Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
- 3 Do you think I should get another job?
- 4 Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

33.4

- 3 I think you should sell it.
- 4 I think she should have a holiday.
- 5 I don't think they should get
- 6 I don't think you should go to work.
- 7 I think he should go to the doctor.
- 8 I don't think we should stay there.

33.5

Example answers:

- 2 I think everybody should have enough food.
- 3 I think people should drive carefully.
- 4 I don't think the police should carry guns.
- 5 I think I should do more exercise.

34.1

- 2 have to do
- 4 have to speak
- 3 has to read
- 5 has to travel

34.2

- 2 have to go
- 3 had to buy
- 4 have to change
- 5 had to answer

34.3

- 2 did he have to wait
- 3 does she have to go
- 4 did you have to pay
- 5 do you have to do

34.4

- 2 doesn't have to wait.
- 3 didn't have to get up early.
- 4 doesn't have to work (so) hard.
- 5 don't have to leave now.

34.5

- 3 have to pay
- 4 had to borrow
- 5 must stop or have to stop
- 6 has to meet
- 7 must tell or have to tell

34.6

- 2 I have to go to work every day.
- 3 I have to write a letter tomorrow.
- 4 I had to go to the dentist yesterday.

UNIT 35

35.1

- 2 Would you like an apple?
- 3 Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?
- 4 Would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?
- 5 Would you like a sandwich?
- 6 Would you like some cake? / ... a piece of cake?

35.2

- 2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
- 3 Would you like to see my holiday photographs?

- 4 Would you like to go to a concert next week?
- 5 Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

35.3

- 2 Do you like
- 3 Would you like
- 4 would you like
- 5 Would you like
- 6 I like
- 7 would you like
- 8 Would you like
- 9 Do you like
- 10 I'd like

UNIT 36

36.1

- 3 There's / There is a hospital.
- 4 There isn't a swimming pool.
- 5 There are two cinemas.
- 6 There isn't a university.
- 7 There aren't any big hotels.

36.2

Example answers:

- 3 There is a university in ...
- 4 There are a lot of big shops.
- 5 There isn't an airport.
- 6 There aren't many factories.

36.3

- 2 There's / There is
- 3 is there
- 4 There are
- 5 are there
- 6 there isn't
- 7 Is there
- 8 Are there
- 9 There's / There is ... There aren't

36.4

2-6

- There are nine planets in the solar system.
- There are fifteen players in a rugby team.
- There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
- There are thirty days in September.
- There are fifty states in the USA.

36.5

- 2 It's
- 3 There's
- 4 There's ... Is it
- 5 Is there ... there's
- 6 It's
- 7 Is there

UNIT 37

37.1

- 2 There was a carpet
- 3 There were three pictures
- 4 There was a small table
- 5 There were some flowers
- 6 There were some books
- 7 There was an armchair
- 8 There was a sofa

37.2

- 3 There was
- 4 Was there
- 5 there weren't
- 6 There wasn't
- 7 Were there8 There wasn't
- 9 There was
- 10 there weren't

37.3

- 2 There are
- 3 There was
- 4 There's / There is
- 5 There's been / There has been
- 6 there was
- 7 there will be
- 8 there were ... there are
- 9 There have been
- 10 there will be (or there are)

UNIT 38

38.1

- 2 It's cold.
 - 5 It's snowing.
- 3 It's windy.
- 6 It's cloudy.
- 4 It's sunny/fine. or It's a nice day.

- 2 It's / It is 3 Is it
- 6 Is it 7 is it
- 4 is it ... it's / it is
- 8 It's / It is
- 5 It's / It is
- 9 It's / It is

38.3

- 2 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
- 3 How far is it from New York to Washington?
- 4 How far is it from your house to the airport?

38.4

3 It 6 it 4 There 5 It 8 It

38.5

- 2 It's nice to see you again.
- 3 It's impossible to work in this office.
- 4 It's easy to make friends.
- 5 It's interesting to visit different places.
- 6 Ît's dangerous to go out alone

UNIT 39

39.1

- 2 is 5 will 3 can 6 was
- 4 has

39.2

- 2 'm not 5 isn't 6 hasn't 4 haven't
- 4 naven

39.3

3 doesn't 6 does 4 do 7 don't 5 did 8 didn't

39.4

Example answers:

- 2 I like sport but my sister doesn't.
- 3 I don't eat meat but Jenny does.
- 4 I'm American but my husband isn't.
- 5 I haven't been to Japan but Jenny has.

39.5

2 wasn't 7 has 3 are 8 do 4 has 9 hasn't 5 can't 10 will 6 did 11 might

39.6

- 2 Yes, I have. or No, I haven't.
- 3 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't.
- 5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
- 6 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
- 7 Yes, I will. or No, I won't.
- 8 Yes, I have. or No, I haven't.
- 9 Yes, I did. or No, I didn't.
- 10 Yes, I was. or No, I wasn't.

UNIT 40

40.1

- 2 Do you? 5 Do I? 3 Didn't you? 6 Did she?
- 4 Doesn't she?

40.2

- 3 Have you? 8 Aren't you? 4 Can't she? 9 Did you? 5 Were you? 10 Does she? 6 Didn't you? 11 Won't you? 7 Is there? 12 Isn't it?
- 40.3
- 2 aren't they
- 3 wasn't she
- 4 haven't you
- 5 don't you
- 6 doesn't he
- 7 won't you

40.4

2 are you 6 didn't she 3 isn't she 7 was it 4 can't you 8 doesn't she 5 do you 9 will you

UNIT 41

41.1

2 either 5 either 3 too 6 either 7 too

41.2

- 2 So am I.3 So have I.10 Neither am I.
- 4 So do I. 11 Neither do I.
- 5 So will I.
- 6 So was I.
- 7 Neither can I.
- 8 Neither did I.

41.3

- 1 So am I.
- 2 So can I. or I can't.
- 3 Neither am I. or I am.
- 4 So do I. or I don't.
- 5 Neither do I. or I do.
- 6 So did I. or I didn't.
- 7 Neither have I. or I have.
- 8 Neither do I. or I do.
- 9 So am I. or I'm not.
- 10 Neither have I. or I have.
- 11 Neither did I. or I did.
- 12 So do I. or I don't.

UNIT 42

42.

- 2 They aren't / They're not married.
- 3 I haven't had dinner.
- 4 It isn't cold today.
- 5 We won't be late.
- 6 You shouldn't go.

42.2

- 2 I don't like cheese.
- 3 They didn't understand.
- 4 He doesn't live here.
- 5 Don't go away!
- 6 I didn't do the shopping.

42.3

- 2 They haven't arrived.
- 3 I didn't go to the bank:
- 4 He doesn't speak German.
- 5 We weren't angry.
- 6 He won't be pleased.
- 7 Don't phone me tonight.
- 8 It didn't rain yesterday.
- 9 I couldn't hear them. 10 I don't believe you.

- 2 'm not / am not
- 3 can't
- 4 doesn't
- 5 isn't / 's not
- 6 don't ... haven't
- 7 Don't
- 8 didn't
- 9 haven't
- 10 won't
- 11 didn't
- 12 weren't

42.5

- 3 He wasn't born in London.
- 4 He doesn't like London.
- 5 He'd like to live in the country.
- 6 He can drive.
- 7 He hasn't got a car.
- 8 He doesn't read newspapers.
- 9 He isn't interested in politics.
- 10 He watches TV most evenings.
- 11 He didn't watch TV last night.
- 12 He went out last night.

UNIT 43

43.1

- 3 Were you late this morning?
- 4 Has Ann got a key?
- 5 Will you be here tomorrow?
- 6 Is Paul going out this evening?
- 7 Do you like your job?
- 8 Does Linda live near here?
- 9 Did you enjoy your holiday?
- 10 Did you have a shower this morning?

43.2

- 2 Do you use it a lot?
- 3 Did you use it yesterday?
- 4 Do you enjoy driving?
- 5 Are you a good driver?
- 6 Have you ever had an accident?

43.3

- 3 What are the children doing?
- 4 How is cheese made?
- 5 Is your sister coming to the party?
- 6 Why don't you tell the truth?
- 7 Have your guests arrived yet?
- 8 What time does your train leave?
- 9 Was your car damaged in the accident?
- 10 Why didn't Ann go to work?

43.4

- 3 What are you reading?
- 4 What time did she go (to bed)?
- 5 When are they going?
- 6 Where did you meet him?
- 7 Where has she gone?
- 8 Why can't you come (to the party)?
- 9 How much do you need?
- 10 Why doesn't she like you?

- 11 How often does it rain?
- 12 When did you do the shopping?

UNIT 44

44.1

- 2 What fell off the shelf?
- 3 Who wants to see me?
- 4 Who took your umbrella?
- 5 What made you ill?
- 6 Who is/Who's coming?

44.2

- 3 Who did you phone?
- 4 What happened last night?
- 5 Who knows the answer?
- 6 Who did the washing-up?
- 7 What did Jill do?
- 8 What woke you up?
- 9 Who saw the accident?
- 10 Who did you see?
- 11 Who has got / Who's got your pen?
- 12 What does this word mean?

44.3

- 2 Who phoned you? What did she want?
- 3 Who did you ask? What did he say?
- 4 Who got married? Who told you?
- 5 Who did you meet? What did she tell you?
- 6 Who won?
 - What did you do (after the game)?
- 7 Who gave you a book? What did Catherine give you?

UNIT 45

45.

- 2 What are you looking for?
- 3 Who did you go to the cinema with?
- 4 What/Who was the film about?
- 5 Who did you give the money
- 6 Who was the book written by?

45.2

- 2 What are they looking at?
- 3 Who is he writing to?

- 4 What are they talking about?
- 5 What is she listening to?
- 6 Which bus are they waiting for?

45.3

- 2 Which hotel did you stay at?
- 3 Which (football) team does he play for?
- 4 Which school did you go to?

45.4

- 2 What is the food like?
- 3 What are the people like?
- 4 What is the weather like?

45.5

- 2 What was the film like?
- 3 What were the lessons like?
- 4 What was the hotel like?

UNIT 46

46.1

- 3 What colour is it?
- 4 What time did you get up?
- 5 What type of music do you like?
- 6 What kind of car do you want (to buy)?

46.2

- 2 Which coat
- 3 Which film
- 4 Which bus

46.3

- 3 Which
- 8 Who
- 4 What
- 9 What
- 5 Which 6 What
- 10 Which 11 What
- 7 Which

46.4

- 2 How far
- 3 How old
- 4 How often
- 5 How deep
- 6 How long

40 5

- 2 How heavy is this box?
- 3 How old are you?
- 4 How much did you spend?
- 5 How often do you watch TV?
- 6 How far is it from Paris to Moscow?

47.1

- 2 How long does it take by car from Rome to Milan?
- 3 How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?
- 4 How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?

47.2

Example answers:

- 2 It takes ... hours to fly from ... to New York.
- 3 It takes ... years to study to be a doctor in ...
- 4 It takes ... to walk from my home to the nearest shop.
- 5 It takes ... to get from my home to the nearest airport.

47.3

- 2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
- 3 How long did it take him to clean the windows?
- 4 How long did it take you to learn to ski?
- 5 How long did it take them to repair the car?

47.4

- 2 It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / ... to get home.
- 3 It took me six months to learn to drive.
- 4 It took Mark/him two hours to drive to London. / ... to get to London.
- 5 It took Linda a long time to find a job. / ... to get a job.
- 6 It took me ... to ...

UNIT 48

48 1

- 2 I don't know where she is.
- 3 I don't know how old it is.
- 4 I don't know when he'll be here.
- 5 I don't know why he was angry.
- 6 I don't know how long she has lived here.

48.2

- 2 where Susan works
- 3 what Peter said
- 4 why he went home early
- 5 what time the film begins
- 6 how the accident happened

48.3

- 2 are you
- 3 they are
- 4 the museum is
- 5 do you want
- 6 elephants eat

48.4

- 2 Do you know if/whether they are married?
- 3 Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?
- 4 Do you know if/whether George will be here tomorrow?
- 5 Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

48.5

- 2 Do you know where Paula is?
- 3 Do you know if/whether she is working today? / ... she's working today?
- 4 Do you know what time she starts work?
- 5 Do you know if/whether the shops are open tomorrow?
- 6 Do you know where Sarah and Tim live?
- 7 Do you know if/whether they went to Ann's party?

48.6

Example answers:

- 2 Do you know what time the bus leaves?
- 3 Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
- 4 I don't know what I'm going to do this evening.
- 5 Do you know if Tom is working today?

UNIT 49

49.1

- 2 She said (that) she was very busy.
- 3 She said (that) she couldn't go to the party.
- 4 He said (that) he had to go out.
- 5 He said (that) he was learning Russian.
- 6 She said (that) she didn't feel very well.
- 7 They said (that) they would be home late. / ... they'd be ...
- 8 She said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / ... she'd just come back ...
- 9 She said (that) she was going to buy a computer.
- 10 They said (that) they hadn't got a key. / They said (that) they didn't have a key.

49.2

- 2 She said (that) she wasn't hungry.
- 3 he said (that) he needed it.
- 4 she said (that) she didn't want to go.
- 5 She said (that) I could have it.
- 6 He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / ... he'd send ...
- 7 Linda said (that) he had gone home. / ... he'd gone home.
- 8 He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
- 9 She said (that) she was going to the cinema.

49.3

3	said	7	said
4	told	8	told
5	tell	9	tell
6	say	10	say

UNIT 50

- 3 phone
- 4 phone Paul
- 5 to phone Paul
- 6 to phone Paul
- 7 phone Paul
- 8 to phone Paul
- 9 phone Paul
- 10 phone Paul

50.2

- 3 get
- 4 going
- 5 watch
- 6 flying
- 7 listening
- / listelling
- 8 eat
- 9 waiting
- 10 wear
- 11 doing ... staying

50.3

- 4 to go
- 13 having
- 5 rain
- 14 to have
- 6 to leave
- 15 hear
- 7 help
- 16 go
- 8 studying
- 17 listening
- 9 to go
- 18 to make
- 10 wearing 11 to stay
- 19 to know ... tell
- 12 have
- tell 20 use
- UNIT 51

51.1 3 to see

- 4 to swim
- 5 cleaning
- 5 Cleaning
- 6 to go
- 7 visiting
- 8 going
- 9 to be
- 10 waiting
- 11 to do
- 12 to speak
- 13 to ask
- 14 crying / to cry
- 15 to work ... talking

51.2

- 3 reading
- 4 to see
- 5 to send
- 6 walking
- 7 to lose
- 8 to help
- 9 to go
- 10 watching / to watch
- 11 to wait
- 12 raining

51.3

- 2 going/to go to museums.
- 3 writing/to write letters.
- 4 to go (there)

- 5 travelling by train
- 6 going to ... to eat at

51.4

Example answers:

- 1 I enjoy cooking.
- 2 I don't like driving.
- 3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to have a picnic by the lake.
- 4 When I'm on holiday, I like to do very little.
- 5 I don't mind travelling alone but I prefer to travel with somebody.
- 6 I wouldn't like to live in a big city.

UNIT 52

52.

- 2 I want you to listen carefully.
- 3 I don't want you to be angry.
- 4 Do you want me to wait for you?
- 5 I don't want you to phone me tonight.
- 6 I want you to meet Sarah.

52.2

- 2 A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
- 3 I advised him to go to the doctor.
- 4 She asked me to help her.
- 5 I told Tom to come back in ten minutes.
- 6 Paul let me use his phone.
- 7 I told her not to phone before 8 o'clock.
- 8 Ann's mother taught her to play the piano.

52.3

- 2 to repeat
- 3 wait
- 4 to arrive
- 5 to get
- 6 go
- 7 borrow
- 8 to tell
- 9 to make (or to get)
- 10 think

UNIT 53

53.1

- 2-4
 - I went to the café to meet a friend.
 - I went to the post office to get some stamps.
 - I went to the supermarket to buy some food.

53.2

- 2 to read the newspaper.
- 3 to open this door
- 4 to get some fresh air
- 5 to wake him up
- 6 to see who it was

53.3

Example answers:

- 2 to talk to you now.
- 3 to tell her about the party.
- 4 to do some shopping.
- 5 to buy a car.

53.4

- 2 to 7 to
- 3 to 8 to
- 4 for 9 for
- 5 to 10 to ... for
- 6 for

53.5

- 2 for the film to begin.
- 3 for it to arrive.
- 4 for you to tell me.

UNIT 54

- 3 to
- 4 to
- 5 (no preposition)
- 6 for
- 7 to
- 8 on ... to
- 9 for
- 10 on
- 11 to
- 12 (no preposition)
- 13 on
- 14 for
- 15 on

54.2

- 2 went fishing.
- 3 goes swimming
- 4 going skiing.
- 5 go shopping.
- 6 went jogging

54.3

- 2 to the bank
- 3 shopping
- 4 to sleep
- 5 home
- 6 skiing
- 7 riding
- 8 for a walk
- 9 on holiday ... to Portugal

UNIT 55

55.1

- 2 get your jacket
- 3 get a doctor
- 4 get a taxi
- 5 get the job
- 6 get some milk
- 7 get a ticket
- 8 gets a good salary

55.2

- 2 getting dark
- 3 getting married
- 4 getting ready
- 5 getting late

55.3

- 2 get wet
- 6 get old
- 3 got married
- 7 got better
- 4 get angry
- 8 get nervous
- 5 got lost

55.4

- 2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
- 3 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.
- 4 (Example answer) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o'clock.

55.5

- 2 got off
- 3 got out of
- 4 got on

UNIT 56

56.1

- 2 do 7 done 3 make 8 make
- 4 made 9 making 5 did 10 do
- 5 did 6 do
- 11 doing

56.2

- 2 They're/They are doing (their) homework.
- 3 He's/He is doing the shopping. *or* He is shopping.
- 4 She's/She is making a jacket.
- 5 They're/They are doing an exam/examination. (or ... taking an exam.)
- 6 She's/She is doing exercises.
- 7 She's/She is making a phone-call. *or* She's/She is phoning somebody.
- 8 He's/He is making the/his bed.
- 9 She's/She is doing the washing-up. *or* She is washing up. / She is doing the dishes. / She is washing the dishes.
- 10 He's/He is making a (shopping) list.
- 11 They're/They are making a film.
- 12 He's/He is taking a photograph.

56.3

- 2 make 7 did 3 do 8 do 4 done 9 making 5 made 10 made
- 6 doing 11 make ... do

UNIT 57

57.1

- 3 He hasn't got / He doesn't have
- 4 George had
- 5 Have you got / Do you have
- 6 we didn't have
- 7 She hasn't got / She doesn't have
- 8 Did you have

57.2

2 She's/She is having a cup of tea.

- 3 He's/He is having a rest.
- 4 They're/They are having a nice time.
- 5 They're/They are having dinner.
- 6 He's/He is having a bath.

57.3

- 2 Have a nice/good journey!
- 3 Did you have a nice/good weekend?
- 4 Did you have a nice/good game (of tennis)?
- 5 Have a nice/good meal!

57.4

- 2 have something to eat
- 3 had a glass of water
- 4 have a walk
- 5 had an accident
- 6 have a look

UNIT 58

58.1

- 2 him 5 him 3 them 6 them
- 4 her 7 her

58.2

58.3

- 2 I ... them 6 she ... them
- 3 he ... her 7 they ... me

8 she ... you

4 they ... us

5 we ... him

- 2 I like him.
- 3 I don't like it.
- 4 Do you like it?
- 5 I don't like her.
- 6 Do you like them?

58.4

- 2 him 7 them 3 them 8 me
- 4 they 9 her
- 5 us 10 He ... it
- 6 She

- 2 Can you give it to him?
- 3 Can you give them to her?
- 4 Can you give it to me?
- 5 Can you give it to them?
- 6 Can you give them to us?

59.1

- 2 her hands
- 3 our hands
- 4 his hands
- 5 their hands
- 6 your hands

59.2

- 2 They live with their parents.
- 3 We live with our parents.
- 4 Julia lives with her parents.
- 5 I live with my parents.
- 6 John lives with his parents.
- 7 Do you live with your parents?
- 8 Most children live with their parents.

59.3

- 2 their 6 their
- 3 his 7 her
- 4 his 8 their
- 5 her

59.4

- 2 his 8 her
- 3 Their 9 their
- 4 our 10 my
- 5 her 11 Its
- 6 my 12 His ... his
- 7 your

59.5

- 2 my key
- 3 Her husband
- 4 your coat
- 5 their homework
- 6 his name
- 7 Our house

UNIT 60

60.1

- 2 mine
- 6 yours
- 3 ours
- 7 mine
- 4 hers 8 his
- 5 theirs

60.2

- 2 yours
- 3 my ... Mine
- 4 Yours ... mine
- 5 her
- 6 My ... hers

- 7 their
- 8 Ours

60.3

- 3 of hers
- 4 friends of ours
- 5 friend of mine
- 6 friend of his
- 7 friends of yours

60.4

- 2 Whose camera is this? It's hers.
- 3 Whose gloves are these? They're mine.
- 4 Whose hat is this? It's his.
- 5 Whose money is this? It's yours.
- 6 Whose books are these? They're ours.

UNIT 61

61.1

- 2 Yes, I know her but I can't remember her name.
- 3 Yes, I know them but I can't remember their names.
- 4 Yes, I know you but I can't remember your name.

61.2

- 2 to stay with him at his house
- 3 to stay with them at their house
- 4 to stay with me at my house
- 5 to stay with her at her house
- 6 to stay with you at your house?

61.3

- 2 I gave her my address and she gave me hers.
- 3 He gave me his address and I gave him mine.
- 4 We gave them our address and they gave us theirs.
- 5 She gave him her address and he gave her his.
- 6 You gave us your address and we gave you ours.
- 7 They gave you their address and you gave them yours.

61.4

- 2 them 4 our
- 3 him
- 5 yours

6 us 8 their 7 her 9 mine

UNIT 62

62.1

- 2 myself 6 himself 3 herself 7 yourself 4 themselves 8 yourselves
- 5 myself

62.2

- 2 When I saw him, he was by himself.
- 3 Don't go out by yourself.
- 4 I went to the cinema by myself.
- 5 My sister lives by herself.
- 6 Many people live by themselves.

62.3

- 2 They can't see each other.
- 3 They often write to each other.
- 4 They don't know each other.
- 5 They're / They are sitting next to each other.
- 6 They gave each other presents/a present.

62.4

3 each other 7 each other 8 each other 5 us 9 them 10 themselves

UNIT 63

63.1

- 3 Mary is Brian's wife.
- 4 James is Julia's brother.
- 5 James is Daniel's uncle.
- 6 Julia is Paul's wife.
- 7 Mary is Daniel's grandmother.
- 8 Julia is James's sister.
- 9 Paul is Julia's husband.
- 10 Paul is Daniel's father.
- 11 Daniel is James's nephew.

63.2

- 2 Andy's 5 Diane's 3 David's 6 Alice's
- 4 Jane's

- 3 OK
- 4 Bill's phone number

- 5 My brother's job
- 6 OK
- 7 OK
- 8 Paula's favourite colour
- 9 your mother's birthday
- 10 My parents' house
- 11 OK
- 12 OK
- 13 Silvia's party
- 14 OK

UNIT 64

64.1

- 2 a 5 a 8 an
- 3 a 6 an 9 an
- 4 an 7 a

64.2

- 2 a vegetable
- 3 a game
- 4 a tool
- 5 a mountain
- 6 a planet
- 7 a fruit
- 8 a river
- 9 a flower
- 10 a musical instrument

64 3

- 2 He's a shop assistant.
- 3 She's a photographer.
- 4 She's a taxi driver.
- 5 He's an electrician.
- 6 She's a nurse.
- 7 He's a private detective.
- 8 I'm a/an ...

64.4

2-8

Tom never wears a hat.

I can't ride a bicycle.

My brother is **an** artist.

Barbara works in a bookshop.

Ann wants to learn a foreign

language.

Jim lives in **an** old house.

This evening I'm going to

a party.

UNIT 65

65.1

- 2 boats
- 4 cities
- 3 women
- 5 umbrellas

- 6 addresses
- 10 feet
- 7 knives
- 11 holidays
- 8 sandwiches
- 12 potatoes
- 9 families

65.2

- 2 teeth
- 5 fish
- 3 people
- 6 leaves
- 4 children

65.3

- 3 ... with a lot of beautiful trees.
- 4 ... with two men.
- 5 OK
- 6 ... three children.
- 7 Most of my friends are students.
- 8 He put on his pyjamas ...
- 9 OK
- 10 Do you know many people ...
- 11 I like your trousers. Where did you get them?
- 12 ... full of tourists.
- 13 OK
- 14 These scissors aren't ...

65.4

- 2 are
- 7 Do
- 3 don't
- 8 are
- 4 watch
- 9 them
- 5 were
- 10 some
- 6 live

UNIT 66

66.1

- 3 a jug
- 8 money
- 4 milk
- 9 a wallet
- 5 toothpaste
- 10 sand
- 6 a toothbrush
- 11 a bucket
- 7 an egg
- 12 an envelope

66.2

- 3 ... a hat.
- 4 ... a job?
- 5 OK
- 6 ... an apple ...
- 7 ... a party ...
- 8 ... a wonderful thing.
- 9 ... **an** island.
- 10 ... a key.
- 11 OK
- 12 ... **a** good idea.
- 13 ... a car?
- 14 ... a cup of coffee?

- 15 OK
- 16 ... an umbrella.

66.3

- 2 a piece of wood
- 3 a glass of water
- 4 a bar of chocolate
- 5 a cup of tea
- 6 a piece of paper
- 7 a bowl of soup
- 8 a loaf of bread
- 9 a jar of honey

UNIT 67

67.1

- 2 I bought a newspaper (or a paper), some flowers (or a bunch of flowers) and a pen.
- 3 I bought some stamps, some postcards and some bread (or a loaf of bread).
- 4 I bought some toothpaste, some soap (or a bar of soap) and a comb.

67.2

- 2 Would you like some coffee? (or ... a cup of coffee?)
- 3 Would you like a biscuit?
- Would you like some bread? (or ... a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
- 5 Would you like a chocolate?
- 6 Would you like some chocolate? (or ... a piece of chocolate?)

67.3

- 2 some ... some
- 3 some
- 4 a ... some
- 5 an ... some
- 6 a ... a ... some
- 7 some 8 some
- 9 some ... a

- 2 eyes
- 3 hair
- 4 information
- 5 chairs
- 6 furniture
- 7 job
- 8 lovely weather

68.1

- 3 a
- 4 the
- 5 an
- 6 the ... the
- 7 a ... a
- 8 a ... a
- 9 ... a student ... a journalist ... a flat near the college ... The flat is ...
- 10 ... two children, **a** boy and **a** girl. **The** boy is seven years old and **the** girl is three ... in **a** factory ... hasn't got **a** job ...

68.2

- 2 the airport
- 3 a cup
- 4 a nice picture
- 5 the radio
- 6 the floor

68.3

- 2 ... send me a postcard.
- 3 What is the name of ...
- 4 ... a very big country.
- 5 What is **the** largest ...
- 6 ... the colour of the carpet.
- 7 ... a headache.
- 8 ... an old house near the station.
- 9 ... the name of the director of the film ...

UNIT 69

69.1

- 3 ... **the** second floor.
- 4 ... the moon?
- 5 ... the best hotel in this town?
- 6 OK
- 7 ... the city centre.
- 8 ... the end of May.
- 9 OK
- 10 ... the first time I met her.
- 11 OK
- 12 What's **the** biggest city in **the** world?
- 13 OK
- 14 My dictionary is on **the** top shelf on **the** right.
- 15 We live in **the** country about five miles from **the** nearest village.

69.2

- 2 the same time
- 3 the same age
- 4 the same colour
- 5 the same problem

69.3

- 2 the guitar
- 3 breakfast
- 4 the radio
- 5 television/TV
- 6 the sea

69.4

- 2 the name
- 3 The sky
- 4 television
- 5 the police
- 6 the capital
- 7 lunch
- 8 the middle

UNIT 70

70.1

- 2 the cinema
- 3 hospital
- 4 the airport
- 5 home
- 6 prison

70.2

- 3 school
- 4 the station
- 5 home
- 6 bed
- 7 the post office

70.3

- 2 the cinema
- 3 go to bed
- 4 go to prison
- 5 go to the dentist
- 6 go to university/college
- 7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital

70.4

- 3 the doctor
- 4 OK
- 5 OK
- 6 OK
- 7 the bank
- 8 OK
- 9 OK
- 10 the city centre

- 11 the station
- 12 OK
- 13 OK
- 14 OK
- 15 the theatre

UNIT 71

71.1

Example answers:

- 2 I don't like dogs.
- 3 I don't mind museums.
- 4 I love big cities.
- 5 I like basketball.
- 6 I love TV quiz shows.
- 7 I don't like loud music.
- 8 I hate computer games.

71.2

Example answers:

- 2 I'm not interested in politics.
- 3 I'm interested in sport.
- 4 I don't know much about art.
- 5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
- 6 I know a little about economics.

71.3

- 3 friends
- 4 parties
- 5 The shops
- 6 the milk
- 7 milk
- 8 football
- 9 computers
- 10 The water
- 11 cold water
- 12 the salt
- 13 the people
- 14 Vegetables
- 15 the children
- 16 **the** words
- 17 photographs
- 18 the photographs19 English ... international business
- 20 Money ... happiness

HOUT 7

- 3 Sweden
- 4 The Amazon
- 5 Asia
- 6 The Pacific

- 7 The Rhine
- 8 Kenya
- 9 The United States
- 10 The Andes
- 11 Tokyo
- 12 The Alps
- 13 The Red Sea
- 14 Malta
- 15 The Bahamas

72.2

- 3 OK
- 4 the Philippines
- 5 the south of France
- 6 the Regal Cinema
- 7 OK
- 8 the Museum of Modern Art
- 9 OK
- 10 Belgium is smaller than the Netherlands.
- 11 the Mississippi ... the Nile
- 12 the National Gallery
- 13 the Park Hotel in Hudson Road
- 14 OK
- 15 The Rocky Mountains are in North America.
- 16 OK
- 17 The Panama Canal joins the Atlantic Ocean and the Pacific Ocean.
- 18 the United States
- 19 the west of Ireland
- 20 OK

73.1

- 2 that house
- 3 these postcards
- 4 those birds
- 5 this seat
- 6 These plates

73.2

- 2 Is that your umbrella?
- 3 Is this your book?
- 4 Are those your books?
- 5 Is that your bicycle?
- 6 Are these your keys?
- 7 Are those your keys?
- 8 Is this your watch?
- 9 Are those your glasses?
- 10 Are these your gloves?

73.3

- 2 that's 6 this is
- 7 That's 3 This is
- 4 That's 8 that's
- 5 that

UNIT 74

74.1

- 2 I don't need one.
- 3 I'm going to buy one.
- 4 I haven't got one.
- 5 I've just had one.
- 6 there's one in Mill Road.

74.2

- 2 a new one
- 3 a better one
- 4 an old one
- 5 a big one
- 6 a different one

74.3

- 2 Which ones?
 - The green ones.
- 3 Which one? The one with a/the red door.
- 4 Which one?
 - The black one.
- 5 Which ones?
 - The ones on the wall.
- 6 Which ones?
 - The ones on the top shelf.
- 7 Which one?
 - The tall one with long hair.
- 8 Which ones?
 - The yellow ones.
- 9 Which one?
- - The one with a moustache and glasses.
- 10 Which ones?
 - The ones you took on the beach last week.

UNIT 75

75.1

- 2 some
 - - 9 some
- 3 any
- 8 some
- 4 any
- 10 any ... any
- 5 any
- 11 some ... any
- 6 some
- 12 some
- 7 any

75.2

- 2 some letters
- 3 any photographs
- 4 any foreign languages
- 5 some friends
- 6 some milk
- 7 any batteries
- 8 some fresh air
- 9 some cheese
- 10 any help

75.3

- 3 I've got some / I have some
- 4 I haven't got any / I haven't any / I don't have any
- 5 I didn't buy any
- 6 I bought some

75.4

- 2 something
- 3 anything
- 4 anything
- 5 Somebody/Someone
- 6 anything
- 7 anybody/anyone
- 8 something
- 9 anything
- 10 anybody/anyone

76.1

- 2 There are no shops near here.
- 3 Carol has got no free time.
- 4 There is no light in this room.
- 6 There isn't any tea in the pot.
- 7 There aren't any buses today.
- 8 Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

12 any

76.2

- 2 any 8 no
- 3 any 9 any 4 no
- 10 no 5 any 11 None
- 6 no 7 any

- 2 no money
- 3 any questions
- 4 no friends
- 5 no difference
- 6 any furniture
- 7 no answer

- 8 any heating
- 9 any photographs ... no film

76.4

Example answers:

- 2 Three.
- 3 Two cups.
- 4 None.
- 5 None.

UNIT 77

77.1

- 2 There's nobody in the office.
- 3 I've got nothing to do.
- 4 There's nothing on TV.
- 5 There was no-one at home.
- 6 We found nothing.

77.2

- 2 There wasn't anybody on the bus.
- 3 I haven't got anything to read.
- 4 I haven't got anyone to help me.
- 5 She didn't hear anything.
- 6 We haven't got anything for dinner.

77.3

- 3a Nothing.
- 4a Nobody./No-one.
- 5a Nobody./No-one.
- 6a Nothing.
- 7a Nothing.
- 8a Nobody./No-one.
- 3b I don't want anything.
- 4b I didn't meet anybody/anyone.
- 5b Nobody/No-one knows the answer.
- 6b I didn't buy anything.
- 7b Nothing happened.
- 8b Nobody/No-one was late.

77.4

- 3 anything
- 4 Nobody/No-one
- 5 Nothing
- 6 anything
- 7 anybody/anyone
- 8 nothing
- 9 anything
- 10 anything
- 11 nobody/no-one
- 12 anything
- 13 Nothing

14 Nobody/No-one ... anybody/anyone

UNIT 78

78.1

- 2 something
- 3 somewhere
- 4 somebody/someone

78.2

- 2a Nowhere.
- 3a Nothing.
- 4a Nobody./No-one.
- 2b I'm not going anywhere.
- 3b I don't want anything.
- 4b I'm not looking for anybody/anyone.

78.3

- 3 anything
- 4 anything
- 5 somebody/someone
- 6 something
- 7 anybody/anyone ... nobody/ no-one
- 8 anything
- 9 Nobody/No-one
- 10 anybody/anyone
- 11 Nothing
- 12 anywhere
- 13 somewhere
- 14 anything
- 15 anybody/anyone

78.4

- 2 anything to eat
- 3 nothing to do
- 4 anywhere to sit
- 5 something to drink
- 6 nowhere to stay
- 7 something to read
- 8 somewhere to play

UNIT 79

79.1

- 2 Every day
- 3 every time
- 4 Every room
- 5 every word

79.2

- 2 every day
- 3 all day

- 4 every day
- 5 all day
- 6 every day
- 7 all day

79.3

- 2 every 6 all
- 3 all 7 every
- 4 all 8 all
- 5 Every 9 every

79.4

- 2 everything
- 3 Everybody/Everyone
- 4 everything
- 5 everywhere
- 6 Everybody/Everyone
- 7 everywhere
- 8 Everything

79.5

- 2 is 5 has
- 3 has 6 was
- 4 likes 7 makes

HALL SO

80.1

- 3 Some 10 Most
- 4 Most of 11 most of
- 5 most
- 12 Some
- 6 any of 7 all or all of
- 14 some of

13 All or All of

- 8 None of
- 15 most of
- 9 any of

80.2

- 2 All of them.
- 3 Some of them.
- 4 None of them.
- 5 Most of them.6 None of it.

- 3 Some people ...
- 4 Some of **the** questions ... or Some questions ...
- 5 OK
- 6 All insects ...
- 7 OK (or ... all of these books)
- 8 Most of **the** students ... or Most students ...
- 9 OK
- 10 ... most of the night

81.1

- 9 Neither 3 Both 4 Neither 10 either of 5 Neither 11 Both
- 12 neither of 6 both 7 Either 13 Both
- 14 either of 8 neither of

81.2

- 2 Both windows are open.
- 3 Neither man is wearing a hat.
- 4 Both men have (got) cameras. or ... are carrying cameras.
- 5 Both buses go to the airport. or ... are going to the airport.
- 6 Neither answer is right.

81.3

- 3 Both of them are students.
- 4 Neither of them has (got) a car.
- 5 Both of them live in London.
- 6 Both of them like cooking.
- 7 Neither of them can play the piano.
- 8 Both of them read newspapers.
- 9 Neither of them is interested in sport.

82.1

- 2 many 8 many 9 How many 3 much 10 How much 4 many
- 5 many 11 How much 12 How many
- 6 much 7 much

82.2

- 2 much time
- 3 many countries
- 4 many people
- 5 much luggage
- 6 many times

- 2 a lot of interesting things
- 3 a lot of accidents
- 4 a lot of fun
- 5 a lot of traffic

82.4

- 3 a lot of snow
- 4 OK

- 5 a lot of money
- 6 OK
- 7 OK
- 8 a lot

82.5

- 3 She plays tennis a lot.
- 4 He doesn't use his car much. (or ... a lot.)
- 5 He doesn't go out much. (or ... a lot.)
- 6 She travels a lot.

UNIT 83

83.1

- 5 a little 2 a few 3 a little 6 a few
- 4 a few

83.2

- 2 a little milk
- 3 A few days
- 4 a little Russian
- 5 a few friends
- 6 a few times
- 7 a few chairs
- 8 a little fresh air

- 2 very little coffee
- 3 very little rain
- 4 very few hotels
- 5 very little time
- 6 Very few people
- 7 very little work

83.4

2 A few 5 few 3 a little 6 a little 4 little 7 little

83.5

- 2 ... a little luck
- 3 ... a few things
- 4 OK
- 5 ... a few questions
- 6 ... few people

84.1

- 2 I like that green jacket.
- 3 Do you like classical music?

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.
- 5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

84.2

- 2 black clouds
- 3 long holiday
- 4 hot water
- 5 fresh air
- 6 sharp knife
- 7 dangerous job

- 2 It looks new.
- 3 I feel ill.
- 4 You look surprised.
- 5 They smell nice.
- 6 It tastes horrible.

84.4

- 2 It doesn't look new.
- 3 You don't sound American.
- 4 I don't feel cold.
- 5 They don't look heavy.
- 6 It doesn't taste good.

UNIT 85

85.1

- 2 badly 5 fast
- 3 quietly
- 6 dangerously 4 angrily

85.2

- 2 Come quickly
- 3 work hard
- 4 sleep well
- 5 win easily
- 6 Think carefully
- 7 know her very well
- 8 explain things very clearly/well

85.3

- 2 angry 7 suddenly 3 slowly 8 quiet
- 4 slow 9 badly 5 careful 10 nice (See Unit
- 6 hard 84.)

- 2 well 5 well
- 6 good ... good 3 good
- 4 well

86.1

- 2 bigger
- 3 slower
- 4 more expensive
- 5 higher
- 6 more dangerous

86.2

- 2 stronger
- 3 happier
- 4 more modern
- 5 more important
- 6 better
- 7 larger
- 8 more serious
- 9 prettier
- 10 more crowded

86.3

- 2 hotter/warmer
- 3 more expensive
- 4 worse
- 5 further
- 6 more difficult or harder

86.4

- 3 taller
- 4 harder
- 5 more comfortable
- 6 better
- 7 nicer
- 8 heavier
- 9 more interested
- 10 warmer
- 11 better
- 12 bigger
- 13 more beautiful
- 14 sharper
- 15 more polite

UNIT 87

87.1

- 3 Liz is taller than Ben.
- 4 Liz starts work earlier than Ben.
- 5 Ben works harder than Liz.
- 6 Ben has got more money than Liz.
- 7 Liz is a better driver than Ben.
- 8 Ben is more patient than Liz.
- 9 Ben is a better dancer than Liz./ Ben dances better than Liz.
- Liz is more intelligent than Ben.

- 11 Liz speaks French better than Ben. / Liz speaks better French than Ben. / Liz's French is better than Ben's.
- 12 Ben goes to the cinema more than Liz. / ... more often than Liz.

87.2

- 2 You're older than her. / ... than she is.
- 3 You work harder than me. / ... than I do.
- 4 You watch TV more than him. / ... than he does.
- 5 You're a better cook than me. / ... than I am. or
 You cook better than me. / ... than I do.
- 6 You know more people than us. / ... than we do.
- 7 You've got more money than them. / ... than they have.
- 8 You can run faster than me. / ... than I can.
- 9 You've been here longer than her. / ... than she has.
- 10 You got up earlier than them. / ... than they did.
- 11 You were more surprised than him. / ... than he was.

87.3

- 2 Jack's mother is much younger than his father.
- 3 My camera cost a bit more than yours. / ... than your camera. or My camera was a bit more expensive than ...
- 4 I feel much better today than yesterday. / ... than I did yesterday. / ... than I felt yesterday.
- 5 It's a bit warmer today than yesterday. / ... than it was yesterday.
- 6 Ann is a much better tennis player than me / than I am. or Ann is much better at tennis than me / than I am. or Ann plays tennis much better than me / than I do.

UNIT 88

88.1

- 2 A is longer than B but not as long as C.
- 3 C is heavier than A but not as heavy as B.
- 4 A is older than C but not as old as B.
- 5 B has got more money than C but not as much as A.
 or ... but less (money) than A.
- 6 C works harder than A but not as hard as B.

88.2

- 2 Your room isn't as big as mine. / ... as my room.
- 3 I didn't get up as early as you. / ... as you did.
- 4 They didn't play as well as us. / ... as we did.
- 5 You haven't been here as long as me. / ... as I have.
- 6 He isn't as nervous as her. / ... as she is.

88.3

- 2 as 6 than
- 3 than 7 as
- 4 than 8 than
- 5 as

88.4

- 2 Julia lives in the same street as Caroline.
- 3 Julia got up at the same time as Andrew.
- 4 Andrew's car is the same colour as Caroline's.

UNIT 89

- 2 C is longer than A.D is the longest.B is the shortest.
- 3 D is younger than C.B is the youngest.C is the oldest.
- 4 D is more expensive than A. C is the most expensive.
- A is the cheapest.

 5 A is better than C.
- A is the best.
 - D is the worst.

89.2

- 2 the happiest day
- 3 the best film
- 4 the most popular singer
- 5 the worst mistake
- 6 the prettiest village
- 7 the coldest day
- 8 the most boring person

89.3

- 2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- 3-6
 - Alaska is the largest state in the USA.
 - Brazil is the largest country in South America.
 - Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.
 - The Nile is the longest river in Africa. / ... in the world.

UNIT 90

90.1

- 2 enough chairs
- 3 enough paint
- 4 enough wind

90.2

- 2 The car isn't big enough.
- 3 His legs aren't long enough.
- 4 He isn't strong enough.

90.3

- 3 old enough
- 4 enough time
- 5 big enough
- 6 eat enough
- 7 enough fruit
- 8 tired enough
- 9 practise enough

90.4

- 2 sharp enough to cut
- 3 warm enough to have
- 4 enough bread to make
- 5 well enough to win
- 6 enough time to read

UNIT 91

91.1

- 2 too heavy
- 3 too low

- 4 too fast
- 5 too big
- 6 too crowded

91.2

- 3 enough
- 8 enough
- 4 too many
- 9 too
- 5 too
- 10 too many
- 6 enough
- 11 too much
- 7 too much

91.3

- 3 It's too far.
- 4 It's too expensive.
- 5 It isn't / It's not big enough.
- 6 It was too difficult.
- 7 It isn't good enough.
- 8 I'm too busy.
- 9 It was too long.

91.4

- 2 too early to go to bed.
- 3 too young to get married.
- 4 too dangerous to go out at night.
- 5 too late to phone Ann (now).
- 6 too surprised to say anything.

UNIT 92

92.1

- 3 I like this picture very much.
- 4 Tom started his new job last week.
- 5 OK
- 6 Jane bought a present for her friend. or Jane bought her friend a present.
- 7 I drink three cups of coffee every day.
- 8 OK
- 9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother.

92.2

- 2 I wrote two letters this morning.
- 3 Paul passed the exam easily.
- 4 Ann doesn't speak French very well.
- 5 I did a lot of work yesterday.
- 6 Do you know London well?
- 7 We enjoyed the party very much.
- 8 I explained the problem carefully.
- 9 We met some friends at the airport.

- 10 Did you buy that jacket in England?
- 11 We do the same thing every day.
- 12 I don't like football very much.

92.3

- 2 I arrived at the hotel early.
- 3 Julia goes to Italy every year.
- 4 We have lived here since 1988.
- 5 Sue was born in London in 1960.
- 6 Paul didn't go to work yesterday.
- 7 Ann went to the bank yesterday afternoon.
- 8 I had my breakfast in bed this morning.
- 9 Barbara is going to university in October.
- 10 I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.
- 11 My parents have been to the United States many times.
- 12 I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.
- 13 Are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?
- 14 I took the children to school this morning.

UNIT 93

93.1

- 2 He always gets up early.
- 3 He's / He is never late for work.
- 4 He sometimes gets angry.
- 5 He often goes swimming.
- 6 He's / He is usually at home in the evenings.

- 2 Susan is always polite.
- 3 I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
- 4 Jill has just started a new job.
- 5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
- 6 The bus isn't usually late.
- 7 I don't often eat fish.
- 8 I will never forget what you said.
- 9 Have you ever lost your passport?
- 10 Do you still work in the same place?

- 11 They always stay in the same hotel.
- 12 Diane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
- 13 Is Tina already here?
- 14 What do you usually have for breakfast?
- 15 I can never remember his name.

93.3

- 2 Yes, and I also speak French.
- 3 Yes, and I'm also hungry.
- 4 Yes, and I've also been to Ireland.
- 5 Yes, and I also bought some books.

93.4

- They both play football. They're/They are both students.
 - They've both got cars./They both have cars.
- 2 They are/They're all married. They were all born in England. They all live in New York.

UNIT 94

94.1

- 2 Do you still live in Clare Street?
- 3 Are you still a student?
- 4 Have you still got a motor-bike? / Do you still have ...
- 5 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
- 6 Do you still want to be a teacher?

94 2

- 2 He was looking for a job. He's/He is still looking (for a job).
 - He hasn't found a job yet.
- 3 She was asleep/sleeping. or She was in bed.
 - She's/She is still asleep/sleeping. or ... still in bed.
 - She hasn't woken up yet. / She hasn't got up yet. / She isn't awake yet. / She isn't up yet.
- 4 They were having dinner. / They were eating.
 - They're / They are still having dinner. / ... still eating.

They haven't finished (dinner) yet. / They haven't finished eating yet.

94.3

- 2 Is Ann here yet? or Has Ann arrived/come yet?
- 3 Have you got your (exam) results yet? / Have you had your... / Have you received your...
- 4 Have you decided where to go yet? / Do you know where you're going yet?

94.4

- 3 She's/She has already gone/left.
- 4 I've already got one. / I already have one.
- 5 I've/I have already paid (it).
- 6 he already knows.

UNIT 95

95.1

- 2 He gave it to Gary.
- 3 He gave them to Sarah.
- 4 He gave it to his sister.
- 5 He gave them to Robert.
- 6 He gave it to a neighbour.

95.2

- 2 I gave Joanna a plant.
- 3 I gave Richard some gloves / a pair of gloves.
- 4 I gave Diane some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
- 5 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.
- 6 I gave Kevin a pen.

95.3

- 2 Can you lend me an umbrella?
- 3 Can you give me your address?
- 4 Can you lend me ten pounds?
- 5 Can you send me some information?
- 6 Can you show me the letter?
- 7 Can you get me some stamps?

95.4

- 2 lend you some money
- 3 send the letter to me
- 4 buy you a present
- 5 pass me the sugar

- 6 give it to her
- 7 the policeman my identity card

96.	1			
	at	11	at	
	on	12		
	in	13		
6	in	14		
7	on	15	at	
8	on	16	at	
9	at	17	at	
10	on	18	in	
96.	2			
2	on	11	at	
3	at	12	on	
4	in	13	in	
5	in	14	at	
6	in	15	in	
7	on	16	on	
	on	17	in	
9	in	18	at	

96.3

- 2 on Friday
- 3 on Monday
- 4 at 4 o'clock on Thursday / on Thursday at 4 o'clock
- 5 on Saturday evening
- 6 at 2.30 on Tuesday (afternoon) / on Tuesday (afternoon) at 2.30

96.4

- 2 I'll phone you in three days.
- 3 My exam is in two weeks.
- 4 Tom will be here in half an hour. / ... in 30 minutes.

- 3 in
- 4 (no preposition)
- 5 (no preposition)
- 6 in
- 7 at
- 8 (no preposition)
- 9 (no preposition)
- 10 on
- 11 in
- 12 at

97.1

- 2 Alex lived in Canada until
- 3 Alex has lived in England since
- 4 Alice lived in France until 1991.
- 5 Alice has lived in Switzerland since 1991.
- 6 Carol worked in a hotel from 1990 to 1993.
- 7 Carol has worked in a restaurant since 1993.
- 8 Gerry was a teacher from 1983 to 1989.
- 9 Gerry has been a salesman since 1989.
- 11 Alex has lived in England for years.
- 12 Alice has lived in Switzerland for years.
- 13 Carol worked in a hotel for three years.
- 14 Carol has worked in a restaurant for years.
- 15 Gerry was a teacher for six years.
- 16 Gerry has been a salesman for years.

97.2

2	until	9	since
3	for	10	until
4	since	1,1	for
5	Until	12	until
6	for	13	Since
7	for	14	for

8 until

- 2 after lunch
- 3 before the end
- 4 during the course
- 5 before they went to Australia
- 6 during the night
- 7 while you are waiting
- 8 after the concert

98.2

- 3 while
- 4 for

- 5 while
- 6 during
- 7 while
- 8 for
- 9 during
- 10 while

98.3

- 2 eating
- 3 answering
- 4 having/taking
- 5 finishing/doing
- 6 going/travelling

- 2 John worked in a bookshop for two years after leaving school.
- 3 Before going to sleep, I read a few pages of my book.
- 4 After walking for three hours, we were very tired.
- 5 Let's have a cup of coffee before going out.

99.1

- 2 In the box.
- 3 On the box.
- 4 On the wall.
- 5 At the bus stop.
- 6 **In** the field.
- 7 **On** the balcony.
- 8 In the pool.
- 9 At the window.
- 10 On the ceiling.
- 11 On the table.
- 12 At the table.

99.2

- 2 in
- 3 on
- 4 in
- 5 on
- 6 at
- 7 in
- 8 in
- 9 at
- 10 at
- 11 in
- 12 at
- 13 on
- 15 **on** the wall **in** the living room

UNIT 100

100.1

- 2 At the airport.
- 3 In bed.
- 4 On a ship.
- 5 In the sky.
- 6 At a party.
- 7 At the doctor's.
- 8 On the second floor.
- 9 At work.
- 10 On a plane.
- 11 In a taxi.
- 12 At a wedding.

100.2

2	in	9	in
3	in	10	in
4	at	11	on
5	at	12	on
6	in	13	at
7	at	14	in
8	at	15	on

UNIT 101

101.1

2	to	6	to
3	in	7	to
4	to	8	in
5	in		

101.2

3 to

4 to

5 at home ... to work

- (no preposition)

8 to

9 at

10 at a restaurant ... to the hotel

101.3

2	to	9	to
3	to	10	at
4	in	11	at
_			

12 to Mary's house 5 to ... at home 6 to

7 at 13 - (no preposition)

8 to 14 study at ... go to

101.4

- 1 to
- 2 (no preposition)
- 3 at
- 4 in
- 5 to
- 6 (no preposition)

101.5

Example answers:

- 2 to work.
- 3 at work.
- 4 to Canada.
- 5 to parties.
- 6 at a friend's house.

UNIT 102

102.1

- 2 next to / beside / by
- 3 in front of
- 4 between
- 5 next to / beside / by
- 6 in front of
- 7 behind
- 8 on the left
- 9 in the middle

102.2

- 2 behind
- 3 above
- 4 in front of
- 5 on
- 6 by / next to / beside
- 7 below / under
- 8 above
- 9 under
- 10 by / next to / beside
- 11 opposite
- 12 on

102.3

- 2 The fountain is in front of the theatre.
- 3 The bank/bookshop is opposite the theatre. *or* Paul's office is opposite the theatre. *or*
 - The theatre is opposite ...
- 4 The bank/bookshop/ supermarket is next to ...
- 5 Paul's office is above the bookshop.
- 6 The bookshop is between the bank and the supermarket.

UNIT 103

103.1

- 2 Go under the bridge.
- 3 Go up the hill.
- 4 Go down the steps.
- 5 Go along this street.
- 6 Go into the hotel.
- 7 Go past the hotel.
- 8 Go out of the hotel.
- 9 Go over the bridge.
- 10 Go through the park.

103.2

- 2 off
- 3 over
- 4 out of
- 5 across
- 6 round/around
- 7 through
- 8 on
- 9 round/around
- 10 **into** the house **through** a window

103.3

- 1 out of
- 2 round/around
- 3 in
- 4 from here to the airport
- 5 round/around
- 6 on/over
- 7 over
- 8 out of

UNIT 104

104.1

- 2 on time
- 3 on holiday
- 4 on the phone
- 5 on television

104.2

- 2 by
- 3 with
- 4 about
- 5 on
- 6 by
- 7 at
- 8 on
- 9 with
- 10 **about** grammar **by** Vera P. Bull

104.3

1 with 9 at
2 without 10 by
3 by 11 about
4 about 12 by
5 at 13 on
6 by 14 with

15 by

16 by

HWIT 105

105.1

7 on

8 with

- 2 in
- 3 to
- 4 at
- 5 with
- 6 of

105.2

- 2 at
- 3 to
- 4 about
- 5 of
- 6 of
- 7 from
- 8 in
- 9 of 10 about
- 11 . 6
- 11 of
- 12 for getting angry with you

105 3

- 2 interested in going
- 3 good at getting
- 4 fed up with waiting
- 5 sorry for waking

105.4

- 2 Sue walked past me without speaking.
- 3 Don't do anything without asking me first.
- 4 I went out without locking the door.

105.5

Example answers:

- 2 I'm afraid of the dark.
- 3 I'm not very good at drawing.
- 4 I'm not interested in cars.
- 5 I'm fed up with living in London.

UNIT 106

106.1

2 to 5 at 3 for 6 for

4 to

106.2

2 to

3 to

4 for

5 to

6 of/about

7 for

8 on

9 to

10 for

11 to

12 - (no preposition)

13 to

14 on

15 of/about

106.3

1 at 4 after, 2 after 5 at

3 for

106.4

Example answers:

3 It depends on the programme.

6 for

4 It depends (on) what it is.

5 It depends on the weather.

6 It depends (on) how much you want.

UNIT 107

107.1

2 went in

3 looked up

4 rode off

5 turned round/around or looked round/around

6 got off

7 sat down

8 got out

107.2

2 away/out

3 round/around

4 going out ... be back

5 down

6 over

7 back

8 in

9 up

10 going away ... coming back

107.3

2 Hold on

3 slowed down

4 takes off

5 get on

6 speak up

7 broken down

8 fall over / fall down

9 carried on

10 gave up

UNIT 108

108.1

2 She took off her hat. or She took her hat off.

3 He put down his bag. or He put his bag down.

4 She picked up the magazine. *or* She picked the magazine up.

5 He put on his sunglasses. or He put his sunglasses on.

6 She turned off the tap. or She turned the tap off.

108.2

2 He put his jacket on. He put it on.

3 She took off her glasses. She took them off.

4 Put your pens down. Put them down.

5 They gave the money back. They gave it back.

6 I turned off the lights. I turned them off.

108.3

2 take it back

3 picked them up

4 switched it off

5 bring them back

108 4

3 I knocked over a glass / I knocked a glass over

4 look it up

5 throw them away

6 fill it in

7 tried on a pair of shoes / tried a pair of shoes on

8 showed me round (or around)

9 gave it up or gave up (without it)

10 put out your cigarette / put your cigarette out

UNIT 109

109.1

3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.

4 I wanted to phone you but I didn't have your number.

5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.

6 I usually drive to work but I went by bus this morning.

7 Do you want me to come with you or shall I wait here?

109.2

Example answers:

2 because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.

3 but it was closed.

4 so he didn't eat anything. / so he didn't want anything to eat.

5 because there was a lot of traffic./ because the traffic was bad.

6 Sue said goodbye, got into her car and drove off/away.

109.3

Example answers:

3 I went to the cinema **but** the film wasn't very good.

4 I went to a café **and** met some friends of mine.

5 There was a film on television, **so** I watched it.

6 I got up in the middle of the night **because** I couldn't sleep.

UNIT 110

110.1

2 When I'm tired, I like to watch TV.

3 When I phoned her, there was no answer.

4 When I go on holiday, I always go to the same place.

5 When the programme ended, I switched off the TV.

6 When I arrived at the hotel, there were no rooms.

110.2

- 2 when they heard the news
- 3 they went to live in New Zealand
- 4 while they were away
- 5 before they came here
- 6 somebody broke into the house
- 7 they didn't believe me

110.3

- 2 I finish
- 3 it's
- 4 I'll be ... she leaves
- 5 stops
- 6 We'll come ... we're
- 7 I come ... I'll bring
- 8 I'm
- 9 I'll give ... I go

110.4

Example answers:

- 2 you finish your work?
- 3 I'll write some letters.
- 4 you get ready.
- 5 I won't have much free time.
- 6 I come back?

UNIT 111

111.1

- 2 If you pass the exam, you'll get a certificate.
- 3 If you fail the exam, you can do it again.
- 4 If you don't want this magazine, I'll throw it away.
- 5 If you want those pictures, you can have them.
- 6 If you're busy now, we can talk later.
- 7 If you're hungry, we can have lunch now.
- 8 If you need money, I can lend you some.

111.2

- 2 I give
- 3 is
- 4 I'll phone
- 5 I'll be ... get
- 6 Will you go ... they invite

111 3

Example answers:

- 3 ... the water is dirty.
- 4 ... you'll feel better in the morning.

- 5 ... you're not watching it.
- 6 ... she doesn't study.
- 7 ... I'll go and see Chris.
- 8 ... the weather is good.

111.4

- 2 When
- 3 If
- 4 If
- 5 if
- 6 When
- 7 if
- 8 when ... if

UNIT 112

112.1

- 3 wanted
- 4 had
- 5 was/were
- 6 didn't enjoy
- 7 could
- 8 spoke
- 9 didn't have

112.2

- 3 I'd go / I would go
- 4 she knew
- 5 we had
- 6 you won
- 7 I wouldn't stay
- 8 we lived
- 9 It would be
- 10 the salary was/were
- 11 I wouldn't know
- 12 would you change

112.3

- 2 I'd watch it / I would watch it
- 3 we had some pictures on the wall
- 4 the air would be cleaner
- 5 every day was/were the same
- 6 I'd be bored / I would be bored
- 7 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
- 8 we would/could buy a bigger house

112.4

Example answers:

- 2 I'd go to Antarctica
- 3 I didn't have any friends
- 4 I had enough money
- 5 I'd call the police
- 6 there were no guns

UNIT 113

113.1

- 2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
- 3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
- 4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
- 5 A dentist is a person who looks after your teeth.
- 6 A fool is a person who is very stupid.
- 7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
- 8 A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

113.2

- 2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
- 3 Most of the students who took the exam passed (it).
- 4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn't very friendly.

113.3

- 2 who
- 3 which
- 4 which
- 5 who
- 6 which
- 7 who
- 8 who
- 9 which

that is also correct in all these sentences.

113.4

- 3 ... a machine **that/which** makes coffee.
- 4 OK (which is also correct)
- 5 ... people who/that never stop talking.
- 6 OK (who is also correct)
- 7 OK (that is also correct)
- 8 ... the sentences **that/which** are wrong.

KEY TO EXERCISES

UNIT 114

114.1

- 2 I've lost the pen you gave me.
- 3 I like the jacket Sue is wearing.
- 4 Where are the flowers I gave you?
- 5 I didn't believe the story he told
- 6 How much were the oranges you bought?

114.2

2 The meal you cooked was excellent.

- 3 The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.
- 4 The people we invited to dinner didn't come.

114.3

- 2 Who are the people you spoke to?
- 3 Did you find the keys you were looking for?
- 4 The house they live in is too small for them.
- 5 The map I looked at wasn't very clear.
- 6 I fell off the chair I was sitting on.

- 7 The bus we were waiting for was very late.
- 8 Who is the man Linda is dancing with?

114.4

- 2 What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?
- 3 Do you like the village where you live?
- 4 How big is the factory where you work?

Key to Additional exercises

1

- 3 Kate is a doctor.
- 4 The children are asleep.
- 5 Bill isn't hungry.
- 6 The books aren't on the table.
- 7 The hotel is near the station.
- 8 The bus isn't full.

2

- 3 she's/she is
- 4 Where are
- 5 Is he
- 6 It's/It is
- 7 I'm/I am or No, I'm not. I'm a student.
- 8 What colour is
- 9 Is it
- 10 Are you
- 11 How much are

3

- 3 He's/He is having a bath.
- 4 Are the children playing?
- 5 Is it raining?
- 6 They're/They are coming now.
- 7 Why are you standing here? I'm/I am waiting for somebody.

4

- 4 Chris doesn't want
- 5 Do you want
- 6 Does Ann live
- 7 Sarah knows
- 8 I don't travel
- 9 do you usually get up
- 10 They don't go out
- 11 Tim always finishes
- 12 does Jill do ... She works

5

- 3 She's/She is a student.
- 4 She hasn't got a car.
- 5 She goes out a lot.
- 6 She's got / She has got a lot of friends.
- 7 She doesn't like London.
- 8 She likes dancing.
- 9 She isn't / She's not interested in sport.

6

- 1 Are you married?
 - Where do you live?
 - Have you got / Do you have any children?
 - How old is she?
- 2 How old are you?
 - What do you do? / Where do you work? / What's your job?
 - Do you like/enjoy your job?
 - Have you got / Do you have a car?
 - Do you (usually) go to work by car?
- 3 What's his name? / What's he called?
 - What does he do? / What's his job?
 - Does he live/work in London?

7

- 4 Sonia is 32 years old.
- 5 I've got / I have two sisters.
- 6 We often watch TV in the evening.
- 7 Ann never wears a hat.
- 8 A bicycle has got two wheels.
- 9 These flowers are beautiful.
- 10 Mary speaks German very well.

8

- 3 are you cooking?
- 4 plays
- 5 I'm going
- 6 It's raining
- 7 I don't watch
- 8 we're looking
- 9 do you pronounce

9

- 2 we go
- 3 is shining
- 4 are you going
- 5 do you go
- 6 She writes
- 7 I never read
- 8 They're watching
- 9 She's talking
- 10 do you usually have
- 11 He's visiting
- 12 I don't drink

10

- 2 went
- 3 found
- 4 was
- 5 had
- 6 told
- 7 gave
- 8 were
- 9 thought
- 10 invited

11

- 3 He was good at sport.
- 4 He played football.
- 5 He didn't work hard at school.
- 6 He had a lot of friends.
- 7 He didn't have a bicycle.
- 8 He wasn't a quiet child.

12

- 3 How long were you there? / How long did you stay there?
- 4 Did you like/enjoy Amsterdam?
- 5 Where did you stay?
- 6 Was the weather good?
- 7 When did you get/come back?

13

- 3 I forgot
- 4 did you get
- 5 I didn't speak
- 6 Did you have
- 7 he didn't go
- 8 she arrived
- 9 did Robert live
- 10 The meal didn't cost

14

- 2 were working
- 3 opened
- 4 rang ... was cooking
- 5 heard ... looked
- 6 was looking ... happened
- 7 wasn't reading ... was watching
- 8 didn't read
- 9 finished ... paid ... left
- 10 saw ... was walking ... was waiting

KEY TO ADDITIONAL EXERCISES

15

- 3 is playing
- 4 gave
- 5 doesn't like
- 6 did your parents go
- 7 saw ... was driving
- 8 Do you watch
- 9 were you doing
- 10 goes
- 11 'm/am trying
- 12 didn't sleep

16

- 3 it's/it has just finished/ended.
- 4 I've/I have found them.
- 5 I haven't read it.
- 6 Have you seen her?
- 7 I've/I have had enough.
- 8 Have you (ever) been to Sweden?
- 9 We've/We have (just) been to the cinema.
- 10 They've/They have gone to a party.
- 11 He's/He has just woken up.
- 12 How long have you lived here? or ... have you been living here?
- 13 We've/We have known each other for a long time.
- 14 It's/It has been raining all day. or It has rained all day. or It has been horrible/bad all day.

17

- 3 has been
- 4 for
- 5 since
- 6 has he lived / has he been / has he been living
- 7 for
- 8 have been

18

Example answers:

- 3 I've just started this exercise.
- 4 I've met Julia a few times.
- 5 I haven't had dinner yet.
- 6 I've never been to Australia.
- 7 I've lived here since I was born.
- 8 I've lived here for three years.

19

- 3 bought
- 4 went
- 5 've/have read or 've/have finished with
- 6 haven't started (it) or haven't begun
- 7 was
- 8 didn't see
- 9 left
- 10 's/has been
- 11 was

20

- 3 He's/He has already gone.
- 4 she went at 4 o'clock.
- 5 How many times have you been there?
- 6 I haven't decided yet.
- 7 It was on the table last night.
- 8 I've just eaten.
- 9 What time did they arrive?

21

- 1 When was the last time? or When did you go the last time?
- 2 How long have you had it? I bought it yesterday.
- 3 How long have you lived / have you been / have you been living there?
 - Before that we lived in Mill
 - How long did you live in Mill Road?
- 4 How long have you worked / have you been working there?
 - What did you do before that? I was a taxi driver. *or* I worked as a taxi driver.

22

Example answers:

- 2 I didn't go out last night.
- 3 I was at work yesterday afternoon.
- 4 I went to a party a few days ago.
- 5 It was my birthday last week.
- 6 I went to America last year.

23

- 2 B 5 A
- 3 D 6 D
- 4 A 7 C

8 B 12 C 9 C 13 B 10 D 14 C 11 A 15 A

24

- 1 was damaged ... be knocked down
- 2 was built ... is used ... is being painted
- 3 is called ... be called ... was changed
- 4 have been made ... are produced

25

- 2 is visited
- 3 were damaged
- 4 be built
- 5 is being cleaned
- 6 be forgotten
- 7 has already been done
- 8 be kept
- 9 Have you ever been bitten
- 10 was stolen

26

- 2 My car was stolen last week.
- 3 You're/You are wanted on the phone.
- 4 The bananas have been eaten.
- 5 The machine will be repaired.
- 6 We're/We are being watched.
- 7 The food has to be bought.

27

- 3 pushed
- 4 was pushed
- 5 has taken
- 6 is being repaired
- 7 invented
- 8 was the camera invented
- 9 did they send / have they sent
- 10 be sent

28

- 2 B 8 B 3 A 9 B
- 4 C 10 A
- 5 B 11 B 6 C 12 C
- 7 C

29

- 1 I stayed
 did you do
 I watched
 Are you going
 I'm going
 are you going to see
 I don't know. I haven't decided
- 2 have you been
 We arrived
 are you staying / are you going
 to stay
 do you like
 we're having
- 3 I've just remembered Jill phoned
 She always phones ... Did she leave she wants
 I'll phone ... Do you know I'll get
- 4 I'm going ... Do you want are you going Have you ever eaten I've been ... I went
- 5 I've lost ... Have you seen
 You were wearing ... I came
 I'm not wearing
 Have you looked / Did you
 look
 I'll go

30

2 A	11 B
3 B	12 A
4 C	13 C
5 B	14 B
6 C	15 C
7 B	16 A
8 A	17 C
9 C	18 B
10 A	

31

- 2 a car3 the fridge
- 4 a teacher
- 5 school
- 6 the cinema
- 7 a taxi
- 8 the piano
- 9 computers
- 10 the same

32

- 4 a horse
- 5 The sky
- 6 a tourist
- 7 for lunch (-)
- 8 **the** first President of **the** United States
- 9 a watch
- 10 remember names (-)

- 11 the next train
- 12 writes letters (-)
- 13 the garden
- 14 **the** Majestic Hotel
- 15 ill last week (-) ... to work (-)
- 16 **the** highest mountain in **the** world
- 17 to **the** radio ... having breakfast (-)
- 18 like sport (-) ... is basketball (-)
- 19 a doctor ... an art teacher
- 20 **the** second floor ... **the** top of **the** stairs ... on **the** right
- 21 After dinner (-) ... watched television (-)
- 22 **a** wonderful holiday in **the** south of France (-)

33

2	in	12	at
3	on	13	at
4	at	14	in
5	on	15	at
6	in	16	on
7	since	17	by
8	on	18	for on
9	by	19	to in
10	in	20	at in
11	for		

Index

	1 1 / / / / 750	1 1 1000
a/an 64	anybody/anyone/anything 75D,	below 102E
a and some 66–67	77–78	beside 102A
a/an and the 68	anywhere 78	best 89B
about 104E	apostrophe (I'm, it's etc.)	better 86D
above 102E	Appendix 4	between 102A
active and passive Appendix 1	apostrophe's (my brother's car) 63	bit (a bit older/bigger etc.) 87D
across 103	are see am/is/are	born 21C
adjectives 84	around 103, 107-108, Appendix 7	both 81
adjectives and adverbs	arrive 101C	word order 93
(quick/quickly) 85	articles (a/an/the) 64-72	but 109
comparatives (older / more	a/an 64, 66–67	by 104C
expensive) 86–88	a/an and the 68	by after the passive (I was bitten by a
superlatives (the oldest / the most	the 69–72	dog.) 21D
expensive) 89	as (not as as) 88	by myself / by yourself etc. 62C
get + adjective (get tired etc.) 55B	ask	$b\gamma = beside)$ 102C
possessive adjectives (my/your/her	ask somebody to 52B	
etc.) 59, 61	ask somebody for 106A	can/can't 31
something/anybody etc. + adjective 78C	at	comparative (older / more expensive
adjectives + preposition (afraid of	at 8 o'clock / at night etc. 96	etc.) 86–88
etc.) 105A	at the bus stop / at work etc.	conditional (if)
adverbs 85	99–100	if I do111
word order (always/usually/often	at and to 101	if I did 112
etc.) 93	at the age of 104B	conjunctions 109–112
advise (advise somebody to) 52B	auxiliary verbs 23, 39-41	and/but/or/so/because 109
afraid (of) 105A	away	when/before/while/after/until 110
after 98, 110	run away / throw away etc. (phrasal	if 111–112
ago 19B	verbs) 107-108, Appendix 7	continue (continue to or continue
all		-ing) 51C
all and every etc. 79	back	contractions (short forms - I'm, it's,
all (of) 80	come back / give back etc. (phrasal	you've etc.) Appendix 4
word order 93	verbs) 107-108, Appendix 7	could/couldn't 31C-D
along 103	be (infinitive of am/is/are)	countable and uncountable nouns
already 94C	am/is/are 1–2	66–67
already + present perfect 16B	am/is/are + -ing (present	
word order 93	continuous) 3-4, 23A, 26, 50C	depend (on) 106C
also (word order) 93	was/were 10	did
always	was/were + -ing (past continuous)	didn't in negatives 12, 23D, 39C,
always + present simple 5C	13, 23A, 50C	42B, 50A
word order 93	have/has been (present perfect)	did in questions 12, 23D, 39C,
am/is/are 1-2	15–18	43B, 50A
am/is/are -ing (present continuous)	passive 21-22, Appendix 1	different (from) 105A
3–4, 23A, 26, 50C	will be 28	direct speech and reported speech
there is / there are 36	because 109	49
an see a	been	do 56
and 109	have/has been (present perfect)	don't/doesn't in negatives 6, 23D,
angry (with/about) 105A	15–18	39C, 42B, 50A
another 64B	been and gone 17C	do/does in questions 7, 23D, 39C,
any	there has/have been 37B	43B, 50A
any and some 75	before 98, 110	down 103
not + any 76	begin (begin to or begin -ing) 51C	sit down / put down etc. (phrasal
any and no 76	behind 102A	verbs) 107–108, Appendix 6–7
any (of) 80	belong (to) 106A	during 98

each other 62D	give	1/you/he/she etc. (personal
either	give something to somebody / give	pronouns) 58, 61
either and too 41A	somebody something 95	if 111–112
either (of) 81	give up / give back etc. (phrasal	if we go / if you see etc. 111
embedded questions (Do you know	verbs) 108, Appendix 6-7	if and when 111C
what? etc.) 48	go 54	if I had / if we went 112
end (at the end of) 96B, 99B	go -ing (go swimming etc.) 54D	Do you know if? 48C
		in
enjoy	go home / go to work / go to the	
enjoy -ing 51B	cinema 70	in April / in summer etc. 96
enjoy myself/yourself etc. 62A	go in / go back etc. (phrasal verbs)	in a room / in hospital etc. 99-100
enough 90	107	in five minutes / in three years etc.
enough and too 91D	going to (I'm going to do something)	96E
ever	27	in and to 101
Have you ever? 17	gone and been 17C	put something in 103
superlative + ever 89E	good	go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs)
word order 93	good and well 85D	107–108, Appendix 7
every 79	good at 105A	infinitive (do/see/play etc.)
everybody/everyone/everything	got	infinitive (do/see etc.) and to
/everywhere 79C	past of get 11C, 55	+ infinitive (to do / to see etc.)
•		
expect 51A, 52B	have/has got 9, 57A	50, 52
		can/will/should etc. + infinitive
far	had	50A
How far is it? 38A, 46D	past of have 11C	verbs $+$ to $+$ infinitive (I want to g
far \rightarrow further 86B	had to 34B	etc.) 50B, 51–52
fast 85C	He said he had (done something) 49,	infinitive and -ing (do/doing etc.)
		50-51
fed up (with) 105A	Appendix 1.1	I went to the shop to buy
few / a few 83	happen (to) 106A	(infinitive for purpose) 53
finish (finish -ing) 51B	hard 85C	infinitive and for 53B
for	has see have	adjective + infinitive (it's easy
for ten minutes / for three years etc.	hate 51C-D	to) 38B
19, 97D	have 9, 57	
for and to 53B	have got / has got 9, 57A	something to eat / nowhere to go etc.
go for a walk etc. 54C	have done / have been etc. (present	78D
for and during 98C	perfect) 15-18, 23C	<pre>-ing (doing/playing/going etc.)</pre>
from 97A, 103	have to 34	am/is/are + -ing (present
front (in front of) 102A-B	there has/have been 37B	continuous) 3-4, 23A, 26,
full (of) 105A	have breakfast / have a shower etc.	50C
further 86B	57B	was/were + -ing (past continuous)
future 26–29	her 58–59, 61	13, 23A, 50C
		-ing and infinitive (do/doing etc.)
I'm working tomorrow. (present	hers 60–61	50-51
continuous) 26	herself 62	verbs + -ing (enjoy -ing etc.)
The concert starts at 7.30. (present	him 58, 61	51B-C
simple) 26C	himself 62	go -ing (go swimming etc.) 54D
(I'm) going to (do something) 27	his 59–61	prepositions + -ing 98D, 105B
will 28–29	holiday (on holiday) 54B, 104A	
shall 28D, 29C	home 54A, 70A, 101B	interested (in) 105A
future after when/before/while etc.	get home 55C, 101C	into 103
110B	how 46	irregular verbs 11C, 24B,
future after if 111B	How long have you? (present	Appendix 2–3
interest of 1112	perfect) 18	is see am/is/are
	how big? / how old? / how far? etc.	it 38, 58B
geographical names with and	46D	it is and there is 36B, 38A
without the 72		it's and its 59C
gerund see -ing	How long does it take? 47	its 59
get 55	how much? / how many? 82A	27.77.0000
get to (a place) 55C, 101C		just
get on / get up etc. (phrasal verbs)		just + present perfect 16A
107, Appendix 6		word order 93
107, rippelittia 0		WOLG OLGEL 75

INDEX

kind (kind to somebody / kind of	must 32	ought to 33F
somebody) 105A	mustn't 32C	our 59, 61
know (Do you know where?) 48	must and should 33E	ours 60–61
	must and have to 34D	ourselves 62
loome (loans to) 51A	my/your/his etc. (possessive	out
learn (learn to) 51A	adjectives) 59, 61	out of 103
left (on the left) 102A	myself/yourself etc. (reflexive	go out / put out etc. (phrasal verbs)
lend (lend something to somebody) 95	pronouns) 62	107–108, Appendix 6–7
less 87C	promoting of	over 103
let 52D	need	climb over / knock over (phrasal
like (What is it like?) 45B	needn't 32D	
like (verb)		verbs) 107–108, Appendix 6–
would like 35, 51D, 52A	need to 51A	· / · 6) (5D
do you like? and would you like?	negatives 42	pair (a pair of) 65B
35C	negative questions 43C	passive 21-22, 23B, Appendix 1
like to or like -ing 51C	no and none 76	present simple (is done) and past
listen (to) 106A	not + any 76–77	simple (was done) 21
little / a little 83	neither	present continuous (is being done)
	Neither am I / Neither do I etc.	and present perfect (has been
look	41B	done) 22
look + adjective (look tired etc.)	neither (of) 81	will/can/must (etc.) be done
84C	never	Appendix 1.2
look at/for/after 106B	never + present simple 5C	past (preposition) 103
lot (a lot of) 82	never + present perfect 17	
love 51C-D		past continuous (was/were + -ing)
	word order 93	13-14, 23A, 50C
annitra ex	next to 102A	past continuous (I was doing) and
make 56	nice (nice to somebody / nice of	past simple (I did) 14
make somebody do something	somebody) 105A	past continuous passive
52D	no (no money / no friends etc.)	Appendix 1.1
make and do 56	76A–B, 80A	past participle (cleaned/done/seen
many	nobody/no-one/nothing 77-78	etc.) 24A
many and much 82	no-one and none 76C	present perfect (I have cleaned) 15
not as many (as) 88B	none 76B-C, 80B-C	23C
too many 91C	nor (Nor am I / Nor do I etc.) 41B	passive (the room was cleaned)
married	nouns (countable and uncountable)	21–22, 23B, Appendix 1
married to 105A	66–67	regular (cleaned) and irregular (seen
get married 55	nowhere 78	
	nowhere 78	24B, Appendix 2–3
may 30D	-6	past perfect .
me/you/him etc. (personal	of	He said he had (done something) 49
pronouns) 58, 61	the roof of the building etc. 63C	active and passive Appendix 1.1
middle (in the middle of) 100A,	the of 72E	past simple (did/cleaned/saw etc.)
102A	off 103	11–12
might 30	get off / turn off etc. (phrasal verbs)	negative (didn't) 12, 42B
mind (I don't mind -ing) 51B	107–108, Appendix 6	questions (did?) 12, 43B
mine/yours/hers etc. (possessive	offer (to do something) 51A	was/were 10
pronouns) 60–61	often	regular (cleaned) and irregular verb
modal verbs (will/can/might etc.)	often + present simple 5C	(saw) 11C, Appendix 2-3
28–35, 50A	word order 93	past simple $+ ago 19B$
more 86C, 87	on	past simple (<i>I did</i>) and present
most	on Monday / on 25 April etc. 96	perfect (I have done) 20
most (of) 80	on the table / on the wall 99–100	past simple (I did) and past
the most expensive / the most difficult	on the left/right 102A	continuous (I was doing) 14
etc. 89	on holiday / on television etc. 104A	past simple passive (the room was
much	go on (holiday/ a trip etc.) 54B	cleaned) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
much and many 82	get on /put on etc. (phrasal verbs)	if + past simple (if I had / if we
much bigger / much more expensive	107-108, Appendix 6-7	went) 112
87D	one/ones 74	people 65C-D
not as much (as) 88B	opposite 102B	personal pronouns (I/me/you etc.)
too much 91C	or 109B	58, 61
		50,01

persuade (persuade somebody to) 52B	present perfect continuous (I have been -ing) 18B	reflexive pronouns (myself/yourself etc.) 62
phrasal verbs (get up / put on etc.)	present perfect (I have done) and	regular and irregular verbs 11,
107–108, Appendix 6–7	past simple (I did) 20	24, Appendix 2–3
plural ($cup \rightarrow cups / man \rightarrow men$ etc.)	present perfect passive 22B,	relative clauses 113–114
65	Appendix 1.1	relative pronouns (who/which/that)
police (plural) 65D	regular and irregular verbs 15B,	113–114
possessive adjectives (my/your/his	24, Appendix 2–3	reply questions (Have you? / Are
etc.) 59, 61	present simple (I work / she works	you?) 40A
possessive pronouns	etc.) 5–7, 23D	reported speech
(mine/yours/his etc.) 60–61	negative (don't/doesn't) 6, 42B	He said that / He told me that
prefer 51C–D	questions (do/does?) 7, 43B	49
prepositions 96–106	present simple + always/usually/	He told me to 52C
at/on/in (time) 96	never etc. 5C	right (on the right) 102A
	present simple (<i>I do</i>) and present	round 103
for/since 19, 97 until 97A–B		
	continuous (I am doing) 8	turn round / show round (phrasal
before/after/during/while 98	present simple passive (the room	verbs) 107–108, Appendix 7
in/at/on (places) 99–100	is cleaned) 21, 23B,	2-7
to/in/at (places) 101	Appendix 1.1	's (apostrophe 's) 63, Appendix 4.5
on 96, 99–100, 102A, 104A	present simple for the future (<i>The</i>	same 69B, 88E
at 96, 99–101, 104B	concert starts at 7.30.) 26C	say/said
under/behind/opposite etc.	present simple after when/while etc.	He said that (reported speech)
(position) 102	110B	49
up/over/through etc. (movement)	present simple after if 111B	say and tell 49B
103	promise (promise to) 51A	shall 28D, 29C
by 102C, 104C	pronouns	short forms (I'm / it's / you've etc.)
with/without 104D, 105B	personal pronouns (I/me/you etc.)	Appendix 4
about 104E	58, 61	should 33
prepositions + -ing (in -ing /	possessive pronouns (mine/yours	simple past see past simple
without -ing etc.) 98D, 105B	etc.) 60–61	simple present see present simple
adjective + prepositions (afraid of	reflexive pronouns (myself/yourself	since 19A, 97C
etc.) 105A	etc.) 62	singular and plural (flower \rightarrow
verb + preposition (listen to / wait	one/ones 74	flowers) 65
for etc.) 106	relative pronouns (who/which/that)	so
prepositions at the end (Who is she	113–114	so am I / so do I etc. 41B
talking to?) 45	put	I was tired, so I went to bed. 109
prepositions in relative clauses (the	put something in 103	some
man she is talking to) 114B	put on / put out etc. (phrasal verbs)	some and a/an 66–67
present continuous (am/is/are	108, Appendix 7	some and any 75
+ -ing) 3-4, 23A, 50C		some (of) 80
negative (I'm not -ing) 3	questions 43–46	somebody/someone/something/
questions (are you -ing?) 4	am/is/are? 2	somewhere 75, 78
present continuous (I am doing)	do/does? (present simple) 7, 43B	sometimes
and present simple (I do) 8	did? (past simple) 12, 43B	sometimes + present simple 5C
present continuous passive 22A,	Why don't? / Why isn't? etc.	word order 93
Appendix 1.1	43C	sorry (sorry about and sorry for) 105A
present continuous for the future	Who saw you? / Who did you see?	speak (to) 106A
(What are you doing tomorrow?)	44	spelling Appendix 5
26	preposition at the end (Who is she	start (start to and start -ing) 51C
present perfect (I have done) 15-20,	talking to?) 45	still 94
23C	What / Which / How? 46	word order 93
present perfect + just 16A	How long does it take? 47	stop (stop -ing) 51B
present perfect + already 16B	Do you know where? (embedded	suggest (suggest -ing) 51B
present perfect + yet 16C, 94B	questions) 48	superlative (the biggest / the most
Have you ever? 17	reply questions (Have you? / Are	expensive etc.) 89
gone and been 17C	you? etc.) 40A	and the second
How long have you? 18	question tags (do you? / isn't	tags (question tags) 40B
present perfect + for/since 18-19	it? etc.) 40B	take (How long does it take?) 47

INDEX

talk (to) 106A	to + infinitive (to go / to be etc.) see	when 110
tell/told	infinitive	when and if 111C
He told me that 49	too 91	whether 48C
tell and say 49B	too and either 41A	which
Can you tell me where? 48A	turn (turn round / turn on etc.)	Which? 46
He told me to 52B	(phrasal verbs) 107–108,	Which? and What? 46C
tenses	Appendix 7	Which one/ones? 74B
active and passive Appendix 1.1	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	a thing which (relative clauses)
present continuous (I am doing)	uncountable nouns	113
3–4, 23A, 26, 50C	(salt/water/music etc.) 66–67	while 98, 110
present simple (<i>I do</i>) 5–7, 23D,	under 102D, 103	who
26C	until 97A–B, 110B	Who? 44
past simple (<i>I did</i>) 11–12, 14, 20,	up 103	a person who (relative clauses)
23D	get up / pick up etc. (phrasal verbs)	113
past continuous (I was doing)	107–108, Appendix 6–7	whose (Whose is this?) 60D
13–14, 23A, 50C	us 58, 61	will 28–29
present perfect (I have done)	used (I used to) 25	will and shall 28D, 29C
	usually	won't 28A
15–20, 23C		there will be 37C
be/have/do in present and past	usually + present simple 5C word order 93	with/without 104D
tenses 23	word order 93	
than 87–88		with/without + -ing 105B
that 73	verbs	won't (= will not) 28A
He said that (reported speech)	present tenses 1–9, 23, 26	word order
49C	past tenses 10–14, 20, 23	questions 43–45
that and this 73	present perfect 15–20, 23	present continuous questions
a thing that (relative clauses)	passive 21–22, Appendix 1	4B
113	regular and irregular verbs 24,	present simple questions 7B
the 68–72	Appendix 2–3	past simple questions 12D
the and a/an 68	future 26–29	passive 21–22
the same 69B	modal verbs (will/can/should etc.)	Do you know where? (embedded
the sun / the sky etc. 69C	28–35, 50A	questions) 48
the cinema / the theatre / the bank	negatives 42	verb + object 92A
etc. 70B	questions 43–46	place and time 92B
flowers / the flowers 71B	reported speech 49	always/usually/often etc. 93
the in names of places 72	verbs + -ing 50-51	after give/lend/send etc. 95
the biggest / the most expensive etc.	verbs + to (infinitive) 50–52	worse 86D
89	verbs + preposition (look at / speak	worst 89B
their 59, 61	to etc.) 106	would
theirs 60, 61	phrasal verbs (get up / put on etc.)	I'd like / would you like? 35
them 58, 61	107–108, Appendix 6–7	would like/love/ etc. 51D
themselves 62	The second secon	He would buy a car if he had the
there	wait (for) 53C, 106A	money. 112
there is/are 36	want	write (to) 106A
there was/were 37A	want to 51A	
there has/have been 37B	want somebody to 52A	yet 94
there will be 37C	was/were 10	yet + present perfect 16C
there is and it is 36B	was/were + -ing (past continuous)	you 58, 61
these 73	13, 23A, 50C	your 59, 61
think (think about / think of) 106A	was/were done (passive) 21, 23B	yours 60–61
this 73	there was/were 37A	yourself/yourselves 62
those 73	if I was/were 112B	
through 103	well 85D	
till (= until) 97B	were see was	
to	what	
time 97A	What? and Who? 44C	
places 101, 103	What like? 45B	
go to 54A, 101A	What? 46	
get to 55C 101C	What 2 and Which 2 46C	

Essential Grammar in Use

With answers · Second Edition

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students.

Essential Grammar in Use is a grammar reference and practice book for elementary learners. Modelled on Raymond Murphy's highly successful intermediate level English Grammar in Use, it concentrates on areas of grammar normally taught at elementary level.

- Easy to use: on each left-hand page a grammar point is explained and on the facing pages there are exercises to check understanding.
- Clear explanations: grammar for elementary learners is explained in simple language with many examples and attractive illustrations.
- Accessible: the clear contents list and index of grammatical items make it easy for learners to select the units they need to study.
- Additional exercises: these offer extra practice of grammar points from different units.
- Appendices: these useful references deal with tenses, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.
- Self-study: the book can be used by learners working independently or as supplementary course material.
- Key: this contains the answers to all exercises.

Also available: Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises

Cambridge Essential English Dictionary

English Grammar in Use Third Edition



